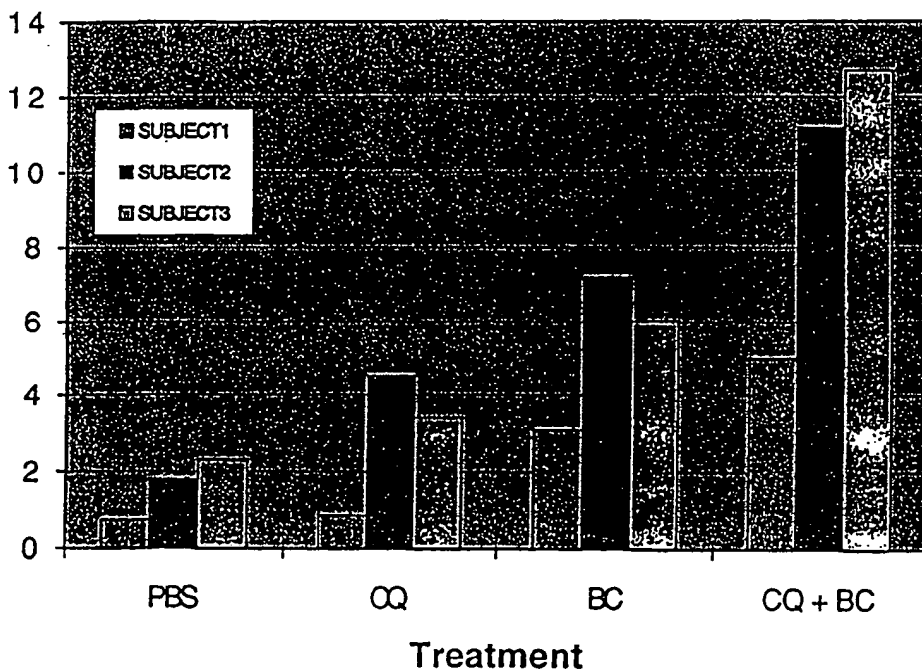




## INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

(51) International Patent Classification <sup>6</sup> : <b>A61K 31/00</b>		A2	(11) International Publication Number: <b>WO 99/45907</b>
			(43) International Publication Date: 16 September 1999 (16.09.99)
(21) International Application Number: PCT/US99/05291 (22) International Filing Date: 11 March 1999 (11.03.99) (30) Priority Data: 09/038,154                      11 March 1998 (11.03.98)                      US (71) Applicant: THE GENERAL HOSPITAL CORPORATION [US/US]; Fruit Street, Boston, MA 02114 (US). (72) Inventors: BUSH, Ashley, L.; 91 Summer Street #3, Somerville, MA 02143 (US). HUANG, Xudong; Apartment 10L, 402 Range Avenue, Cambridge, MA 02140 (US). ATWOOD, Craig, S.; 19 Aldersey Street, #3, Somerville, MA 02143 (US). TANZI, Rudolph, E.; 25 Strawberry Lane, Canton, MA 02021 (US). (74) Agents: GOLDSTEIN, Jorge, A. et al.; Sterne, Kessler, Goldstein & Fox P.L.L.C., Suite 600, 1100 New York Avenue, N.W., Washington, DC 20005-3934 (US).		(81) Designated States: AE, AL, AM, AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BR, BY, CA, CH, CN, CU, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, GB, GD, GE, GH, GM, HR, HU, ID, IL, IN, IS, JP, KE, KG, KP, KR, KZ, LC, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LV, MD, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, NO, NZ, PL, PT, RO, RU, SD, SE, SG, SI, SK, SL, TJ, TM, TR, TT, UA, UG, UZ, VN, YU, ZW, ARIPO patent (GH, GM, KE, LS, MW, SD, SL, SZ, UG, ZW), Eurasian patent (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European patent (AT, BE, CH, CY, DE, DK, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, GW, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).  <b>Published</b> <i>Without international search report and to be republished upon receipt of that report.</i>	

(54) Title: AGENTS FOR USE IN THE TREATMENT OF ALZHEIMER'S DISEASE



## (57) Abstract

The invention relates to the identification of pharmacological agents to be used in the treatment of Alzheimer's disease and related pathological conditions and compositions for treatment of conditions caused by amyloidosis, A $\beta$ -mediated formation of ROS, or both, such as Alzheimer's disease, are disclosed.

*FOR THE PURPOSES OF INFORMATION ONLY*

Codes used to identify States party to the PCT on the front pages of pamphlets publishing international applications under the PCT.

AL	Albania	ES	Spain	LS	Lesotho	SI	Slovenia
AM	Armenia	FI	Finland	LT	Lithuania	SK	Slovakia
AT	Austria	FR	France	LU	Luxembourg	SN	Senegal
AU	Australia	GA	Gabon	LV	Latvia	SZ	Swaziland
AZ	Azerbaijan	GB	United Kingdom	MC	Monaco	TD	Chad
BA	Bosnia and Herzegovina	GE	Georgia	MD	Republic of Moldova	TG	Togo
BB	Barbados	GH	Ghana	MG	Madagascar	TJ	Tajikistan
BE	Belgium	GN	Guinea	MK	The former Yugoslav Republic of Macedonia	TM	Turkmenistan
BF	Burkina Faso	GR	Greece	ML	Mali	TR	Turkey
BG	Bulgaria	HU	Hungary	MN	Mongolia	TT	Trinidad and Tobago
BJ	Benin	IE	Ireland	MR	Mauritania	UA	Ukraine
BR	Brazil	IL	Israel	MW	Malawi	UG	Uganda
BY	Belarus	IS	Iceland	MX	Mexico	US	United States of America
CA	Canada	IT	Italy	NE	Niger	UZ	Uzbekistan
CF	Central African Republic	JP	Japan	NL	Netherlands	VN	Viet Nam
CG	Congo	KE	Kenya	NO	Norway	YU	Yugoslavia
CH	Switzerland	KG	Kyrgyzstan	NZ	New Zealand	ZW	Zimbabwe
CI	Côte d'Ivoire	KP	Democratic People's Republic of Korea	PL	Poland		
CM	Cameroon	KR	Republic of Korea	PT	Portugal		
CN	China	KZ	Kazakhstan	RO	Romania		
CU	Cuba	LC	Saint Lucia	RU	Russian Federation		
CZ	Czech Republic	LI	Liechtenstein	SD	Sudan		
DE	Germany	LK	Sri Lanka	SE	Sweden		
DK	Denmark	LR	Liberia	SG	Singapore		
EE	Estonia						

## Agents for Use in the Treatment of Alzheimer's Disease

### *Background of the Invention*

#### *Statement as to Rights to Inventions Made Under Federally-Sponsored Research and Development*

5           Part of the work performed during the development of this invention utilized U.S. Government Funds under Grant No. R29AG12686 from the National Institutes of Health. The government may have certain rights in this invention.

#### *Field of the Invention*

10           This invention is in the field of medicinal chemistry. In particular, the invention is related to compositions for treatment of Alzheimer's disease.

#### *Related Art*

15           Polymers of Abeta ( $A\beta$ ), the 4.3 kD, 39-43 amino acid peptide product of the transmembrane protein, amyloid protein precursor (APP), are the main components extracted from the neuritic and vascular amyloid of Alzheimer's disease (AD) brains.  $A\beta$  deposits are usually most concentrated in regions of high neuronal cell death, and may be present in various morphologies, including amorphous deposits, neurophil plaque amyloid, and amyloid congophilic angiopathy (Masters, C.L., *et al.*, *EMBO J.* 4:2757 (1985); Masters, C.L. *et al.*, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 82: 4245 (1985)). Growing evidence suggests that  
20           amyloid deposits are intimately associated with the neuronal demise that leads to dementia in the disorder.

25           The presence of an enrichment of the 42 residue species of  $A\beta$  in these deposits suggests that this species is more pathogenic. The 42 residue form of  $A\beta$  ( $A\beta_{1-42}$ ), while a minor component of biological fluids, is highly enriched in

- 2 -

amyloid, and genetic studies strongly implicate this protein in the etiopathogenesis of AD. Amyloid deposits are decorated with inflammatory response proteins, but biochemical markers of severe oxidative stress such as peroxidation adducts, advanced glycation end-products, and protein cross-linking are seen in proximity to the lesions. To date, the cause of A $\beta$  deposits is unknown, although it is believed that preventing these deposits may be a means of treating the disorder.

When polymers of A $\beta$  are placed into culture with rat hippocampal neurons, they are neurotoxic (Kuo, Y-M., *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 271:4077-81 (1996); Roher, A.E., *et al.*, *Journal of Biological Chemistry* 271:20631-20635 (1996)). The mechanism underlying the formation of these neurotoxic polymeric A $\beta$  species remains unresolved. The overexpression of A $\beta$  alone cannot sufficiently explain amyloid formation, since the concentration of A $\beta$  required for precipitation is not physiologically plausible. That alterations in the neurochemical environment are required for amyloid formation is indicated by its solubility in neural phosphate buffer at concentrations of up to 16 mg/ml (Tomski, S. & Murphy, R.M., *Archives of Biochemistry and Biophysics* 294:630 (1992)), biological fluids such as cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) (Shoji, M., *et al.*, *Science* 258:126 (1992); Golde, T.E., *et al.* *Science*, 255(5045):728-730 (1992); Seubert, P., *et al.*, *Nature* 359:325 (1992); Haass, C., *et al.*, *Nature* 359:322 (1992)) and in the plaque-free brains of Down's syndrome patients (Teller, J.K., *et al.*, *Nature Medicine* 2:93-95 (1996)).

Studies into the neurochemical vulnerability of A $\beta$  to form amyloid have suggested altered zinc and [H<sup>+</sup>] homeostasis as the most likely explanations for amyloid deposition. A $\beta$  is rapidly precipitated under mildly acidic conditions *in vitro* (pH 3.5-6.5) (Barrow, C.J. & Zagorski, M.G., *Science* 253:179-182 (1991); Fraser, P.E., *et al.*, *Biophys. J.* 60:1190-1201 (1991); Barrow, C.J., *et al.*, *J. Mol. Biol.* 225:1075-1093 (1992); Burdick, D., *J. Biol. Chem.* 267:546-554 (1992); Zagorski, M.G. & Barrow, C.J., *Biochemistry* 31:5621-5631 (1992); Kirshenbaum, K. & Daggett, V., *Biochemistry* 34:7629-7639 (1995); Wood, S.J.,



et al., *J. Mol. Biol.* 256:870-877 (1996)). Recently, it has been shown that the presence of certain biometals, in particular redox inactive  $Zn^{2+}$  and, to a lesser extent, redox active  $Cu^{2+}$  and  $Fe^{3+}$ , markedly increases the precipitation of soluble A $\beta$  (Bush, A.I., et al., *J. Biol. Chem.* 268:16109 (1993); Bush, A.I., et al., *J. Biol. Chem.* 269:12152 (1994); Bush, A.I., et al., *Science* 265:1464 (1994); Bush, A.I., et al., *Science* 268:1921 (1995)). At physiological pH, A $\beta_{1-40}$  specifically and saturably binds  $Zn^{2+}$ , manifesting high affinity binding ( $K_D = 107$  nM) with a 1:1 ( $Zn^{2+}$ :A $\beta$ ) stoichiometry, and low affinity binding ( $K_D = 5.2$   $\mu$ M) with a 2:1 stoichiometry.

The reduction by APP of copper (II) to copper (I) may lead to irreversible A $\beta$  aggregation and SDS-resistant polymerization. This reaction may promote an environment that would enhance the production of hydroxyl radicals, which may contribute to oxidative stress in AD (Multhaup, G., et al., *Science* 271:1406-1409 (1996)). A precedence for abnormal Cu metabolism already exists in the neurodegenerative disorders of Wilson's disease, Menkes' syndrome and possibly familial amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (Tanzi, R.E. et al., *Nature Genetics* 5:344 (1993); Bull, P.C., et al., *Nature Genetics* 5:327 (1993); Vulpe, C., et al., *Nature Genetics* 3:7 (1993); Yamaguchi, Y., et al., *Biochem. Biophys. Res. Commun.* 197:271 (1993); Chelly, J., et al., *Nature Genetics* 3:14 (1993); Wang, D. & Munoz, D.G., *J. Neuropathol. Exp. Neurol.* 54:548 (1995); Beckman, J.S., et al., *Nature* 364:584 (1993); Hartmann, H.A. & Evenson, M.A., *Med. Hypotheses* 38:75 (1992)).

Although much fundamental pathology, genetic susceptibility and biology associated with AD is becoming clearer, a rational chemical and structural basis for developing effective drugs to prevent or cure the disease remains elusive. While the genetics of the disorder indicates that the metabolism of A $\beta$  is intimately associated with the etiopathogenesis of the disease, drugs for the treatment of AD have so far focused on "cognition enhancers" which do not address the underlying disease processes.

### *Summary of the Invention*

An aspect of the present invention contemplates a method for treating Alzheimer's disease (AD) in a subject, said method comprising administering to said subject an effective amount of an agent which is capable of inhibiting or otherwise reducing metal-mediated production of free radicals.

The present invention provides a method for treating AD in a subject, said method comprising administering to said subject an effective amount of an agent comprising a metal chelator and/or a metal complexing compound for a time and under conditions sufficient to inhibit or otherwise reduce metal-mediated production of free radicals by A $\beta$ .

In one aspect, the free radicals are reactive oxygen species such as O<sub>2</sub> or OH $\cdot$ . In another aspect, the free radicals include forms of A $\beta$ .

The agent of this aspect of the present invention may contain one or more than one compound such as a metal chelator or metal complexing compound such as but not limited to DTPA, bathocuproine, bathophenanthroline, clioquinol, penicillamine, or derivatives, homologues or analogues thereof. Alternatively, or in addition, the agent may comprise an antioxidant or other molecule capable of interfering with A $\beta$  peptide-mediated radical formation.

One aspect of the present invention comprises an agent for use in treating AD in a subject comprising a metal chelator, metal complexing compound and/or a compound capable of inhibiting free radical formation by interaction of A $\beta$  peptides and biometals, said agent optionally further comprising one or more pharmaceutically acceptable carriers and/or diluents.

In one aspect, the invention relates to a method of treating amyloidosis in a subject, said method comprising administering to said subject a combination of (a) a metal chelator selected from the group consisting of: bathocuproine, bathophenanthroline, DTPA, EDTA, EGTA, penicillamine, TETA, and TPEN, or hydrophobic derivatives thereof; and (b) clioquinol, for a time and under conditions to bring about said treatment; wherein said combination reduces,

inhibits or otherwise interferes with A $\beta$ -mediated production of radical oxygen species.

In a preferred embodiment, the metal chelator is bathocuproine.

5 In another aspect, said method further comprises administering a supplement selected from the group consisting of: ammonium salt, calcium salt, magnesium salt, and sodium salt.

In a preferred embodiment, the supplement is magnesium salt.

10 In another aspect, said method further comprises administering to the subject an effective amount of a compound selected from the group consisting of: rifampicin, disulfiram, and indomethacin, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

15 In yet another aspect, the invention relates to a method of treating amyloidosis in a subject, said method comprising administering to said subject an effective amount of a combination of (a) a salt of a metal chelator, wherein said chelator is selected from the group consisting of: bathocuproine, bathophenanthroline, DTPA, EDTA, EGTA, penicillamine, TETA, and TPEN, or hydrophobic derivatives thereof, and (b) clioquinol; wherein said salt of the metal chelator is selected from the group consisting of: ammonium, calcium, magnesium, and sodium; and wherein said combination reduces, inhibits or  
20 otherwise interferes with A $\beta$ -mediated production of radical oxygen species.

In a preferred embodiment, the metal chelator is bathocuproine.

In another preferred embodiment, the salt of the metal chelator is a magnesium salt.

25 In another aspect, said method further comprises administering to the subject an effective amount of a compound selected from the group consisting of: rifampicin, disulfiram, and indomethacin, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

30 In yet another aspect, the invention relates to a method of treating amyloidosis in a subject, said method comprising administering to said subject an effective amount of a combination of (a) a chelator specific for copper, and (b)

clioquinol; wherein said combination reduces, inhibits or otherwise interferes with A $\beta$ -mediated production of radical oxygen species.

In a preferred embodiment, the chelator specific for copper is specific for the reduced form of copper. Most preferably, the chelator is bathocuproine or  
5 a hydrophobic derivative thereof.

In yet another aspect, the invention relates to a method of treating amyloidosis in a subject, said method comprising administering to said subject an effective amount of a combination of (a) an alkalinizing agent and (b) clioquinol; wherein said combination reduces, inhibits or otherwise interferes  
10 with A $\beta$ -mediated production of radical oxygen species.

In a preferred embodiment, the alkalinizing agent is magnesium citrate. In another preferred embodiment, the alkalinizing agent is calcium citrate.

Still another aspect of the present invention contemplates a method of treating AD in a subject comprising administering to said subject an agent capable  
15 of promoting, inducing or otherwise facilitating resolubilization of A $\beta$  deposits in the brain for a time and under conditions to effect said treatment.

In yet another aspect, the invention relates to a method of treating amyloidosis in a subject, said method comprising administering to said subject a combination of (a) a metal chelator selected from the group consisting of:  
20 bathocuproine, bathophenanthroline, DTPA, EDTA, EGTA, penicillamine, TETA, and TPEN, or hydrophobic derivatives thereof; and (b) clioquinol, for a time and under conditions to bring about said treatment; wherein said combination prevents formation of A $\beta$  amyloid, promotes, induces or otherwise facilitates resolubilization of A $\beta$  deposits, or both.

25 In a preferred embodiment, the metal chelator is bathocuproine.

In another aspect, said method further comprises administering a supplement selected from the group consisting of: ammonium salt, calcium salt, magnesium salt, and sodium salt.

In a preferred embodiment, the supplement is magnesium salt.

- 7 -

In another aspect, said method further comprises administering to the subject an effective amount of a compound selected from the group consisting of: rifampicin, disulfiram, and indomethacin, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

5 In yet another aspect, the invention relates to a method of treating amyloidosis in a subject, said method comprising administering to said subject an effective amount of a combination of (a) a salt of a metal chelator, wherein said chelator is selected from the group consisting of: bathocuproine, bathophenanthroline, DTPA, EDTA, EGTA, penicillamine, TETA, and TPEN,  
10 or hydrophobic derivatives thereof, and (b) clioquinol; wherein said salt of the metal chelator is selected from the group consisting of: ammonium, calcium, magnesium, and sodium; and wherein said combination prevents formation of A $\beta$  amyloid, promotes, induces or otherwise facilitates resolubilization of A $\beta$  deposits, or both.

15 In a preferred embodiment, the metal chelator is bathocuproine. In another preferred embodiment, the salt of the metal chelator is a magnesium salt.

In another aspect, said method further comprises administering to the subject an effective amount of a compound selected from the group consisting of: rifampicin, disulfiram, and indomethacin, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt  
20 thereof.

In yet another aspect, the invention relates to a method of treating amyloidosis in a subject, said method comprising administering to said subject an effective amount of a combination of (a) a chelator specific for copper, and (b) clioquinol; wherein said combination prevents formation of A $\beta$  amyloid,  
25 promotes, induces or otherwise facilitates resolubilization of A $\beta$  deposits, or both.

In a preferred embodiment, the chelator specific for copper is specific for the reduced form of copper. Most preferably, the chelator is bathocuproine or a hydrophobic derivative thereof.

30 In yet another aspect, the invention relates to a method of treating amyloidosis in a subject, said method comprising administering to said subject

- 8 -

an effective amount of a combination of (a) an alkalinizing agent and (b) clioquinol; wherein said combination prevents formation of A $\beta$  amyloid, promotes, induces or otherwise facilitates resolubilization of A $\beta$  deposits, or both.

In a preferred embodiment, the alkalinizing agent is magnesium citrate.

5 In another preferred embodiment, the alkalinizing agent is calcium citrate.

Still another aspect of the invention relates to a pharmaceutical composition for treatment of conditions caused by amyloidosis, A $\beta$ -mediated ROS formation, or both, comprising: (a) a metal chelator selected from the group consisting of: bathocuproine, bathophenanthroline, DTPA, EDTA, EGTA,  
10 penicillamine, TETA, and TPEN, or hydrophobic derivatives thereof; and (b) clioquinol, together with one or more pharmaceutically acceptable carriers or diluents.

In a preferred embodiment, the metal chelator is bathocuproine.

In another aspect, said method further comprises administering a  
15 supplement selected from the group consisting of: ammonium salt, calcium salt, magnesium salt, and sodium salt.

In a preferred embodiment, the supplement is magnesium salt.

In another aspect, said composition further comprises a compound selected from the group consisting of: rifampicin, disulfiram, and indomethacin,  
20 or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

In yet another aspect, the invention relates to a pharmaceutical composition for treatment of conditions caused by amyloidosis, A $\beta$ -mediated ROS formation, or both, comprising a combination of (a) a salt of a metal chelator selected from the group consisting of: bathocuproine,  
25 bathophenanthroline, DTPA, EDTA, EGTA, penicillamine, TETA, and TPEN, or hydrophobic derivatives thereof; and (b) clioquinol; wherein said salt of the metal chelator is selected from the group consisting of: ammonium, calcium, magnesium, and sodium, together with one or more pharmaceutically acceptable carriers or diluents.

In a preferred embodiment, the metal chelator is bathocuproine. In another preferred embodiment, the salt of the metal chelator is a magnesium salt.

In another aspect, said composition further comprises a compound selected from the group consisting of: rifampicin, disulfiram, and indomethacin,  
5 or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

In yet another aspect, the invention relates to a pharmaceutical composition for treatment of conditions caused by amyloidosis, A $\beta$ -mediated ROS formation, or both, comprising a chelator specific for copper, with one or more pharmaceutically acceptable carriers or diluents.

10 In a preferred embodiment, the chelator specific for copper is specific for the reduced form of copper. Most preferably, the chelator is bathocuproine or a hydrophobic derivative thereof.

In yet another aspect, the invention relates to a pharmaceutical composition for treatment of conditions caused by amyloidosis, A $\beta$ -mediated ROS formation, or both, comprising a combination of (a) an alkalinizing agent  
15 and (b) clioquinol; together with one or more pharmaceutically acceptable carriers or diluents.

In a preferred embodiment, the alkalinizing agent is magnesium citrate. In another preferred embodiment, the alkalinizing agent is calcium citrate.

20 Still another aspect of the invention relates to a composition of matter comprising: (a) a metal chelator selected from the group consisting of: bathocuproine, bathophenanthroline, DTPA, EDTA, EGTA, penicillamine, TETA, and TPEN, or hydrophobic derivatives thereof; and (b) clioquinol.

In a preferred embodiment, the metal chelator is bathocuproine.

25 In another aspect, said method further comprises administering a supplement selected from the group consisting of: ammonium salt, calcium salt, magnesium salt, and sodium salt.

In a preferred embodiment, the supplement is magnesium salt.

- 10 -

In another aspect, said composition further comprises an effective amount of a compound selected from the group consisting of: rifampicin, disulfiram, and indomethacin, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

5 In yet another aspect, the invention relates to a composition of matter comprising a combination of (a) a salt of a metal chelator selected from the group consisting of: bathocuproine, bathophenanthroline, DTPA, EDTA, EGTA, penicillamine, TETA, and TPEN, or hydrophobic derivatives thereof; and (b) clioquinol; wherein said salt of the metal chelator is selected from the group consisting of: ammonium, calcium, magnesium, and sodium.

10 In a preferred embodiment, the metal chelator is bathocuproine. In another preferred embodiment, the salt of said metal chelator is a magnesium salt.

In another aspect, said composition further comprises an effective amount of a compound selected from the group consisting of: rifampicin, disulfiram, and indomethacin, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

15 In yet another aspect, the invention relates to a composition of matter comprising a combination of (a) an alkalinizing agent and (b) clioquinol.

### *Brief Description of the Figures*

Figure 1 is a graph showing the proportion of soluble  $A\beta_{1-40}$  remaining following centrifugation of reaction mixtures.

20 **Figures 2A-2C:** Figure 2A is a graph showing the proportion of soluble  $A\beta_{1-40}$  remaining in the supernatant after incubation with various metal ions. Figure 2B is a graph showing a turbidometric analysis of pH effect on metal ion-induced  $A\beta_{1-40}$  aggregation. Figure 2C is a graph showing the proportion of soluble  $A\beta_{1-40}$  remaining in the supernatant after incubation with various metal ions, where high metal ion concentrations were used.

25 **Figure 3** is a graph showing a competition analysis of  $A\beta_{1-40}$  binding to  $Cu^{2+}$ .



- 11 -

Figures 4A-4C: Figure 4A is a graph showing the proportion of soluble  $A\beta_{1-40}$  remaining in the supernatant following incubation at various pHs in PBS  $\pm Zn^{2+}$  or  $Cu^{2+}$ . Figure 4B is a graph showing the proportion of soluble  $A\beta_{1-40}$  remaining in the supernatant following incubation at various pHs with different  $Cu^{2+}$  concentrations. Figure 4C is a graph showing the relative aggregation of nM concentrations of  $A\beta_{1-40}$  at pH 7.4 and 6.6 with different  $Cu^{2+}$  concentrations.

Figures 5A and 5B: Figure 5A is a graph showing a turbidometric analysis of  $Cu^{2+}$ -induced  $A\beta_{1-40}$  aggregation at pH 7.4 reversed by successive cycles of chelator. Figure 5B is a graph showing a turbidometric analysis of the reversibility of  $Cu^{2+}$ -induced  $A\beta_{1-40}$  aggregation as the pH cycles between 7.4 and 6.6.

Figure 6 shows the amino acid sequence of APP<sub>669-716</sub> near  $A\beta_{1-42}$ . Rat  $A\beta$  is mutated (R5G, Y10F, H13R; bold). Possible metal-binding residues are underlined.

Figure 7 is a graph showing the effects of pH,  $Zn^{2+}$  or  $Cu^{2+}$  upon  $A\beta$  deposit formation.

Figure 8 is a western blot showing the extraction of  $A\beta$  from post-mortem brain tissue.

Figure 9 is a western blot showing  $A\beta$  SDS-resistant polymerization by copper.

Figure 10 is a graph showing  $Cu^+$  generation by  $A\beta$ .

Figure 11 is a graph showing  $H_2O_2$  production by  $A\beta$ .

Figure 12 is a graphical representation showing a model for the generation of reduced metal ions,  $O_2^-$ ,  $H_2O_2$ , and  $OH^\bullet$  by  $A\beta$  peptides. Note that  $A\beta$  facilitates two consecutive steps in the pathway: the reduction of metal ions, and the reaction of  $O_2$  with reduced metal ions. The peptide does not appear to be consumed or modified in a one hour time frame by participation in these reactions.

Figures 13A and 13B are graphical representations showing  $Fe^{3+}$  or  $Cu^{2+}$  reduction by  $A\beta$  peptides. Figure 13A illustrates the reducing capacity of  $A\beta$

species (10  $\mu$ M), compared to Vitamin C and insulin (Sigma) (all 10  $\mu$ M) towards  $\text{Fe}^{3+}$  or  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$  (10  $\mu$ M) in PBS, pH 7.4, after 1 hour co-incubation, 37°C. Data indicate concentration of reduced metal ions generated. Figure 13B shows the effect of oxygen tension and chelation upon  $\text{A}\beta_{1-42}$  metal reduction.  $\text{A}\beta_{1-42}$  was incubated as in Figure 13A under various buffer gas conditions. "Ambient" = no efforts were made to adjust the gas tension in the bench preparations of the buffer vehicle, " $\text{O}_2$ " = 100%  $\text{O}_2$  was continuously bubbled through the PBS vehicle for 2 hours (at 20°C), before the remainder of the incubation components were added, "Ar" = 100% Ar was continuously bubbled through the PBS vehicle for 2 hours (at 20°C), before the remainder of the incubation components were added. "+DFO or TETA" = Desferrioxamine (DFO, Sigma, 200  $\mu$ M) was added to the  $\text{A}\beta_{1-42}$  incubation in the presence of  $\text{Fe}^{3+}$  10  $\mu$ M, or triethylenetetramine dihydrochloride (TETA, Sigma, 200  $\mu$ M) was added to the  $\text{A}\beta_{1-42}$  incubation in the presence of  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$  10  $\mu$ M, under ambient oxygen conditions. All data points are means  $\pm$ SD, n = 3.

Figures 14A-14E are graphical representations showing production of  $\text{H}_2\text{O}_2$  from the incubation of  $\text{A}\beta$  in the presence of substoichiometric amounts of  $\text{Fe}^{3+}$  or  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$ . Figure 14A shows  $\text{H}_2\text{O}_2$  produced by  $\text{A}\beta_{1-42}$  (in PBS, pH 7.4, under ambient gas conditions, 1 hour, 37°C) following co-incubation with various concentrations of catalase in the presence of 1  $\mu$ M  $\text{Fe}^{3+}$ . Figure 14B shows a comparison of  $\text{H}_2\text{O}_2$  generation by variant  $\text{A}\beta$  species:  $\text{A}\beta_{1-42}$ ,  $\text{A}\beta_{1-40}$ , rat  $\text{A}\beta_{1-40}$ ,  $\text{A}\beta_{40-1}$ , and  $\text{A}\beta_{1-28}$  (vehicle conditions as in Figure 14A). Figure 14C shows the effect of metal chelators (200  $\mu$ M) on  $\text{H}_2\text{O}_2$  production from  $\text{A}\beta_{1-42}$  when incubated in the presence of  $\text{Fe}^{3+}$  or  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$  (1  $\mu$ M) (vehicle conditions as in Figure 14A). BC = Bathocuproinedisulfonate, BP = Bathophenanthroline-disulfonate. The effects of DFO were assessed in the presence of  $\text{Fe}^{3+}$ , and TETA was assessed in the presence of  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$ , as indicated. Figure 14D shows  $\text{H}_2\text{O}_2$  produced by  $\text{A}\beta_{1-42}$ ,  $\text{A}\beta_{1-40}$ , and Vitamin C in the presence of  $\text{Fe}^{3+}$  (1  $\mu$ M) (in PBS, pH 7.4 buffer, 1 hr, 37°C) under various dissolved gas conditions (described in Figure 13B): ambient air,  $\text{O}_2$  enrichment, and anaerobic (Ar) conditions, as

indicated. Figure 14E shows  $\text{H}_2\text{O}_2$  produced by  $\text{A}\beta_{1-42}$ ,  $\text{A}\beta_{1-40}$ , and Vitamin C in the presence of  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$  (1  $\mu\text{M}$ ) (in PBS, pH 7.4 buffer, 1 hr,  $37^\circ\text{C}$ ) under various dissolved gas conditions (as in Figure 14D). All data points are means  $\pm$ SD,  $n = 3$ .

5        **Figure 15A and 15B** are graphical representations showing superoxide anion detection. Figure 15A shows the spectrophotometric absorbance at 250 nm (after subtracting buffer blanks) for  $\text{A}\beta_{1-42}$  (10  $\mu\text{M}$ , in PBS, pH 7.4, with 1  $\mu\text{M}$   $\text{Fe}^{3+}$ , incubated 1 hr,  $37^\circ\text{C}$ ) under ambient air (+ 100 U/mL superoxide dismutase, SOD),  $\text{O}_2$  enrichment, and anaerobic (Ar) buffer gas conditions (described in  
10        Figure 13B). Figure 15B shows the spectrophotometric absorbance at 250 nm (after subtracting buffer blanks) for variant  $\text{A}\beta$  peptides:  $\text{A}\beta_{1-42}$ ,  $\text{A}\beta_{1-40}$ , rat  $\text{A}\beta_{1-40}$ ,  $\text{A}\beta_{40-1}$ , and  $\text{A}\beta_{1-28}$  (10  $\mu\text{M}$  in PBS, pH 7.4, with 1  $\mu\text{M}$   $\text{Fe}^{3+}$ , incubated 1 hr,  $37^\circ\text{C}$ , under ambient buffer gas conditions). All data points are means  $\pm$ SD,  $n = 3$ .

15        **Figure 16A and 16B** are graphical representations showing production of the hydroxyl radical ( $\text{OH}^\bullet$ ) from the incubation of  $\text{A}\beta$  in the presence of substoichiometric amounts of  $\text{Fe}^{3+}$  or  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$ . Figure 16A shows the signal from the TBARS assay of  $\text{OH}^\bullet$  produced from Vitamin C (100  $\mu\text{M}$ ) and variant  $\text{A}\beta$  species (10  $\mu\text{M}$ ):  $\text{A}\beta_{1-42}$ ,  $\text{A}\beta_{1-40}$ , rat  $\text{A}\beta_{1-40}$ ,  $\text{A}\beta_{40-1}$ , and  $\text{A}\beta_{1-28}$  (in PBS, pH 7.4, with 1  $\mu\text{M}$   $\text{Fe}^{3+}$  or  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$  as indicated, incubated 1 hr,  $37^\circ\text{C}$ , under ambient buffer gas  
20        conditions). Figure 16B illustrates the effect of  $\text{OH}^\bullet$ -specific scavengers upon  $\text{OH}^\bullet$  generation by Vitamin C and  $\text{A}\beta_{1-42}$ . Mannitol (5 mM, Sigma) or dimethyl sulfoxide (DMSO, 5 mM, Sigma), was co-incubated with Vitamin C (10  $\mu\text{M}$  + 500  $\mu\text{M}$   $\text{H}_2\text{O}_2$ ) or  $\text{A}\beta_{1-42}$  (10  $\mu\text{M}$ ) (conditions as for Figure 16A). All data points are means  $\pm$ SD,  $n = 3$ .

25        **Figure 17** shows the reversibility of zinc-induced  $\text{A}\beta_{1-40}$  aggregation with EDTA. Aggregation induced by pH 5.5 was not reversible in the same manner.

**Figure 18** shows the reversibility of zinc-induced aggregation of  $\text{A}\beta_{1-40}$  mixed with 5%  $\text{A}\beta_{1-42}$ .

30        **Figures 19A-19C** show dilution curves for TPEN, EGTA, and bathocuproine, respectively, used in extracting a representative AD brain sample.

- 14 -

Figures 19A-19C show that metal chelators promote the solubilization of A $\beta$  from human brain sample homogenates.

Figures 20A and 20B - Figure 20A shows a western blot of chelation response in a typical AD brain. Figure 20B shows a western blot comparing extracted A $\beta$  from an AD brain (AD) to that of sedimentable deposits from healthy brain tissue (young control - C). In the experiments of Figure 20B, TBS buffer was used rather than PBS.

Figure 21 shows an indicative blot from AD brain extract. The blot shows that chelation treatment results in disproportionate solubilization of A $\beta$  dimers, while PBS alone does not.

Figure 22 shows that recovery of total soluble protein is not affected by the presence of chelators in the homogenization step.

Figure 23 is a graphical representation of resolubilization of Zn, Cu, or pH induced aggregates *in vitro*. Values are expressed as a percentage of A $\beta$  signal after washing with TBS alone.

Figure 24 shows extraction of A $\beta$  from brain tissue with clioquinol. Undiluted (100%) clioquinol is 1.6  $\mu$ M. S1 and S2 represent two sequential extractions from AD-affected tissue.

Figures 25A and 25B: Figure 24A shows a western blot of A $\beta$  extracted from brain tissue by various concentrations of clioquinol. Figure 24B is a graphic representation of solubilization of A $\beta$  by clioquinol.

Figure 26 is a graph showing the proportion of total A $\beta$  extracted utilizing PBS buffer alone, clioquinol (CQ), bathocuproine (BC), or clioquinol together with bathocuproine (CQ + BC).

Figure 27 shows that extraction volume affects A $\beta$  solubilisation.

Figures 28A and 28B - Figure 28A shows the effect of metals upon the solubility of brain-derived A $\beta$ : copper and zinc can inhibit the solubilization of A $\beta$ . Figure 28B shows that A $\beta$  solubility in metal-depleted tissue is restored by supplementing with magnesium.

- 15 -

Figures 29A and 29B - Figure 29A shows that patterns of chelator-promoted solubilisation of A $\beta$  differ in AD and aged-matched, non-AD tissue.

Upper panel: representative blot from AD specimen.

Lower panel: representative blot from aged non-AD tissue bearing a similar total A $\beta$  load.

Figure 29B shows soluble A $\beta$  resulting from chelation treatment for AD and aged-matched, non-AD tissue, expressed as a percentage of the PBS-only treatment group.

Figure 30 shows that chelation promotes the solubilization of A $\beta_{1-40}$  and A $\beta_{1-42}$  from AD and non-AD tissue. Representative AD (left panels) and aged-matched control specimens (right panels) were prepared as described in PBS or 5 mM BC. Identical gels were run and Western blots were probed with mAbs WO2 (raised against residues 5-16, recognizes A $\beta_{1-40}$  and A $\beta_{1-42}$ ) G210 (raised against residues 35-40, recognizes A $\beta_{1-40}$ ) or G211 (raised against residues 35-42, recognizes A $\beta_{1-42}$ ) (See Ida, N., *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.*, 271:22908 (1996)).

Figure 31A and 31B - Figure 31A shows SDS-resistant polymerization of human A $\beta_{1-40}$  versus human A $\beta_{1-42}$  with Zn<sup>2+</sup> or Cu<sup>2+</sup>. Figure 31B shows SDS-resistant polymerization of rat A $\beta_{1-40}$  with Cu<sup>2+</sup> or Fe<sup>3+</sup>.

Figures 32A - 32C - Figure 32A shows H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub>/Cu induced SDS-resistant polymerization of A $\beta_{1-42}$  (2.5  $\mu$ M). Figure 32B shows H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub>/Fe induced SDS-resistant polymerization of A $\beta_{1-42}$  (2.5  $\mu$ M). Figure 32C shows that BC attenuates SDS-resistant polymerization of A $\beta_{1-42}$  (2.5  $\mu$ M).

Figures 33A and 33B show that H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> generation is required for SDS-resistant polymerization of human A $\beta_{1-42}$ . Solution concentrations of metal ion and H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> were 30  $\mu$ M and 100  $\mu$ M, respectively. Figure 33A shows that TCEP (Tris(2-Carboxyethyl)-Phosphine Hydrochloride) attenuates SDS-resistant A $\beta_{1-42}$  polymerization. A $\beta_{1-42}$  (2.5  $\mu$ M), H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> (100  $\mu$ M), ascorbic acid (100  $\mu$ M), TCEP (100  $\mu$ M). Figure 33B shows that anoxic conditions prevent SDS-resistant A $\beta$  polymerization. A $\beta_{1-42}$  (2.5  $\mu$ M) was incubated with no metal or Cu<sup>2+</sup> at either pH 7.4 or 6.6 and incubated for 60 min. at 25°C under normal or argon purged

conditions. Argon was continuously bubbled through the buffer for 2 h (at 20°C) before the remainder of the incubation components were added.

Figures 34A-34E show dissolution of SDS-resistant A $\beta$  polymers. Figure 34A shows that chaotropic agents are unable to disrupt polymerization. Figure 34B shows that metal ion chelators disrupt SDS-resistant A $\beta_{1-40}$  polymers. Figure 34C shows that metal ion chelators disrupt SDS-resistant A $\beta_{1-42}$  polymers. The chelators, their log stability constant, and their molecular weight, respectively, are as follows: TETA (tetraethylenediamine), 20.4, 146; EDTA (ethylenediaminetetra acetic acid), 18.1, 292; DTPA (diethylenetriaminopenta acetic acid), 21.1, 393; CDTA (*trans*-1,2-diaminocyclohexanetetra acetic acid), 22.0, 346; and NTA (nitrilotriacetic acid), 13.1, 191. Figure 34D shows that  $\alpha$ -helical promoting solvents and low pH disrupt polymers. Aliquots of A $\beta_{1-42}$  were incubated at pH 1 or with DMSO/HFIP (75%:25%) for 2 h (30 min., 37°C). Figure 34E shows that metal ion chelators disrupt SDS-resistant A $\beta$  polymers extracted from AD brains. Aliquots of SDS-resistant A $\beta$  polymers extracted from AD brains were incubated with no chelator, TETA (1 mM or 5 mM) or BC (1 mM or 5 mM) for 2 h (30 min., 37°C) and aliquots collected for analysis. Monomer A $\beta_{1-40}$  is indicated.

### *Detailed Description of the Preferred Embodiments*

#### *Definitions*

In the description that follows, a number of terms are utilized extensively. In order to provide a clear and consistent understanding of the specification and claims, including the scope to be given such terms, the following definitions are provided.

A $\beta$  peptide is also known in the art as A $\beta$ ,  $\beta$  protein,  $\beta$ -A4 and A4. In the present invention, the A $\beta$  peptide may be comprised of peptides A $\beta_{1-39}$ , A $\beta_{1-40}$ , A $\beta_{1-41}$ , A $\beta_{1-42}$ , and A $\beta_{1-43}$ . The most preferred embodiment of the invention makes use of A $\beta_{1-40}$ . However, any of the A $\beta$  peptides may be employed according to

- 17 -

the present invention. A $\beta$  peptides of the invention include A $\beta_{X-39}$ , A $\beta_{X-40}$ , A $\beta_{X-42}$ , and A $\beta_{X-43}$ , where X is less than or equal to 17; and A $\beta_{Y-17}$ , where Y is less than or equal to 5. The sequence of A $\beta$  peptide is found in Hilbich, C., *et al.*, *J. Mol. Biol.* 228:460-473 (1992).

5        **Amyloid** as is commonly known in the art, and as is intended in the present specification, is a form of aggregated protein.

**Amyloidosis** is any disease characterized by the extracellular accumulation of amyloid in various organs and tissues of the body.

10        **A $\beta$  Amyloid** is an aggregated A $\beta$  peptide. It is found in the brains of patients afflicted with AD and DS and may accumulate following head injuries.

15        **Biological fluid** means fluid obtained from a person or animal which is produced by said person or animal. Examples of biological fluids include but are not limited to cerebrospinal fluid (CSF), blood, serum, and plasma. In the present invention, biological fluid includes whole or any fraction of such fluids derived by purification by any means, *e.g.*, by ultrafiltration or chromatography.

**Copper(II)**, unless otherwise indicated, means salts of Cu<sup>2+</sup>, *i.e.*, Cu<sup>2+</sup> in any form, soluble or insoluble.

**Copper(I)**, unless otherwise indicated, means salts of Cu<sup>+</sup>, *i.e.*, Cu<sup>+</sup> in any form, soluble or insoluble.

20        **Metal chelators** include metal-binding molecules characterized by two or more polar groups which participate in forming a complex with a metal ion, and are generally well-known in the art for their ability to bind metals competitively.

25        **Physiological solution** as used in the present specification means a solution which comprises compounds at physiological pH, about 7.4, which closely represents a bodily or biological fluid, such as CSF, blood, plasma, *et cetera*.

**Treatment:** delay or prevention of onset, slowing down or stopping the progression, aggravation, or deterioration of the symptoms and signs of

Alzheimer's disease, as well as amelioration of the symptoms and signs, or curing the disease by reversing the physiological and anatomical damage.

Zinc, unless otherwise indicated, means salts of zinc, i.e.,  $Zn^{2+}$  in any form, soluble or insoluble.

5 *Methods for Identifying Agents Useful in the Treatment of AD*

The aim of the present invention is to clarify both the factors which contribute to the neurotoxicity of  $A\beta$  polymers and the mechanism which underlies their formation. These findings can then be used to (i) identify agents that can be used to decrease the neurotoxicity of  $A\beta$ , as well as the formation of  
10  $A\beta$  polymers, and (ii) utilize such agents to develop methods of preventing, treating or alleviating the symptoms of AD and related disorders.

The present invention relates to the unexpected discovery that  $A\beta$  peptides directly produce oxidative stress through the generation of abundant reactive oxygen species (ROS), which include hydroxyl radical ( $OH\cdot$ ) and hydrogen  
15 peroxide ( $H_2O_2$ ). The production of ROS occurs by a metal (Cu, Fe) dependant, pH mediated mechanism, wherein the reduction of  $Cu^{2+}$  to  $Cu^+$ , or  $Fe^{3+}$  to  $Fe^{2+}$ , is catalyzed by  $A\beta$ .  $A\beta$  is highly efficient at reducing  $Cu^{2+}$  and  $Fe^{3+}$ .

All the redox properties of  $A\beta_{1-40}$  (the most abundant form of soluble  $A\beta$ ) are exaggerated in  $A\beta_{1-42}$ . Additionally,  $A\beta_{1-42}$ , but not  $A\beta_{1-40}$ , recruits  $O_2$  into  
20 spontaneous generation of another ROS,  $O_2\cdot$ , which also occurs in a metal-dependent manner. The exaggerated redox activity of  $A\beta_{1-42}$  and its enhanced ability to generate ROS are likely to be the explanation for its neurotoxic properties. Interestingly, the rat homologue of  $A\beta$ , which has 3 substitutions that have been shown to attenuate zinc binding and zinc-mediated precipitation, also  
25 exhibits less redox activity than its human counterpart. This may explain why the rat is exceptional in that it is the only mammal that does not exhibit amyloid pathology with age. All other mammals analyzed to date possess the human  $A\beta$  sequence.



- 19 -

The sequence of ROS generation by A $\beta$  follows the pathway of superoxide-dismutation, which leads to hydrogen peroxide production in a Cu/Fe-dependent manner. After forming H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub>, the hydroxyl radical (OH•) is rapidly formed by a Fenton reaction with the Fe or Cu that is present, even when these metals are only at trace concentrations. The OH• radical is very reactive and rapidly attacks the A $\beta$  peptide, causing it to polymerize. This is very likely to be the chemical mechanism that causes the SDS-resistant polymerization that is seen in mature plaque amyloid. Importantly, the redox activity of A $\beta$  is not attenuated by precipitation of the peptide, suggesting that, *in vivo*, amyloid deposits could be capable of generating ROS *in situ* on an enduring basis. This suggests that the major source of the oxidative stress in an AD-affected brain are amyloid deposits.

A model for free radical and amyloid formation in AD is shown in Figure 12. The proposed mechanism is explained as follows.

(1) Soluble and precipitated A $\beta$  species possess superoxide dismutase (SOD)-like activity. Superoxide (O<sub>2</sub><sup>-</sup>), the substrate for the dismutation, is generated both by spillover from mitochondrial respiratory metabolism, and by A $\beta$ <sub>1-42</sub> itself. A $\beta$ -mediated dismutation produces hydrogen peroxide (H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub>) (see Figure 11), requiring Cu<sup>2+</sup> or Fe<sup>3+</sup>, which are reduced during the reaction. Since H<sup>+</sup> is required for H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> production, an acidotic environment will increase the reaction.

(2) H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> is relatively stable, and freely permeable across cell membranes. Normally, it will be broken down by intercellular catalase or glutathione peroxidase.

(3) In aging and AD, levels of H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> are high, and catalase and peroxidase activities are low. If H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> is not completely catalyzed, it will react with reduced Cu<sup>+</sup> and Fe<sup>2+</sup> in the vicinity of A $\beta$  to generate the highly reactive hydroxyl radical (OH•) by Fenton chemistry.

(4) OH• engenders a non-specific stress and inflammatory response in local tissue. Among the neurochemicals that are released from microglia and possibly neurons in the response are Zn<sup>2+</sup>, Cu<sup>2+</sup> and soluble A $\beta$ . Familial AD

- 20 -

increases the likelihood that  $A\beta_{1-42}$  will be released at this point. Local acidosis is also part of the stress/inflammatory response. These factors combine to make  $A\beta$  precipitate and accumulate, presumably so that it may function *in situ* as an SOD, since these factors induce reversible aggregation. Hence, more soluble  $A\beta$  species decorate the perimeter of the accumulating plaque deposits.

(5) If  $A\beta$  encounters  $OH^\bullet$ , it will cause covalently cross-linking during the oligomerization process, making it a more difficult accumulation to resolubilize, and leading to the formation of SDS-resistant oligomers characteristic of plaque amyloid.

(6) If  $A\beta_{1-42}$  accumulates, it has the property of recruiting  $O_2$  as a substrate for the abundant production of  $O_2^\bullet$  by a process that is still not understood. Since  $O_2$  is abundant in the brain,  $A\beta_{1-42}$  is responsible for setting off a vicious cycle in which the accumulation of covalently linked  $A\beta$  is a product of the unusual ability of  $A\beta$  to reduce  $O_2$ , and feed an abundant substrate ( $O_2^\bullet$ ) to itself for dismutation, leading to  $OH^\bullet$  formation. The production of abundant free radicals by the accumulating amyloid may further damage many systems including metal regulatory proteins, thus compounding the problem. This suggests that the major source of the oxidative stress in an AD-affected brain are amyloid deposits.

The metal-dependent chemistry of  $A\beta$ -mediated superoxide dismutation is reminiscent of the activity of superoxide dismutase (SOD). Interestingly, mutations of SOD cause amyotrophic lateral sclerosis, another neurodegenerative disorder. SOD is predominantly intracellular, whereas  $A\beta$  is constitutively found in the extracellular spaces where it accumulates. Investigation of  $A\beta$  by laser flash photolysis confirmed the peptide's SOD-like activity, suggesting that  $A\beta$  may be an anti-oxidant under physiological circumstances. Since  $H_2O_2$  has been shown to induce the production of  $A\beta$ , the accumulation of  $A\beta$  in AD may reflect a response to an oxidant stress paradoxically caused by  $A\beta$  excess. This may cause and, in turn, be compounded by, damage to the biometal homeostatic mechanisms in the brain environment.

Thus, it has recently been discovered (i) that much of the A $\beta$  aggregate in AD-affected brain is held together by zinc and copper, (ii) that A $\beta$  peptides exhibit Fe/Cu-dependent redox activity similar to that of SOD, (iii) that A $\beta_{1-42}$  is especially redox reactive and has the unusual property of reducing O $_2$  to O $_2^{\cdot -}$ , and (iv) that deregulation of A $\beta$  redox reactivity causes the peptide to conveniently polymerize. Since these reactions must be strongly implicated in the pathogenetic events of AD, they offer promising targets for therapeutic drug design.

The discovery that A $\beta$  can generate H $_2$ O $_2$  and Cu $^{+}$ , both of which are associated with neurotoxic effects, offers an explanation for the neurotoxicity of A $\beta$  polymers. These findings suggest that it may be possible to lessen the neurotoxicity of A $\beta$  by controlling factors which alter the concentrations of Cu $^{+}$  and ROS, including hydrogen peroxide, being generated by accumulated and soluble A $\beta$ . It has been discovered that manipulation of factors such as zinc, copper, and pH can result in altered Cu $^{+}$  and H $_2$ O $_2$  production by A $\beta$ . Therefore, agents identified as being useful for the adjustment of the pH and levels of zinc and copper of the brain interstitium can be used to adjust the concentration of Cu $^{+}$  and H $_2$ O $_2$ , and can therefore be used to reduce the neurotoxic burden. Such agents will thus be a means of treating Alzheimer's disease.

#### *Agents Useful in the Treatment of AD*

A further aspect of the present invention is predicted in part on the elucidation of mechanisms of neurotoxicity in the brain in AD subjects. One mechanism involves a novel O $_2^{\cdot -}$  and biometal-dependent pathway of free radical generation by A $\beta$  peptides. The radicals of this aspect of the present invention may comprise reactive oxygen species (ROS) such as but not limited to O $_2^{\cdot -}$  and OH as well as radicalized A $\beta$  peptides. It is proposed, according to the present invention, that by interfering in the radical generating pathway, the neurotoxicity of the A $\beta$  peptides is reduced.

Accordingly, one aspect of the present invention contemplates a method for treating Alzheimer's disease (AD) in a subject, said method comprising

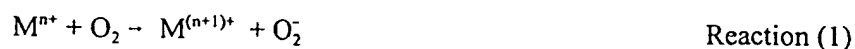
- 22 -

administering to said subject an effective amount of an agent which is capable of inhibiting or otherwise reducing metal-mediated production of free radicals.

The preferred agents according to this aspect are metal chelators, metal complexing compounds, antioxidants and compounds capable of reducing radical formation of A $\beta$  peptides or mediated by A $\beta$  peptides. Particularly preferred metal chelators and metal complexors are capable of interacting with metals (M) having either a reduced charge state M<sup>n+</sup> or an oxidized state of M<sup>(n+1)+</sup>. Even more particularly, M is Fe and/or Cu.

It is proposed that interactions of A $\beta$  with Fe and Cu are of significance to the genesis of the oxidation insults that are observed in the AD-affected brain. This is due to redox-active metal ions being concentrated in brain neurons and participating in the generation of ROS or other radicals by transferring electrons in their reduced state and described in the following reactions:

Reduced Fe/Cu reacts with molecular oxygen to generate the superoxide anion.



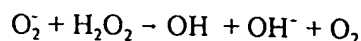
The O<sub>2</sub><sup>-</sup> generated undergoes dismutation to H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> either catalyzed by SOD or spontaneously.



The reaction of reduced metals with H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> generates the highly reactive hydroxyl radical by the Fenton reaction.



Additionally, the Haber-Weiss reaction can form OH in a reaction catalyzed by M<sup>(n+1)+</sup>/M<sup>n+</sup> (Miller *et al.*, 1990).



Reaction (4)

Still more preferably, the agent comprises one or more of bathocuproine and/or bathophenanthroline or compounds related thereto at the structural and/or functional levels. Reference to compounds such as bathocuproine and bathophenanthroline include functional derivatives, homologues and analogues thereof.

Accordingly, another aspect of the present invention provides a method for treating AD in a subject said method comprising administering to said subject an effective amount of an agent comprising at least one metal chelator and/or metal complexing compound for a time and under conditions sufficient to inhibit or otherwise reduce metal-mediated production of free radicals.

In one aspect, the free radicals are reactive oxygen species such as  $\text{O}_2^\bullet$  or  $\text{OH}^\bullet$ . In another aspect, the free radicals include forms of  $\text{A}\beta$ . However, in a broader sense, it has been found that the metal-mediated  $\text{A}\beta$  reactions in the brain of AD patients results in the generation of reduced metals and hydrogen peroxide, as well as superoxide and hydroxyl radicals. Furthermore, formation of any other radical or reactive oxygen species by interaction of any of these products with any other metabolic substrate (*e.g.*, superoxide + nitric acid = peroxynitrite) contributes to the pathology observed in AD and Down's syndrome patients.  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$  reaction with  $\text{A}\beta$  generates  $\text{Cu}^+$ ,  $\text{A}\beta^\bullet$ ,  $\text{O}_2^\bullet$ ,  $\text{H}_2\text{O}_2$ , and  $\text{OH}^\bullet$ , all of which not only directly damage the cells, but also react with biochemical substrates like nitric oxide.

Yet a further aspect of the present invention is directed to a method for treating AD in a subject, said method comprising administering to said subject an effective amount of an agent, said agent comprising a metal chelator, metal complexing compound or a compound capable of interfering with metal mediated free radical formation mediated by  $\text{A}\beta$  peptides for a time and under conditions sufficient to inhibit or otherwise reduce production of radicals.

- 24 -

The preferred metals according to these aspects of the present invention include Cu and Fe and their various oxidation states. Most preferred are reduced forms of copper ( $\text{Cu}^+$ ) and iron ( $\text{Fe}^{2+}$ ).

Another mechanism elucidated in accordance with the present invention concerns the formation of aggregates of  $\text{A}\beta$ , as in conditions involving amyloidosis. In a preferred embodiment, the aggregates are those of amyloid plaques occurring in the brains of AD-affected subjects.

The aggregates according to this aspect of the present invention are non-fibrillary and fibrillary aggregates and are held together by the presence of a metal such as zinc and copper. A method of treatment involves resolubilizing these  $\text{A}\beta$  aggregates.

The data indicate that Zn-induced  $\text{A}\beta_{1-40}$  aggregation is completely reversible in the presence of divalent metal ion chelating agents. This suggests that zinc binding may be a reversible, normal function of  $\text{A}\beta$  and implicates other neurochemical mechanisms in the formation of amyloid. A process involving irreversible  $\text{A}\beta$  aggregation, such as the polymerization of  $\text{A}\beta$  monomers, in the formation of polymeric species of  $\text{A}\beta$  that are present in amyloid plaques is thus a more plausible explanation for the formation of neurotoxic polymeric  $\text{A}\beta$  species.

According to this aspect of the present invention, there is provided a method of treating AD in a subject comprising administering to said subject an agent capable of promoting, inducing or otherwise facilitating resolubilization of amyloid deposits for a time and under conditions to effect said treatment.

With respect to this aspect of the present invention, it is proposed that a metal chelator or metal complexing agent be administered.  $\text{A}\beta$  deposits which are composed of fibrillary and non-fibrillary aggregates may be resolubilized by the metal chelating or metal complexing agents, according to this aspect. While fibrile aggregations *per se*, may not be fully disassociated by administration of such agents, overall deposit resolubilization approaches 70%.

- 25 -

In addition, the agent of this aspect of the present invention may comprise a metal chelator or metal complexing agent alone or in combination with another active ingredient such as but not limited to rifampicin, disulfiram, indomethacin or related compounds. Preferred metal chelators are DTPA, bathocuproine, bathophenanthroline, and penicillamine or related compounds.

A "related" compound according to these and other aspects of the present invention are compounds related to the levels of structure or function and include derivatives, homologues and analogues thereof.

Accordingly, the present invention contemplates compositions such as pharmaceutical compositions comprising an active agent and one or more pharmaceutically, acceptable carriers and/or diluents. The active agent may be a single compound such as a metal chelator or metal complexing agent or may be a combination of compounds such as a metal chelating or complexing compound and another compound. Preferred active agents include, for reducing radical formation, bathocuproine and/or bathophenanthroline; and for promoting resolubilization, DTPA, bathocuproine, bathophenanthroline, and penicillamine or derivatives, homologues or analogues thereof, or any combination thereof.

Further, it has been found that the agents of the present invention may be administered along with the compound clioquinol. Clioquinol has been shown to be particularly effective in resolubilizing A $\beta$  aggregates in combination with other chelators. Most preferably clioquinol is administered in combination with bathocuproine.

It has also been found that there is a clioquinol concentration "window" within which the A $\beta$  aggregates are dissolved. Increasing the concentration of clioquinol above the optimal window concentration not only is toxic to the patient but also sharply drops the dissolution effect of clioquinol on the A $\beta$  amyloid. Similarly, amounts below that of the window are too small to result in any dissolution.

Therefore, for each given patient, the attending physician need be mindful of the window effect and attend to varying the dosages of clioquinol so that

during the course of administration, clioquinol concentrations would be varied frequently to randomly allow achieving the most effective concentration for dissolving A $\beta$  amyloid deposits in the given patient.

It is, therefore, desired that the plasma levels of clioquinol not be steady state, but be kept fluctuating between 0.01  $\mu$ M, but not greater than 2  $\mu$ M. Since the drug is absorbed to reach peak plasma levels within 30 minutes of oral ingestion, and since the excretion half life is about 1-3 hours, the best way to dose the patient is with oral doses no more often than every three hours, preferably every six hours or eight hours, but as infrequently as once every day or once every two days are expected to be therapeutic.

An oral dose of 200 mg/kg achieves 5  $\mu$ M plasma levels in rats, and 10-30  $\mu$ M in dogs. An oral dose of 500 mg/kg achieves 20-70  $\mu$ M in monkeys. The drug is freely permeable into the brain and is rapidly excreted.

Therefore, in humans, it is expected that a plasma level of 0.5  $\mu$ M would be achieved within 30 minutes of ingesting 10 mg/kg body weight. In a 70 kg person this is 700 mg of clioquinol. Therefore, a dose of 700 mg four times a day (2800 mg/day) would be therapeutic.

However, sustained treatment with doses of clioquinol at a dose as low as 10 mg/kg/day causes the neurological side effect, subacute myelo-optic neuritis. Therefore, dosage that high is undesirable. This is equivalent to 700 mg/day. The side effect is believed to be due to loss of vitamin B12. Therefore, co-therapy with vitamin B12 100  $\mu$ M/day orally or, preferably, 1000  $\mu$ M/month intramuscularly, is to be administered with clioquinol treatment to abolish this side effect.

To minimize the chances of this side effect, a lower dose of clioquinol can also be used - 100 mg, three or four times a day would achieve peak plasma levels of about 0.1  $\mu$ M, and is likely to be therapeutic without putting the patient at risk for neurological side effects. Nevertheless, co-administration of Vitamin B12 should be mandatory.



- 27 -

For the treatment of moderately affected or severely affected patients, where risking the neurological side effects is less of a concern since the quality of their life is very poor, the patient may be put on a program of treatment (after informed consent) consisting of high dose clioquinol for 1 to 21 days, but preferably no more than 14 days, followed by a period of low dose therapy for seven days to three months. A convenient schedule would be two weeks of high dose therapy followed by two weeks of low dose therapy, oscillating between high and low dose periods for up to 12 months. If after 12 months the patient has made no clinical gains on high/low clioquinol therapy, the treatment should be discontinued. All regimens would be accompanied by Vitamin B12 co-therapy.

Another typical case would be the treatment of a mildly affected individual. Such a patient would be treated with low dose clioquinol for up to 12 months. If after 6 months no clinical gains have been made, the patient could then be placed on the high/low alternation regimen for up to another 12 months.

Particular concentrations and modes of therapy will vary depending on the particular clioquinol-containing combination administered.

Accordingly, the present invention contemplates compositions such as pharmaceutical compositions comprising an active agent and one or more pharmaceutically acceptable carriers and/or diluents. The active agent may be clioquinol or a combination of clioquinol and another metal chelating compound.

The pharmaceutical forms containing the active agents may be administered in any convenient manner either orally or parenterally such as by intravenous, intraperitoneal, subcutaneous, rectal, implant, transdermal, slow release, intrabuccal, intracerebral or intranasal administration. Generally, the active agents need to pass the blood brain barrier and may have to be chemically modified, *e.g.* made hydrophobic, to facilitate this or be administered directly to the brain or *via* other suitable routes. For injectable use, sterile aqueous solutions (where water soluble) are generally used or alternatively sterile powders for the extemporaneous preparation of sterile injectable solutions may be used. It must be stable under the conditions of manufacture and storage and must be preserved

against the contaminating action of microorganisms such as bacteria and fungi. The carrier can be a solvent or dispersion medium containing, for example, water, ethanol, polyol (for example, glycerol, propylene glycol and liquid polyethylene glycol, and the like), suitable mixtures thereof, and vegetable oils. The  
5 preventions of the action of microorganisms can be brought about by various antibacterial and antifungal agents, for example, parabens, chlorobutanol, phenol, sorbic acid, thimerosal and the like. In many cases, it will be preferable to include isotonic agents, for example, sugars or sodium chloride. Prolonged absorption of the injectable compositions can be brought about by the use in the  
10 compositions of agents delaying absorption, for example, aluminum monostearate and gelatin.

Sterile injectable solutions are prepared by incorporating the active agents in the required amount in the appropriate solvent with various of the other ingredients enumerated above, as required, followed by sterilization by, for  
15 example, filtration or irradiation. In the case of sterile powders for the preparation of sterile injectable solutions, the preferred methods of preparation are vacuum drying and the freeze-drying technique which yield a powder of the active ingredient plus any additional desired ingredient from previously sterile-filtered solution thereof. Preferred compositions or preparations according  
20 to the present invention are prepared so that an injectable dosage unit contains between about 0.25  $\mu$ g and 500 mg of active compound.

When the active agents are suitably protected they may be orally administered, for example, with an inert diluent or with an assimilable edible carrier, or it may be enclosed in hard or soft shell gelatin capsule, or it may be  
25 compressed into tablets, or it may be incorporated directly with the food of the diet. For oral therapeutic administration, the active compound may be incorporated with excipients and used in the form of ingestible tablets, buccal tablets, troches, capsules, elixirs, suspensions, syrups, wafers, and the like. Such compositions and preparations should contain at least 1% by weight of active  
30 compound. The percentage of the compositions and preparations may, of course,

- 29 -

be varied and may conveniently be between about 5 to about 80% of the weight of the unit. The amount of active compound in such therapeutically useful compositions is such that a suitable dosage will be obtained. Preferred compositions or preparations according to the present invention are prepared so that an oral dosage unit form contains between about 1.0  $\mu$ g and 2000 mg of active compound.

The tablets, troches, pills, capsules and the like may also contain other components such as listed hereafter: A binder such as gum, acacia, corn starch or gelatin; excipients such as dicalcium phosphate; a disintegrating agent such as corn starch, potato starch, alginic acid and the like; a lubricant such as magnesium stearate; and a sweetening agent such a sucrose, lactose or saccharin may be added or a flavoring agent such as peppermint, oil of wintergreen, or cherry flavoring. When the dosage unit form is a capsule, it may contain, in addition to materials of the above type, a liquid carrier. Various other materials may be present as coatings or to otherwise modify the physical form of the dosage unit. For instance, tablets, pills, or capsules may be coated with shellac, sugar or both. A syrup or elixir may contain the active compound, sucrose as a sweetening agent, methyl and propylparabens as preservatives, a dye and flavoring such as cherry or orange flavor. Of course, any material used in preparing any dosage unit form should be pharmaceutically pure and substantially non-toxic in the amounts employed. In addition, the active compound(s) may be incorporated into sustained-release preparations and formulations.

Pharmaceutically acceptable carriers and/or diluents include any and all solvents, dispersion media, coatings, antibacterial and antifungal agents, isotonic and absorption delaying agents and the like. The use of such media and agents for pharmaceutical active substances is well known in the art. Except insofar as any conventional media or agent is incompatible with the active ingredient, use thereof in the therapeutic compositions is contemplated. Supplementary active ingredients can also be incorporated into the compositions.

- 30 -

It is especially advantageous to formulate parenteral compositions in dosage unit form for ease of administration and uniformity of dosage. Dosage unit form as used herein refers to physically discrete units suited as unitary dosages for the mammalian subjects to be treated; each unit containing a predetermined quantity of active material calculated to produce the desired therapeutic effect in association with the required pharmaceutical carrier. The specification for the novel dosage unit forms of the invention are dictated by and directly dependent on (a) the unique characteristics of the active material and the particular therapeutic effect to be achieved, and (b) the limitations inherent in the art of compounding such an active material for the treatment of disease in living subjects having a diseased condition in which bodily health is impaired as herein disclosed in detail.

The principal active ingredient is compounded for convenient and effective administration in effective amounts with a suitable pharmaceutically acceptable carrier in dosage unit form as hereinbefore disclosed. A unit dosage form can, for example, contain the principal active compound in amounts ranging from 0.5  $\mu$ g to about 2000 mg. Alternatively, amounts ranging from 200 ng/kg/body weight to above 10 mg/kg/body weight may be administered. The amounts may be for individual active agents or for the combined total of active agents.

Compositions of the present invention include all compositions wherein the compounds of the present invention are contained in an amount which is effective to achieve their intended purpose. They may be administered by any means that achieve their intended purpose. The dosage administered will depend on the age, health, and weight of the recipient, kind of concurrent treatment, if any, frequency of the treatment, and the nature of the effect desired. The dosage of the various compositions can be modified by comparing the relative *in vivo* potencies of the drugs and the bioavailability using no more than routine experimentation.

- 31 -

The pharmaceutical compositions of the invention may be administered to any animal which may experience the beneficial effects of the compounds of the invention. Foremost among such animals are mammals, *e.g.*, humans, although the invention is not intended to be so limited.

5       The following examples are provided by way of illustration to further describe certain preferred embodiments of the invention, and are not intended to be limiting of the present invention, unless specified.

### *Examples*

#### *Example 1*

##### 10       *Copper-Induced, pH Dependent Aggregation of A $\beta$*

###### *Materials and Methods*

###### *a)   Preparation of A $\beta$ Stock*

Human A $\beta$  peptide was synthesized, purified and characterized by HPLC analysis, amino acid analysis and mass spectroscopy by W.M. Keck Foundation  
15       Biotechnology Resource Laboratory (Yale University, New Haven, CT). Synthetic A $\beta$  peptide solutions were dissolved in trifluoroethanol (30 % in Milli-Q water (Millipore Corporation, Milford, MA)) or 20 mM HEPES (pH 8.5) at a concentration of 0.5-1.0 g/ml, centrifuged for 20 min. at 10,000g and the supernatant (stock A $\beta$ ) used for subsequent aggregation assays on the day of the  
20       experiment. The concentration of stock A $\beta$  was determined by UV spectroscopy at 214 nm or by Micro BCA protein assay (Pierce, Rockford, IL). The Micro BCA assay was performed by adding 10 $\mu$ l of stock A $\beta$  (or bovine serum albumin standard) to 140  $\mu$ l of distilled water, and then adding an equal volume of supernatant (150 $\mu$ l) to a 96-well plate and measuring the absorbance at 562 nm.  
25       The concentration of A $\beta$  was determined from the BSA standard curve. Prior to use all buffers and stock solutions of metal ions were filtered through a 0.22  $\mu$ m

filter (Gelan Sciences, Ann Arbor, MI) to remove any particulate matter. All metal ions were the chloride salt, except lead nitrate.

*b) Aggregation Assays*

A $\beta$  stock was diluted to 2.5  $\mu$ M in 150 mM NaCl and 20 mM glycine (pH 3-4.5), MES (pH 5-6.2) or HEPES (pH 6.4-8.8), with or without metal ions, incubated (30 min., 37 °C), centrifuged (20 min., 10 000g). The amount of protein in the supernatant was determined by the Micro BCA protein assay as described above.

*c) Turbidometric Assays*

Turbidity measurements were performed as described by Huang, X., *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 272:26464-26470 (1997), except A $\beta$  stock was brought to 10  $\mu$ M (300  $\mu$ l) in 20 mM HEPES buffer, 150 mM NaCl (pH 6.6, 6.8 or 7.4) with or without metal ions prior to incubation (30 min., 37°C). To investigate the pH reversibility of Cu $^{2+}$ -induced A $\beta$  aggregation, 25  $\mu$ M A $\beta_{1-40}$  and 25  $\mu$ M Cu $^{2+}$  were mixed in 67 mM phosphate buffer, 150 mM NaCl (pH 7.4) and turbidity measurements were taken at four 1 min. intervals. Subsequently, 20  $\mu$ l aliquots of 10 mM EDTA or 10 mM Cu $^{2+}$  were added into the wells alternatively, and, following a 2 min. delay, a further four readings were taken at 1 min. intervals. After the final EDTA addition and turbidity reading, the mixtures were incubated for an additional 30 min. before taking final readings. To investigate the reversibility of pH mediated Cu $^{2+}$ -induced A $\beta_{1-40}$  aggregation, 10  $\mu$ M A $\beta$  and 30  $\mu$ M Cu $^{2+}$  were mixed in 67 mM phosphate buffer, 150 mM NaCl (pH 7.4) and an initial turbidity measurement taken. Subsequently, the pH of the solution was successively decreased to 6.6 and then increased back to 7.5. The pH of the reaction was monitored with a microprobe (Lazar Research Laboratories Inc., Los Angeles, CA) and the turbidity read at 5 min. intervals for up to 30 min. This cycle was repeated three times.

d) *Immunofiltration Detection of Low Concentrations of A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> Aggregate*

Physiological concentrations of A $\beta$  (8 nM) were brought to 150 mM NaCl, 20 mM HEPES (pH 6.6 or 7.4), 100 nM BSA with CuCl<sub>2</sub> (0, 0.1, 0.2, 0.5 and 2  $\mu$ M) and incubated (30 min., 37°C). The reaction mixtures (200  $\mu$ l) were then placed into the 96-well Easy-Titer ELIFA system (Pierce, Rockford, IL) and filtered through a 0.22  $\mu$ m cellulose acetate filter (MSI, Westboro, MA). Aggregated particles were fixed to the membrane (0.1% glutaraldehyde, 15 min.), washed thoroughly and then probed with the anti-A $\beta$  mAb 6E10 (Senetek, Maryland Heights, MI). Blots were washed and exposed to film in the presence of ECL chemiluminescence reagents (Amersham, Buckinghamshire, England). Immunoreactivity was quantified by transmittance analysis of ECL film from the immunoblots.

e) *A $\beta$  Metal-capture ELISA*

A $\beta$  (1.5 ng/well) was incubated (37°C, 2 hr) in the wells of Cu<sup>2+</sup> coated microtiter plates (Xenopore, Hawthorne, NJ) with increasing concentrations of Cu<sup>2+</sup> (1-100 nM). Remaining ligand binding sites on well surfaces were blocked with 2% gelatin in tris-buffered saline (TBS) (3 hr at 37°C) prior to overnight incubation at room temperature with the anti-A $\beta$  mAb 6E10 (Senetek, Maryland Heights, MI). Anti-mouse IgG coupled to horseradish peroxidase was then added to each well and incubated for 3 hr at 37°C. Bound antibodies were detected by a 30 minute incubation with stable peroxidase substrate buffer/3,3',5,5'-Tetramethyl benzidine (SPSB/TMB) buffer, followed by the addition of 2 M sulfuric acid and measurement of the increase in absorbance at 450 nm.

f) *Extraction of A $\beta$  from Post-mortem Brain Tissue*

Identical regions of frontal cortex (0.5g) from post-mortem brains of individuals with AD, as well as non-AD conditions, were homogenized in TBS, pH 4.7  $\pm$  metal chelators. The homogenate was centrifuged and samples of the soluble supernatant as well as the pellet were extracted into SDS sample buffer

- 34 -

and assayed for A $\beta$  content by western blotting using monoclonal antibody (mAb) WO2. The data shows a typical (of n=12 comparisons) result comparing the amount of A $\beta$  extracted into the supernatant phase in AD compared to control (young adult) samples. N,N,N',N'-tetrakis [2-pyridyl-methyl] ethylenediamine (TPEN) (5  $\mu$ M) allows the visualization of a population of pelletable A $\beta$  that had not previously been recognized in unaffected brain samples ( Figure 8).

g) *A $\beta$  Polymerization by Copper*

Cu<sup>2+</sup>-induced SDS-resistant oligomerization of A $\beta$ : A $\beta$  (2.5  $\mu$ M), 150 mM NaCl, 20 mM hepes (pH 6.6, 7.4, 9) with or without ZnCl<sub>2</sub> or CuCl<sub>2</sub>. Following incubation (37°C), aliquots of each reaction (2 ng peptide) were collected at 0 d, 1 d, 3 d and 5 d and western blotted using anti-A $\beta$  monoclonal antibody 8E10 (Figure 9). Migration of the molecular size markers are indicated (kDa). The dimer formed under these conditions has been found to be SDS-resistant. Cu<sup>2+</sup> (2-30  $\mu$ M) induced SDS-resistant polymerization of peptide. Co-incubation with similar concentrations of Zn<sup>2+</sup> accelerates the polymerization, but zinc alone has no effect. The antioxidant sodium metabisulfite moderately attenuates the reaction, while ascorbic acid dramatically accelerates A $\beta$  polymerization. This suggests reduction of Cu<sup>2+</sup> to Cu<sup>+</sup> with the latter mediating SDS-resistant polymerization of A $\beta$ . Mannitol also abolishes the polymerization, suggesting that the polymerization is mediated by the generation of the hydroxyl radical by a Fenton reaction that recruits Cu<sup>+</sup>. It should be noted that other means of visualizing and/or determining the presence or absence of polymerization other than western blot analysis may be used. Such other means include but are not limited to density sedimentation by centrifugation of the samples.



## Results

It has previously been reported that  $\text{Zn}^{2+}$  induces rapid precipitation of  $\text{A}\beta$  *in vitro* (Bush, A.I., *et al.*, *Science* 265:1464 (1994)). This metal has an abnormal metabolism in AD and is highly concentrated in brain regions where  $\text{A}\beta$  precipitates. The present data indicate that under very slightly acidic conditions, such as in the lactic acidotic AD brain,  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$  strikingly induces the precipitation of  $\text{A}\beta$  through an unknown conformational shift. pH alone dramatically affects  $\text{A}\beta$  solubility, inducing precipitation when the pH of the incubation approaches the pI of the peptide (pH 5-6). Zinc induces 40-50% of the peptide to precipitate at pH > 6.2, below pH 6.2 the precipitating effects of  $\text{Zn}^{2+}$  and acid are not summative. At pH  $\leq$  5,  $\text{Zn}^{2+}$  has little effect upon  $\text{A}\beta$  solubility.  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$  is more effective than  $\text{Zn}^{2+}$  in precipitating  $\text{A}\beta$  and even induces precipitation at the physiologically relevant pH 6-7. Copper-induced precipitation of  $\text{A}\beta$  occurs as the pH falls below 7.0, comparable with conditions of acidosis (Yates, C.M., *et al.*, *J. Neurochem.* 55:1624 (1990)) in the AD brain. Investigation of the precipitating effects of a host or other metal ions in this system indicated that metal ion precipitation of  $\text{A}\beta$  was limited to copper and zinc, as illustrated, although  $\text{Fe}^{2+}$  possesses a partial capacity to induce precipitation (Bush, A.I., *et al.*, *Science* 268:1921 (1995)).

On the basis these *in vitro* findings, the possibility that  $\text{A}\beta$  deposits in the AD-affected brain may be held in assembly by zinc and copper ions was investigated. Roher and colleagues have recently shown that much of the  $\text{A}\beta$  that deposits in AD-affected cortex can be solubilized in water (Roher, A.E., *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 271:20631 (1996)). Supporting the clinical relevance of *in vitro* findings, it has recently been demonstrated that metal chelators increase the amount of  $\text{A}\beta$  extracted by Roher's technique (in neutral saline buffer), and that the extraction of  $\text{A}\beta$  is increased as the chelator employed has a higher affinity for zinc or copper. Hence TPEN is highly efficient in extracting  $\text{A}\beta$ , as are TETA, and bathocuproine, EGTA and EDTA are less efficient, requiring higher

- 36 -

concentrations 91 mM) to achieve the same level of recovery as say, TPEN (5  $\mu$ M). Zinc and copper ions (5-50  $\mu$ M) added back to the extracting solution abolish the recovery of A $\beta$  (which is subsequently extracted by the SDS sample buffer in the pellet fraction of the centrifuged brain homogenate suspension), but Ca<sup>2+</sup> and Mg<sup>2+</sup> added back to the chelator-mediated extracts of A $\beta$  cannot abolish A $\beta$  resolubilization from AD-affected tissue even when these metal ions are present in millimolar concentrations.

Importantly, atomic absorption spectrophotometry assays of the metal content of the chelator-mediated extracts confirms that Cu and Zn are co-released with A $\beta$  by the chelators, along with lower concentrations of Fe. These data strongly indicate that A $\beta$  deposits (probably of the amorphous type) are held together by Cu and Zn and may also contain Fe. Interestingly, A $\beta$  is not extractable from control brain without the use of chelators. This suggests that metal-assembled A $\beta$  deposits may be the earliest step in the evolution of A $\beta$  plaque pathology.

These findings propelled further inquiries into chemistry of metal ion- A $\beta$  interaction. The precipitating effects upon A $\beta$  of Zn<sup>2+</sup> and Cu<sup>2+</sup> were found to be qualitatively different. Zn-mediated aggregation is reversible with chelation and is not associated with neurotoxicity in primary neuronal cell cultures, whereas Cu-mediated aggregation is accompanied by the slow formation of covalently-bonded SDS-resistant dimers and induction of neurotoxicity. These neurotoxic SDS-resistant dimers are similar to those described by Roher (Roher, A.E, *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 271:20631 (1996)).

To accurately quantitate the effects of different metals and pH on A $\beta$  solubility, synthetic human A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> (2.5  $\mu$ M) was incubated (37°C) in the presence of metal ions at various pH for 30 min. The resultant aggregated particles were sedimented by centrifugation to permit determination of soluble A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> in the supernatant. To determine the centrifugation time required to completely sediment the aggregated particles generated under these conditions, A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> was incubated for 30 min at 37°C with no metal, Zn<sup>2+</sup> (100  $\mu$ M), Cu<sup>2+</sup> (100  $\mu$ M) and

- 37 -

pH (5.5). Reaction mixtures were centrifuged at 10 000g for different times, or ultracentrifuged at 100 000g for 1 h. (Figure 1). Figure 1 shows the proportion of soluble  $A\beta_{1-40}$  remaining following centrifugation of reaction mixtures.  $A\beta_{1-40}$  was incubated (30 min., 37°C) with no metal, under acidic conditions (pH 5.5),  $Zn^{2+}$  (100  $\mu$ M) or  $Cu^{2+}$  (100  $\mu$ M), and centrifuged at 10 000g for different time intervals, or at 100,000g (ultracentrifuged) for 1 h for comparison. All data points are means  $\pm$  SD, n = 3.

Given that conformational changes within the N-terminal domain of  $A\beta$  are induced by modulating  $[H^+]$  (Soto, C., *et al.*, *J. Neurochem.* 63:1191-1198 (1994)), and that there is a metal ( $Zn^{2+}$ ) binding domain in the same region, experiments were designed to determine whether there was a synergistic effect of pH on metal ion-induced  $A\beta$  aggregation.  $A\beta_{1-40}$  was incubated with different bioessential metal ions at pH 6.6, 6.8 and 7.4. The results are shown in Figure 2A, where "all metals" indicates incubation with a combination containing each metal ion at the nominated concentrations, concurrently. Figure 2A shows the proportion of soluble  $A\beta_{1-40}$  remaining in the supernatant after incubation (30 min., 37°C) with various metal ions at pH 6.6, 6.8 or 7.4 after centrifugation (10,000g, 20 min.).

The  $[H^+]$  chosen represented the most extreme, yet physiologically plausible  $[H^+]$  that  $A\beta_{1-40}$  would be likely to encounter *in vivo*. The ability of different bioessential metal ions to aggregate  $A\beta_{1-40}$  at increasing  $H^+$  concentrations fell into two groups;  $Mg^{2+}$ ,  $Ca^{2+}$ ,  $Al^{3+}$ ,  $Co^{2+}$ ,  $Hg^{2+}$ ,  $Fe^{3+}$ ,  $Pb^{2+}$  and  $Cu^{2+}$  showed increasing sensitivity to induce  $A\beta_{1-40}$  aggregation, while  $Fe^{2+}$ ,  $Mn^{2+}$ ,  $Ni^{2+}$ , and  $Zn^{2+}$  were insensitive to alterations in  $[H^+]$  in their ability to aggregate  $A\beta_{1-40}$ .  $Cu^{2+}$  and  $Hg^{2+}$  induced most aggregation as the  $[H^+]$  increased, although the  $[H^+]$  insensitive  $Zn^{2+}$ -induced aggregation produced a similar amount of aggregation.  $Fe^{2+}$ , but not  $Fe^{3+}$ , also induced considerable aggregation as the  $[H^+]$  increased, possibly reflecting increased aggregation as a result of increased crosslinking of the peptide.

- 38 -

Similar results were obtained when these experiments were repeated using turbidometry as an index of aggregation (Figure 2B). The data indicate the absorbance changes between reaction mixtures with and without metal ions at pH 6.6, 6.8 or 7.4. Thus, A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> has both a pH insensitive and a pH sensitive metal binding site. At higher concentrations of metal ions this pattern was repeated, except Co<sup>2+</sup> and Al<sup>3+</sup>-induced A $\beta$  aggregation became pH insensitive, and Mn became sensitive (Figure 2C).

Since <sup>64</sup>Cu is impractically short-lived (t<sub>1/2</sub> = 13 h), a novel metal-capture ELISA assay was used to perform competition analysis of A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> binding to a microtiter plate impregnated with Cu<sup>2+</sup>, as described in Materials and Methods. Results are shown in Figure 3. All assays were performed in triplicate and are means  $\pm$  SD, n=3. Competition analysis revealed that A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> has at least one high affinity, saturable Cu<sup>2+</sup> binding site with a K<sub>d</sub> = 900 pM at pH 7.4 (Figure 3). The affinity of A $\beta$  for Cu<sup>2+</sup> is higher than that for Zn<sup>2+</sup> (Bush, A.I., *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 269:12152 (1994)). Since Cu<sup>2+</sup> does not decrease Zn<sup>2+</sup>-induced aggregation (Bush, A.I., *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 269:12152 (1994)), indicating Cu<sup>2+</sup> does not displace bound Zn<sup>2+</sup>, there are likely to be two separate metal binding sites. This is supported by the fact that there is both a pH sensitive and insensitive interaction with different metal ions.

Since the conformational state and solubility of A $\beta$  is altered at different pH (Soto, C., *et al.*, *J. Neurochem.* 63:1191-1198 (1994)), the effects of [H<sup>+</sup>] on Zn<sup>2+</sup>- and Cu<sup>2+</sup>-induced A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> aggregation were studied. Results are shown in Figures 4A, 4B and 4C. Figure 4A shows the proportion of soluble A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> remaining in the supernatant following incubation (30 min., 37°C) at pH 3.0-8.8 in buffered saline  $\pm$  Zn<sup>2+</sup> (30  $\mu$ M) or Cu<sup>2+</sup> (30  $\mu$ M) and centrifugation (10 000g, 20 min.), expressed as a percentage of starting peptide. All data points are means  $\pm$  SD, n=3. [H<sup>+</sup>] alone precipitates A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> (2.5  $\mu$ M) as the solution is lowered below pH 7.4, and dramatically once the pH falls below 6.3 (Figure 4A). At pH 5.0, 80% of the peptide is precipitated, but the peptide is not aggregated by acidic environments below pH 5, confirming and extending earlier reports on the effect

- 39 -

of pH on A $\beta$  solubility (Burdick, D., *J. Biol. Chem.* 267:546-554 (1992)). Zn<sup>2+</sup> (30  $\mu$ M) induced a constant level (~50%) of aggregation between pH 6.2-8.5, while below pH 6.0, aggregation could be explained solely by the effect of [H<sup>+</sup>].

In the presence of Cu<sup>2+</sup> (30  $\mu$ M), a decrease in pH from 8.8 to 7.4 induced a marked drop in A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> solubility, while a slight decrease below pH 7.4 strikingly potentiated the effect of Cu<sup>2+</sup> on the peptide's aggregation. Surprisingly, Cu<sup>2+</sup> caused >85 % of the available peptide to aggregate by pH 6.8, a pH which plausibly represents a mildly acidotic environment. Thus, conformational changes in A $\beta$  brought about by small increases in [H<sup>+</sup>] result in the unmasking of a second metal binding site that leads to its rapid self-aggregation. Below pH 5.0, the ability of both Zn<sup>2+</sup> and Cu<sup>2+</sup> to aggregate A $\beta$  was diminished, consistent with the fact that Zn binding to A $\beta$  is abolished below pH 6.0 (Bush, A.I., *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 269:12152 (1994)), probably due to protonation of histidine residues.

The relationship between pH and Cu<sup>2+</sup> on A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> solubility was then further defined by the following experiments (Figure 4B). The proportion of soluble A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> remaining in the supernatant after incubation (30 min., 37°C) at pH 5.4-7.8 with different Cu<sup>2+</sup> concentrations (0, 5, 10, 20, 30  $\mu$ M), and centrifugation (10,000g, 20 min.), was measured and expressed as a percentage of starting peptide. All data points are means  $\pm$  SD, n=3. At pH 7.4, Cu<sup>2+</sup>-induced A $\beta$  aggregation was 50% less than that induced by Zn<sup>2+</sup> over the same concentration range, consistent with earlier reports (Bush, A.I., *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 269:12152 (1994)). There was a potentiating relationship between [H<sup>+</sup>] and [Cu<sup>2+</sup>] in producing A $\beta$  aggregation; as the pH fell, less Cu<sup>2+</sup> was required to induce the same level of aggregation, suggesting that [H<sup>+</sup>] is controlling Cu<sup>2+</sup> induced A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> aggregation.

To confirm that this reaction occurs at physiological concentrations of A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> and Cu<sup>2+</sup>, a novel filtration immunodetection system was employed. This technique enabled the determination of the relative amount of A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> aggregation in the presence of different concentrations of H<sup>+</sup> and Cu<sup>2+</sup> (Figure 4C). The

- 40 -

relative aggregation of nM concentrations of A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> at pH 7.4 and pH 6.6 in the presence of different Cu<sup>2+</sup> concentrations (0, 0.1, 0.2, 0.5  $\mu$ M) were determined by this method. Data represent mean reflectance values of immunoblot densitometry expressed as a ratio of the signal obtained when the peptide is treated in the absence of Cu<sup>2+</sup>. All data points are means  $\pm$  SD, n = 2.

This sensitive technique confirmed that physiological concentrations of A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> are aggregated under mildly acidic conditions and that aggregation was greatly enhanced by the presence of Cu<sup>2+</sup> at concentrations as low as 200 nM. Furthermore, as previously observed at higher A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> concentrations, a decrease in pH from 7.4 to 6.6 potentiated the effect of Cu<sup>2+</sup> on aggregation of physiological concentrations of A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub>. Thus, A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> aggregation is concentration independent down to 8 nM where Cu<sup>2+</sup> is available.

It has recently been shown that Zn<sup>2+</sup> mediated A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> aggregation is reversible whereas A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> aggregation induced by pH 5.5 was irreversible. Therefore, experiments were performed to determine whether Cu<sup>2+</sup>/pH-mediated A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> aggregation was reversible. Cu<sup>2+</sup>-induced A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> aggregation at pH 7.4 was reversible following EDTA chelation, although for each new aggregation cycle, complete resolubilization of the aggregates required a longer incubation. This result suggested that a more complex aggregate is formed during each subsequent aggregation cycle, preventing the chelator access to remove Cu<sup>2+</sup> from the peptide. This is supported by the fact that complete resolubilization occurs with time, and indicates that the peptide is not adopting a structural conformation that is insensitive to Cu<sup>2+</sup>-induced aggregation/EDTA-resolubilization.

The reversibility of pH potentiated Cu<sup>2+</sup>-induced A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> aggregation was studied by turbidometry between pH 7.5 to 6.6, representing H<sup>+</sup> concentration extremes that might be found *in vivo* (Figures 5A and 5B). Unlike the irreversible aggregation of A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> observed at pH 5.5, Cu<sup>2+</sup>-induced A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> aggregation was fully reversible as the pH oscillated between pH 7.4 and 6.6. Figure 5A shows the turbidometric analysis of Cu<sup>2+</sup>-induced A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> aggregation at pH 7.4 reversed by successive cycles of chelator (EDTA), as indicated. Figure

5B shows turbidometric analysis of the reversibility of  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$ -induced  $\text{A}\beta_{1-40}$  as the pH cycles between 7.4 and 6.6. Thus, subtle conformational changes within the peptide induced by changing  $[\text{H}^+]$  within a narrow pH window, that corresponds to physiologically plausible  $[\text{H}^+]$ , allows the aggregation or resolubilization of the peptide in the presence of  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$ .

### Discussion

These results suggest that subtle conformational changes in  $\text{A}\beta$  induced by  $[\text{H}^+]$  promote the interaction of  $\text{A}\beta_{1-40}$  with metal ions, in particular  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$  and  $\text{Hg}^{2+}$  allowing self-aggregate or resolubilize depending on the  $[\text{H}^+]$  (Figures 2A-2C, 4A-4C). A decrease in pH below 7.0 increases the  $\beta$ -sheet conformation (Soto, C., *et al.*, *J. Neurochem.* 63:1191-1198 (1994)), and this may allow the binding of  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$  to soluble  $\text{A}\beta$  that could further alter the conformation of the peptide allowing for self aggregation, or simply help coordinate adjacent  $\text{A}\beta$  molecules in the assembly of the peptides into aggregates. Conversely, increasing pH above 7.0 promotes the  $\alpha$ -helical conformation (Soto, C., *et al.*, *J. Neurochem.* 63:1191-1198 (1994)), which may alter the conformational state of the dimeric aggregated peptide, releasing Cu and thereby destabilizing the aggregate with the resultant release of  $\text{A}\beta$  into solution. Thus, in the presence of  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$ ,  $\text{A}\beta_{1-40}$  oscillates between an aggregated and soluble state dependent upon the  $[\text{H}^+]$ .

$\text{A}\beta_{1-40}$  aggregation by  $\text{Co}^{2+}$ , like  $\text{Zn}^{2+}$ , was pH insensitive and per mole induced a similar level of aggregation. Unlike  $\text{Zn}^{2+}$ ,  $\text{A}\beta_{1-40}$  binding of  $\text{Co}^{2+}$  may be employed for the structural determination of the pH insensitive binding site given its nuclear magnetic capabilities (See Figure 2C).

The biphasic relationship of  $\text{A}\beta$  solubility with pH mirrors the conformational changes previously observed by CD spectra within the N-terminal fragment (residues 1-28) of  $\text{A}\beta$  (reviewed in (Soto, C., *et al.*, *J. Neurochem.* 63:1191-1198 (1994));  $\alpha$ -helical between pH 1-4 and >7, but  $\beta$ -sheet between pH

4-7. The irreversible aggregates of A $\beta$  formed at pH 5.5 supports the hypothesis that the  $\beta$ -sheet conformation is a pathway for A $\beta$  aggregation into amyloid fibrils. Since aggregates produced by Zn<sup>2+</sup> and Cu<sup>2+</sup> under mildly acidic conditions (Figures 5A and 5B) are chelator/pH reversible, their conformation may be the higher energy  $\alpha$ -helical conformation.

These results now indicate that there are three physiologically plausible conditions which could aggregate A $\beta$ : pH (Figures 1, 4A-4C; Fraser, P.E., *et al.*, *Biophys. J.* 60:1190-1201 (1991); Barrow, C.J. and Zagorski, M.G., *Science* 253:179-182 (1991); Burdick, D., *J. Biol. Chem.* 267:546-554 (1992); Barrow, C.J., *et al.*, *J. Mol. Biol.* 225:1075-1093 (1992); Zagorski, M.G. and Barrow, C.J., *Biochemistry* 31:5621-5631 (1992); Kirshenbaum, K. and Daggett, V., *Biochemistry* 34:7629-7639 (1995); Wood, S.J., *et al.*, *J. Mol. Biol.* 256:870-877 (1996), [Zn<sup>2+</sup>] (Figures 1, 2A and 2B, 4A-4C; Bush, A.I., *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 269:12152 (1994); Bush, A.I., *et al.*, *Science* 265:1464 (1994); Bush, A.I., *et al.*, *Science* 268:1921 (1995); Wood, S.J., *et al.*, *J. Mol. Biol.* 256:870-877 (1996)) and under mildly acidic conditions, [Cu<sup>2+</sup>] (Figures 2A, 4A-4C, 5B). Interestingly, changes in metal ion concentrations and pH are common features of the inflammatory response to injury. Therefore, the binding of Cu<sup>2+</sup> and Zn<sup>2+</sup> to A $\beta$  may be of particular importance during inflammatory processes, since local sites of inflammation can become acidic (Trehaut, P.S. & McCarty, D.J., *Arthr. Rheum.* 14:475-484 (1971); Menkin, V., *Am. J. Pathol.* 10:193-210 (1934)) and both Zn<sup>2+</sup> and Cu<sup>2+</sup> are rapidly mobilized in response to inflammation (Lindeman, R.D., *et al.*, *J. Lab. Clin. Med.* 81:194-204 (1973); Terhune, M.W. & Sandstead, H.H., *Science* 177:68-69 (1972); Hsu, J.M., *et al.*, *J. Nutrition* 99:425-432 (1969); Haley, J.V., *J. Surg. Res.* 27:168-174 (1979); Milaninio, R., *et al.*, *Advances in Inflammation Research* 1:281-291 (1979); Frieden, E., in *Inflammatory Diseases and Copper*, Sorenson, J.R.J., ed, Humana Press, New Jersey (1980), pp. 159-169).

Serum copper levels increase during inflammation, associated with increases in ceruloplasmin, a Cu<sup>2+</sup> transporting protein that may donate Cu<sup>2+</sup> to



enzymes active in processes of basic metabolism and wound healing such as cytochrome oxidase and lysyl oxidase (Giampaolo, V., *et al.*, in *Inflammatory Diseases and Copper*, Sorenson, J.R.J., ed, Humana Press, New Jersey (1980), pp. 329-345; Peacock, E.E. and van Winkle, W., in *Wound Repair*, W.B. Saunders Co., Philadelphia, pp. 145-155) (1976)). Since the release of  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$  from ceruloplasmin is greatly facilitated by acidic environments where the cupric ion is reduced to its cuprous form (Owen, C.A., Jr., *Proc. Soc. Exp. Biol. Med.* 149:681-682 (1975)), periods of mild acidosis may promote an environment of increased free  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$ . Similarly, aggregation of another amyloid protein, the acute phase reactant serum amyloid P component (SAP) to the cell wall polysaccharide, zymosan, has been observed with  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$  at acidic pH (Potempa, L.A., *et al.*, *Journal of Biological Chemistry* 260:12142-12147 (1985)). Thus, exchange of  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$  to  $\text{A}\beta_{1-40}$  during times of decreased pH may provide a mechanism for altering the biochemical reactivity of the protein required by the cell under mildly acidic conditions. Such a function may involve alterations in the aggregation/adhesive properties (Figures 1-5B) or oxidative functions of  $\text{A}\beta$  at local sites of inflammation.

While the pathogenic nature of  $\text{A}\beta_{1-42}$  in AD is well described (Maury, C.P.J., *Lab. Investig.* 72:4-16 (1995); Multhaup, G., *et al.*, *Nature* 325:733-736 (1987)), the function of the smaller  $\text{A}\beta_{1-40}$  remains unclear. The present data suggest that  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$ -binding and aggregation of  $\text{A}\beta$  will occur when the pH of the microenvironment rises. This conclusion can be based on the finding that the reaction is  $[\text{H}^+]$  and  $[\text{Cu}^{2+}]$  dependent and reversible within a narrow, physiologically plausible, pH window. This is further supported by the specificity and high affinity of  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$  binding under mildly acidic conditions compared to the constant  $\text{Zn}^{2+}$ -induced aggregation (and binding) of  $\text{A}\beta_{1-40}$  over a wide pH range (6.2-8.5). The brain contains high levels of both  $\text{Zn}^{2+}$  ( $\sim 150 \mu\text{M}$ ; Frederickson, C.J. *International Review of Neurobiology* 31:145-237 (1989)) and  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$  ( $\sim 100 \mu\text{M}$ ; Warren, P.J., *et al.*, *Brain* 83:709-717 (1960); Owen, C.A., *Physiological Aspects of Copper*, Noyes Publications, Park Ridge, New Jersey (1982), pp160-

191). Intracellular concentrations are approximately 1000 and 100 fold higher than extracellular concentrations. This large gradient between intracellular and extracellular compartments suggests a highly energy dependent mechanism is required in order to sequester these metals within neurons. Therefore, any alterations in energy metabolism, or injury, may affect the reuptake of these metal ions and promote their release into the extracellular space, and together with the synergistic affects of decreased pH (see above) induce membrane bound  $A\beta_{1-40}$  to aggregate. Since increased concentrations of  $Zn^{2+}$  and  $Cu^{2+}$ , and decreased pH, are common features of all forms of cellular insult, the initiation of  $A\beta_{1-40}$  function likely occurs in a coordinated fashion to alter adhesive and/or oxidative properties of this membrane protein essential for maintaining cell integrity and viability. That  $A\beta_{1-40}$  has such a high affinity for these metal ions, indicates a protein that has evolved to respond to slight changes in the concentration of extracellular metal ions. This is supported by the fact that aggregation in the presence of Cu is approx. 30% at pH 7.1, the pH of the brain (Yates, C.M., *et al.*, *J. Neurochem.* 55:1624-1630 (1990)), but 85% at pH 6.8. Taken together, our present results indicate that  $A\beta_{1-40}$  may have evolved to respond to biochemical changes associated with neuronal damage as part of the locally mediated response to inflammation or cell injury. Thus, it is possible that  $Cu^{2+}$  mediated  $A\beta_{1-40}$  binding and aggregation might be a purposive cellular response to an environment of mild acidosis.

The deposition of amyloid systemically is usually associated with an inflammatory response (Pepys, M.B. & Baltz, M.L., *Adv. Immunol.* 34:141-212 (1983); Cohen, A.S., in *Arthritis and Allied Conditions*, D.J. McCarty, ed., Lea and Febiger, Philadelphia, pp. 1273-1293 (1989); Kisilevsky, R., *Lab. Investig.* 49:381-390 (1983)). For example, serum amyloid A, one of the major acute phase reactant proteins that is elevated during inflammation, is the precursor of amyloid A protein that is deposited in various tissues during chronic inflammation, leading to secondary amyloidosis (Gorevic, P.D., *et al.*, *Ann. NY Acad. Sci.* 380:393 (1982)). An involvement of inflammatory mechanisms has

been suggested as contributing to plaque formation in AD (Kisilevsky, R., *Mol. Neurobiol.* 49:65-66 (1994)). Acute-phase proteins such as alpha 1-antichymotrypsin and c-reactive protein, elements of the complement system and activated microglial and astroglial cells are consistently found in AD brains.

5       The rapid appearance, within days of A $\beta$  deposits and APP immunoreactivity following head injury (Roberts, G.W., *et al.*, *Lancet.* 338:1422-1423 (1991); Pierce, J.E.S., *et al.*, *Journal of Neuroscience* 16:1083-1090 (1996)), rather than the more gradual accumulation of A $\beta$  into more dense core amyloid plaques over months or years in AD may be compatible with the release  
10       of Zn<sup>2+</sup>, Cu<sup>2+</sup> and mild acidosis in this time frame. Thus, pH/metal ion mediated aggregation may form the basis for the amorphous A $\beta$  deposits observed in the aging brain and following head injury, allowing the maintenance of endothelial and neuronal integrity while limiting the oxidative stress associated with injury that may lead to a diminishment of structural function.

15       Since decreased cerebral pH is a complication of aging (Yates, C.M., *et al.*, *J. Neurochem.* 55:1624-1630 (1990)), these data indicate that Cu and Zn mediated A $\beta$  aggregation may be a normal cellular response to an environment of mild acidosis. However, prolonged exposure of A $\beta$  to an environment of lowered cerebral pH may promote increased concentrations of free metal ions and  
20       reactive oxygen species, and the inappropriate interaction of A $\beta$ <sub>1-42</sub> over time promoting the formation of irreversible A $\beta$  oligomers and its subsequent deposition as amyloid in AD. The reversibility of this pH mediated Cu<sup>2+</sup> aggregation does however present the potential for therapeutic intervention. Thus, cerebral alkalization may be explored as a therapeutic modality for the  
25       reversibility of amyloid deposition *in vivo*.

## Example 2

### *Free Radical Formation and SOD-like activity of Alzheimer's A $\beta$ Peptides*

#### *Materials and Methods*

##### *a) Determination of Cu<sup>+</sup> and Fe<sup>2+</sup>*

This method is modified from a protocol assaying serum copper and iron (Landers, J.W., *et al.*, *Amer. Clin. Path.* 29:590 (1958)). It is based on the fact that there are optimal visible absorption wavelengths of 483 nm and 535 nm for Cu<sup>+</sup> complexed with bathocuproinedisulfonic (BC) anion and Fe<sup>2+</sup> coordinated by bathophenanthrolinedisulfonic (BP) anion, respectively.

Determination of molar absorption of these two complexes was accomplished essentially as follows. An aliquot of 500  $\mu$ l of each complex (500  $\mu$ M, in PBS pH 7.4, with ligands in excess) was pipetted into 1 cm-pathlength quartz cuvette, and their absorbances were measured. Their molar absorbancy was determined based on Beer-Lambert's Law. Cu<sup>+</sup>-BC has a molar absorbancy of 2762 M<sup>-1</sup> cm<sup>-1</sup>, while Fe<sup>2+</sup>-BP has a molar absorbancy of 7124 M<sup>-1</sup> cm<sup>-1</sup>.

Determination of the equivalent vertical pathlength for Cu<sup>+</sup>-BC and Fe<sup>2+</sup>-BP in a 96-well plate was carried out essentially as follows. Absorbances of the two complexes with a 500  $\mu$ M, 100  $\mu$ M, 50  $\mu$ M, and 10  $\mu$ M concentration of relevant metal ions (Cu<sup>+</sup>, Fe<sup>2+</sup>) were determined both by 96-well plate readers (300  $\mu$ L) and UV-vis spectrometer (500  $\mu$ L), with PBS, pH 7.4, as the control blank. The resulting absorbancies from the plate reader regress against absorbancies by a UV-vis spectrometer. The slope k from the linear regression line is equivalent to the vertical pathlength if the measurement is carried out on a plate. The results are:

	k(cm)	r <sup>2</sup>
Cu <sup>+</sup> -BC	1.049	0.998
Fe <sup>2+</sup> -BP	0.856	0.999

- 47 -

With molar absorptancy and equivalent vertical pathlength in hand, the concentrations ( $\mu\text{M}$ ) of  $\text{Cu}^+$  or  $\text{Fe}^{2+}$  can be deduced based on Beer-Lambert's Law, using proper buffers as controls.

$$\text{for } \text{Fe}^{2+}: [\text{Fe}^{2+}] (\mu\text{M}) = \frac{\Delta A (535\text{nm})}{(7124 \times 0.856)} \times 10^6$$

$$\text{for } \text{Cu}^+: [\text{Cu}^+] (\mu\text{M}) = \frac{\Delta A(483\text{nm})}{(2762 \times 1.049)} \times 10^6$$

where  $\Delta A$  is absorbancy difference between sample and control blank.

5      **b)      Determination of  $\text{H}_2\text{O}_2$**

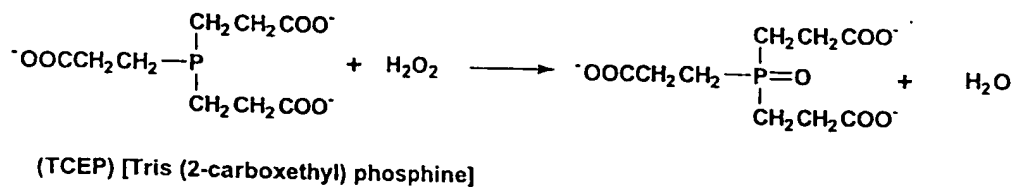
This method is modified from a  $\text{H}_2\text{O}_2$  assay reported recently (Han, J.C., *et al.*, *Anal. Biochem.* 234:107 (1996)). The advantages of this modified  $\text{H}_2\text{O}_2$  assay on 96-well plate include high throughput, excellent sensitivity ( $\sim 1 \mu\text{M}$ ), and the elimination of the need for a standard curve of  $\text{H}_2\text{O}_2$ , which is problematic due to the labile chemical property of  $\text{H}_2\text{O}_2$ .

10       $\text{A}\beta$  peptides were co-incubated with a  $\text{H}_2\text{O}_2$ -trapping reagent (Tris(2-carboxyethyl)-phosphine hydrochloride, TCEP,  $100 \mu\text{M}$ ) in PBS (pH 7.4 or 7.0) at  $37^\circ\text{C}$  for 30 mins. Then 5,5'-dithio-bis(2-nitrobenzoic acid) (DBTNB,  $100 \mu\text{M}$ ) was added to react with remaining TCEP. The product of this reaction has  
15      a characteristic absorbance maximum of 412 nm [18]. The assay was adapted to a 96-well format using a standard absorbance range (see Figure 11).

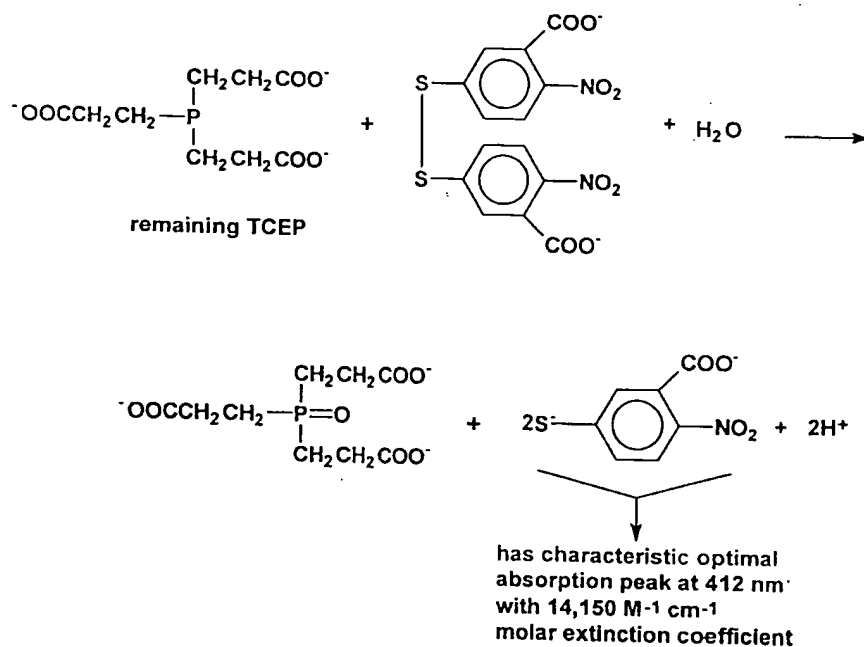
The chemical scheme for this novel method is:

- 48 -

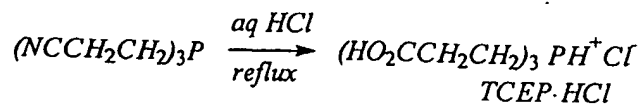
Scheme I:



Scheme II:



TCEP·HCl was synthesized by hydrolyzing tris (2-cyno-ethyl) phosphine (purchased from Johnson-Mathey (Waydhill, MA)), in refluxing aqueous HCl (Burns, J.A.. *et al.*, *J. Org. Chem.* 56:2648 (1991)) as shown below.



In order to carry out the above-described assay in a 96-well plate, it was necessary to calculate the equivalent vertical pathlength of 2-nitro-5-thiobenzoic acid (TMB) in a 96-well plate. This determination was carried out essentially as described for Cu<sup>+</sup>-BC and Fe<sup>2+</sup>-BP in Example 5. The resulting absorbancies from the plate reader regress against absorbancies by a UV-vis spectrometer. The slope k from the linear regression line is equivalent to the vertical pathlength if the measurement is carried out on a plate. The results are:

k	r <sup>2</sup>
0.875	1.00

The concentration of H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> can then be deduced from the difference in absorbance between the sample and the control (sample plus 1000 U/μl catalase)

$$[H_2O_2] (\mu M) = \frac{\Delta A (412nm)}{(2 \times 0.875 \times 14150)}$$

c) **Determination of OH•**

Determination of OH• was performed as described in Gutteridge *et al.* *Biochim. Biophys. Acta* 759: 38-41 (1983).

d) **Cu<sup>+</sup> Generation by Aβ: Influence of Zn<sup>2+</sup> and pH**

Aβ (10 μM in PBS, pH 7.4 or 6.8, as shown) was incubated for 30 minutes (37°C) in the presence of Cu<sup>2+</sup> 10 μM ± Zn<sup>2+</sup> 10 μM. Cu<sup>+</sup> levels (n=3, ±SD) were assayed against a standard curve. These data indicate that the presence of Zn<sup>2+</sup> can mediate the reduction of Cu<sup>2+</sup> in a mildly acidic environment. The effects of zinc upon these reactions are strongly in evidence but complex. Since the presence of 10 μM zinc will precipitate the peptide, it is clear that the peptide possesses redox activity even when it is not in the soluble

- 50 -

phase, suggesting that cortical A $\beta$  deposits will not be inert in terms of generating these highly reactive products. Cerebral zinc metabolism is deregulated in AD, and therefore levels of interstitial zinc may play an important role in adjusting the Cu<sup>+</sup> and H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> production generated by A $\beta$ . The rat homologue of A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> does not  
5 manifest the redox reactivity of the human equivalent. Insulin, a histidine-containing peptide that can bind copper and zinc, exhibits no Cu<sup>2+</sup> reduction.

*e) Hydrogen Peroxide Production by A $\beta$  species*

A $\beta$ <sub>1-42</sub> (10  $\mu$ M) was incubated for 1 hr at 37°C, pH 7.4 in ambient air (first bar), continuous argon purging (Ar), continuous oxygen enrichment (O<sub>2</sub>) at pH  
10 7.0 (7.0), or in the presence of the iron chelator desferioxamine (220  $\mu$ M; DFO). Variant A $\beta$  species (10  $\mu$ M) were tested: A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> (A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub>), rat A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> (rA $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub>), and scrambled A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> (sA $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub>) were incubated for 1 hr at 37°C, pH 7.4 in ambient air. Values (mean  $\pm$ SD, n=3) represent triplicate samples minus values derived from control samples run under identical conditions in the presence of catalase (10  
15 U/ml). The details of the experiment are as follows: A $\beta$  peptides were co-incubated with a H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub>-trapping reagent (Tris(2-carboxyethyl)-phosphine hydrochloride, TCEP, 100  $\mu$ M) in PBS (pH 7.4 or 7.0) at 37°C for 30 mins. Then 5,5'-dithio-bis(2-nitrobenzoic acid) (DTNB, 100  $\mu$ M) was added to react with remaining TCEP, the product has a characteristic absorbance maximum of  
20 412 nm. The assay was adapted to a 96-well format using a standard absorbance range.

*Results and Discussion*

*A $\beta$  exhibits metal-dependent and independent redox activity*

Because A $\beta$  was observed to be covalently linked by Cu, the ability of the  
25 peptide to reduce metals and generate hydroxyl radicals was studied. The bathocuproine and bathophenanthroline reduced metal assay technique employed by Multhaup *et al.* was used in order to determine that APP itself possesses a Cu<sup>2+</sup> reducing site on its ectodomain (Multhaup, G., *et al.*, *Science* 271:1406 (1996)).



It has been discovered that A $\beta$  possesses a striking ability to reduce both Fe<sup>3+</sup> to Fe<sup>2+</sup>, and Cu<sup>2+</sup> to Cu<sup>+</sup>, modulated by Zn<sup>2+</sup> and pH (6.6-7.4) (See Figure 10). It is of great interest that the relative redox activity of the peptides studied correlates so well with their relative pathogenicity viz A $\beta$ <sub>1-42</sub> > A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> > ratA $\beta$  in all redox assays studied. Since one of the caveats in using the reduced metals assay is that the detection agents can exaggerate the oxidation potential of Cu<sup>2+</sup> or Fe (III), other redox products were explored by assays where no metal ion indicators were necessary. It was discovered that hydrogen peroxide was rapidly formed by A $\beta$  species (Figure 11). Thus, A $\beta$  produces both H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> and reduced metals whilst also binding zinc. Structurally, this is difficult to envisage for a small peptide, but we have recently shown that A $\beta$  is dimeric in physiological buffers. Since H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> and reduced metal species are produced in the same vicinity, these reaction products are liable to produce the highly toxic hydroxyl radical by Fenton chemistry, and the formation of hydroxyl radicals from these peptides has now been shown with the thiobarbituric acid assay. The formation of hydroxyl radicals correlates with the covalent polymerization of the peptide (Figure 9) and can be blocked by hydroxyl scavengers. Thus the concentrations of Fe, Cu, Zn & H<sup>+</sup> in the brain interstitial milieu could be important in facilitating precipitation and neurotoxicity for A $\beta$  by direct (dimer formation) and indirect (Fe<sup>2+</sup>/Cu<sup>+</sup> and H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> formation) mechanisms.

H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> production by A $\beta$  explains the mechanism by which H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> has been described to mediate neurotoxicity (Behl, C. *et al.*, *Cell* 77:827 (1994)), previously thought to be the product of cellular overproduction alone. Interestingly, the scrambled A $\beta$  peptide (same size and residue content as Figure 6) produces appreciable H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> but no hydroxyl radicals. This is because the scrambled A $\beta$  peptide is unable to reduce metal ions. This leads to the conclusion that what makes A $\beta$  such a potent neurotoxin is its capacity to produce both reduced metals and H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> at the same time. This "double whammy" can then produce hydroxyl radicals by the Fenton reaction, especially if the H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> is not rapidly removed from the vicinity of the peptide. Catalase and glutathione

peroxidase are the principal means of catabolizing  $H_2O_2$ , and their levels are low in the brain, especially in AD, perhaps explaining the propensity of  $A\beta$  to accumulate in brain tissue.

Figure 11 shows that the production of  $H_2O_2$  is oxygen dependent, and further investigation has indicated that  $A\beta$  can spontaneously produce the superoxide radical ( $O_2^-$ ) in the absence of metal ions. This property of  $A\beta$  is particularly exaggerated in the case of  $A\beta_{1-42}$ , probably explaining why this peptide is more neurotoxic and more enriched than  $A\beta_{1-40}$  in amyloid.  $O_2^-$  generation will be subject to spontaneous dismutation to generate  $H_2O_2$ , however, this is a relatively slow reaction, although it may account for the majority of the  $H_2O_2$  detected in our  $A\beta$  assays.  $O_2^-$  is reactive, and the function of superoxide dismutase (SOD) is to accelerate the dismutation to produce  $H_2O_2$  which is then catabolized by catalase and peroxidases into oxygen and water. The most abundant form of SOD is Cu/Zn SOD, mutations of which cause another neurodegenerative disease, amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (Rosen, D., *et al.*, *Nature* 364:362 (1993)). Since  $A\beta$ , like Cu/Zn SOD, is a dimeric protein that binds Cu and Zn and reduces  $Cu^{2+}$  and  $Fe^{3+}$ , we studied the  $O_2^-$  dismutation behavior of  $A\beta$  in the  $\mu$ sec time-scale using laser pulse photolysis. These experiments have shown that  $A\beta$  exhibits Fe/Cu-dependent SOD-like activity with rate constants of dismutation at  $\approx 10^8 M^{-1} sec^{-1}$ , which are strikingly similar to SOD. Hence,  $A\beta$  appears to be a good candidate to possess the same function as SOD, and therefore may function as an antioxidant. This may explain why oxidative stresses cause it to be released by cells (Frederikse, P.H., *et al.*, *Journal of Biological Chemistry* 271: 10169 (1996)). However, if  $A\beta_{1-42}$  is involved in the reaction to oxidative stress, or if the  $H_2O_2$  clearance is compromised at the cellular level,  $A\beta$  will accumulate, recruiting more  $O_2^-$  and producing more  $O_2^-$  leading to a vicious cycle and localizing tissue peroxidation damage and protein cross-linking.

### Example 3

#### *Therapeutic Agents for Inhibition of Metal-Mediated Production of Reactive Oxygen Species*

##### *Materials and Methods*

###### 5      a)      *Synthesis of Peptides*

Synthetic A $\beta$  peptides A $\beta_{1-40}$  and A $\beta_{1-42}$  were synthesized by the W. Keck Laboratory, Yale, CT. In order to verify the reproducibility of the data obtained with these peptides, confirmatory data were obtained by reproducing experiments with these A $\beta$  peptides synthesized and obtained from other  
10      sources: Glabe laboratory, University of California, Irvine, CA, Multhaup Laboratory, University of Heidelberg, U.S. Peptides, Bachem, and Sigma. Rat A $\beta$  was synthesized and characterized by the Multhaup Laboratory, University of Heidelberg. A $\beta_{1-28}$  was purchased from U.S. Peptides, Bachem, and Sigma. A $\beta$  peptide stock solutions were prepared in chelex-100 resin (BioRad) treated  
15      water and quantified.

###### b)      *Metal Reduction Assay*

The metal reduction assay was performed using a 96-well microtiter plate (Costar) based upon a modification of established protocols (Landers, J.W., *et al.*, *Amer. Clin. Path.* 29:590 (1958); Landers, J.W., *et al.*, *Clinica*  
20      *Chimica Acta* 3:329 (1958)). Polypeptides (10  $\mu$ M) or Vitamin C (100  $\mu$ M), metal ions (10  $\mu$ M, Fe(NO<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub> or Cu(NO<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>), and reduced metal ion indicators, bathophenanthrolinedisulfonic acid (BP, for Fe<sup>2+</sup>, Sigma, 200 $\mu$ M) or bathocuproinedisulfonic acid (BC, for Cu<sup>+</sup>, Sigma, 200 RM), were  
25      coincubated in phosphate buffered saline (PBS), pH 7.4, for 1 hr at 37°C. The metal ion solutions were prepared by direct dilution in the buffer from their aqueous stocks purchased from National Institute of Standards and

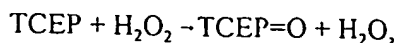
Technology (NIST). Absorbances were then measured at 536 nm ( $\text{Fe}^{2+}$ -BP complex) and 483 nm ( $\text{Cu}^{+}$ -BC complex), respectively, using a 96-well plate reader (SPECTRAMax 250, Molecular Devices, CA). In control samples, both metal ion and indicator were present to determine the background buffer signal. As a further control, both metal ion and peptide were present in the absence of indicator to estimate the contribution of light scattering due to turbidity to the absorbance reading at these wavelengths. The net absorbances ( $\Delta A$ ) at 536 nm or 483 nm were obtained by deducting the absorbances from these controls from the absorbances generated by the peptide and metal in the presence of the respective indicator.

The concentrations of reduced metal ions ( $\text{Fe}^{2+}$  or  $\text{Cu}^{+}$ ) were quantified based on the formula:  $\text{Fe}^{2+}$  or  $\text{Cu}^{+}$  ( $\sim M$ ) =  $A * 10^6 / (L * M)$ , where L is the measured equivalent vertical pathlength for a well of 300  $\mu\text{L}$  volume as described in the instrument's specifications manual (0.856 cm for  $\text{Fe}^{2+}$ ; 1.049 cm for  $\text{Cu}^{+}$ ); M is the known molecular absorbance ( $\text{M}^{-1} \text{cm}^{-1}$ ) which is 7124 (for  $\text{Fe}^{2+}$ -BP complex) or 2762 (for  $\text{Cu}^{+}$ -BC complex).

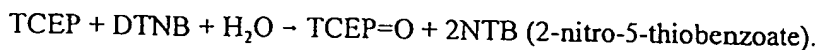
c) *H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> Assay*

The  $\text{H}_2\text{O}_2$  assay was performed in a UV-transparent 96-well microtiter plate (Molecular Devices, CA), according to a modification of an existing protocol (Han, J.C., *et al.*, *Anal. Biochem.* 234:107 (1996); Han *et al.*, *Anal. Biochem.* 220: 5-10 (1994)). Polypeptides (10  $\mu\text{M}$ ) or Vitamin C (10  $\mu\text{M}$ ),  $\text{Fe}^{3+}$  or  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$  (1  $\mu\text{M}$ ) and a  $\text{H}_2\text{O}_2$  trapping agent- Tris(2-Carboxyethyl)Phosphine Hydrochloride (TCEP, Pierce, 50  $\mu\text{LM}$ )- were co-incubated in PBS buffer (300  $\mu\text{L}$ ), pH 7.4, for 1 hour at 37°C. Under identical conditions, catalase (Sigma, 100 U/mL) was substituted for the polypeptides, to serve as a control signal representing 0  $\mu\text{M}$   $\text{H}_2\text{O}_2$ . Following incubation, the unreacted TCEP was detected by 5,5-Dithio-bis(2-Nitrobenzoic acid) (DTNB, Sigma, 50 KLM) which generates 2 moles of the coloured product. The reactions are:

- 55 -



then the remaining TCEP is reacted with DTNB:



The amount of  $\text{H}_2\text{O}_2$  produced was quantified based on the formula:

5  $\text{H}_2\text{O}_2$  ( $\mu\text{M}$ ) =  $hA * 106 / (2 * L * M)$ , where  $hA$  is the absolute absorbance difference between a sample and catalase-only control at 412 nm wavelength;  $L = 0.875$  cm, the equivalent vertical pathlength obtained from the platereader manufacturer's specifications;  $M$  is the molecular absorbance for NTB ( $14150 \text{ M}^{-1} \text{ cm}^{-1}$  at 412 nm).

10 TCEP is a strong reducing agent, and, hence, will artifactually react with polypeptides that contain disulfide bonds. This was determined not to be a source of artifact for the measurement of  $\text{H}_2\text{O}_2$  generation from  $\text{A}\beta$ , which does not possess a disulfide bond.

d) *Estimation of  $\text{O}_2^-$*

15 The spectrophotometric absorption peak for  $\text{O}_2^-$  is 250 nm where its extinction coefficient is much greater than that of  $\text{H}_2\text{O}_2$  (Bielski *et al.*, *Philos Trans R Soc Lond B Biol Sci.* 311: 473-482 (1985)). The production of  $\text{O}_2^-$  was estimated by measuring the spectrophotometric absorption of polypeptides (10  $\mu\text{M}$ , 300  $\mu\text{L}$ ) after incubation for one hour in PBS, pH 7.4, at 37°C, using a  
20 96-well plate reader. The corresponding blank was the signal from PBS alone. An absolute baseline for the signal generated by the peptide was not achievable in this assay since the absorption peak for tyrosine (residue 10 of  $\text{A}\beta$ ) is close (254 nm) to the absorption peak for  $\text{O}_2^-$ . However, attenuation of the absorbance by co-incubation with superoxide dismutase (100 U/mL)  
25 indicated that the majority of the absorbance signal was due to the presence of  $\text{O}_2^-$ .

e) *Thiobarbituric Acid Reaction Substance (TBARS) Assay - OH•*

The Thiobarbituric Acid-Reactive Substance (TBARS) assay for incubation mixtures with  $\text{Fe}^{3+}$  or  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$  was performed in a 96-well microtiter format modified from established protocols (Gutteridge *et al. Biochim. Biophys. Acta* 759: 38-41 (1983)). A $\beta$  peptide species (10  $\mu\text{M}$ ) or Vitamin C (100  $\mu\text{M}$ ), were incubated with  $\text{Fe}^{3+}$  or  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$  (1  $\mu\text{M}$ ) and deoxyribose (7.5 mM, Sigma) in PBS, pH 7.4. Following incubation (37°C, 1 hour), glacial (17 M) acetic acid and 2-thiobarbituric acid (1%, w/v in 0.05 M NaOH, Sigma) were added and heated (100°C, 10 min). The final mixtures were placed on ice for 1-3 minutes before absorbances at 532 nm were measured. The net absorbance change for each sample were obtained by deducting the absorbance from a control sample consisting of identical chemical components except for the Vitamin C or A $\beta$  peptides.

*Results and Discussion*

Oxygen radical involvement in human aging, the predominant risk factor for Alzheimer's disease (AD), was first proposed by Harman in 1956 (Harman, D., *J. Gerontol.* 11:298 (1956)) and increasing evidence has implicated oxidative stress in the pathogenesis of AD. Apart from metabolic signs of oxidative stress in AD-affected neocortex such as increased glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase activity (Martins, R.N., *et al., J. Neurochem.* 46:1042-1045 (1986)) and increased heme oxygenase-1 levels (Smith, M.A., *et al., Am. J. Pathol.* 145:42 (1994)), there are also numerous signs of oxygen radical-mediated chemical attack such as increased protein and free carbonyls (Smith, C.D., *et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 88:10540 (1991); Hensley, K., *et al., J. Neurochem.* 65:2146 (1995); Smith, M.A., *et al., Nature* 382:120 (1996)), lipid peroxidation adducts (Palmer, A.M. & Burns, M.A., *Brain Res.* 645:338 (1994); Sayre, L.M. *et al., J. Neurochem.* 68:2092 (1997)), peroxynitrite-mediated protein nitration (Good, P.F., *et al., Am. J. Pathol.* 149:21 (1996)); Smith, M.A., *et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 94:9866

(1997)), and mitochondrial and nuclear DNA oxidation adducts (Mecocci, P., *et al.*, *Ann. Neurol.*, 34:609-616 (1993); Mecocci, P., *et al.*, *Ann. Neurol.*, 36:747-751 (1994)). Recently, treatment of individuals with the antioxidant vitamin E has been reported to delay the progression of clinical AD (Sano, M., *et al.*, *N.Engl. J. Med.* 336:1216 (1997)).

A relationship seems likely to exist between the signs of oxidative stress and the characteristic A $\beta$  collections (Glennner, G.G. & Wong, C., *Biochem. Biophys. Res. Commun.* 120:885 (1984)) found in the cortical interstitium and cerebrovascular intima media in AD. The brain regional variation of oxidation biomarkers corresponds with amyloid plaque density (Hensley, K., *et al.*, *J. Neurochem.* 65:2146 (1995)). Indeed, neurons cultured from subjects with Down's syndrome, a condition complicated by the invariable premature deposition of cerebral A $\beta$  (Rumble, B., *et al.*, *N. Engl. J. Med.* 320:1446 (1989)) and the overexpression of soluble A $\beta$ 1-42 in early life (Teller, J.K., *et al.*, *Nature Medicine* 2:93 (1996)), exhibit lipid peroxidation and apoptotic cell death caused by increased generation of hydrogen peroxide (Busciglio, J. & Yankner, B.A., *Nature* 378:776 (1995)). Synthetic A $\beta$  peptides have been shown to induce lipid peroxidation of synaptosomes (Butterfield, D.A., *et al.*, *Biochem. Biophys. Res. Commun.* 200:710 (1994)), and to exert neurotoxicity (Behl, C., *et al.*, *Cell* 77:817 (1994); Mattson, M.P., *et al.*, *J. Neurochem.* 65:1740 (1995)) or vascular endothelial toxicity through a mechanism that involves the generation of cellular superoxide/hydrogen peroxide (O $_2^-$ /H $_2$ O $_2$ ) and is abolished by the presence of SOD (Thomas, T., *et al.*, *Nature* 380:168 (1996) or catalytic synthetic O $_2^-$ /H $_2$ O $_2$  scavengers (Bruce, A.J., *et al.*, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 93:2312 (1996)). Antioxidant vitamin E and the spin-trap compound PBN have been shown to protect against A $\beta$ -mediated neurotoxicity *in vitro* (Goodman, Y., & Mattson, M.P., *Exp. Neurol.* 128:1 (1994); Harris, M.E., *et al.*, *Exp. Neurol.* 131:193 (1995)).

- 58 -

A $\beta$ , a 39-43 amino acid peptide, is produced (Haass, C., *et al.*, *Nature* 359:322 (1992); Seubert, P., *et al.*, *Nature* 359:325 (1992); Shoji, M., *et al.*, *Science* 258:126 (1992)) by constitutive cleavage of the amyloid protein precursor (APP) (Kang, J., *et al.*, *Nature* 325:733 (1987); Tanzi, R.E., *et al.*, *Nature Genet* (1993)) as a mixture of polypeptides manifesting carboxyl-terminal heterogeneity. A $\beta$ -40 is the major soluble A $\beta$  species in biological fluids (Vigo-Pelfrey, C., *et al.*, *J. Neurochem.* 61:1965 (1993)) and A $\beta$ <sub>1-42</sub> is a minor soluble species, but is heavily enriched in interstitial plaque amyloid (Masters, C.L., *et al.*, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 82:4245 (1985); Kang, J. *et al.*, *Nature* 325:733 (1987); Prelli, F., *et al.*, *J. Neurochem.* 51:648 (1988); Roher *et al.*, *J. Cell Biol.* 107:2703-2716 (1988); Roher *et al.*, *J. Neurochem.* 61:1916-1926 (1993); Miller, D.L., *et al.*, *Arch. Biochem. Biophys.* 301:41 (1993)). The discovery of pathogenic mutations of APP close to or within the A $\beta$  domain (van Broeckhoven, C., *et al.*, *Science* 248:1120 (1990); Levy, E., *et al.*, *Science* 248:1124 (1990); Goate, A., *et al.*, *Nature* 349:704 (1991); Murrell, J., *et al.*, *Science* 254:94 (1991); Mullan, M., *et al.*, *Nature Genet* 1:345 (1992)) indicates that the metabolism of A $\beta$  is involved with the pathophysiology of this predominantly sporadic disease. Familial AD-linked mutations of APP, presenilin-1 and presenilin-2 correlate with increased cortical amyloid burden and appear to induce an increase in the ratio of A $\beta$ <sub>1-42</sub> as part of their common pathogenic mechanism (Suzuki, N., *et al.*, *Science* 264:1336 (1994); Scheuner *et al.*, *Nat Med.*, 2(8):864-870 (1996); Citron, M., *et al.*, *Nature Medicine* 3:67 (1997)). However, the mechanism by which A $\beta$ <sub>1-42</sub> exerts more neurotoxicity than A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> and other A $\beta$  peptides (Doré, S., *et al.*, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 94:4772 (1997)) remains unclear.

One of the models proposed for A $\beta$  neurotoxicity is based on a series of observations of A $\beta$ -generated oxyradicals generated by a putative A $\beta$  peptide fragmentation mechanism which is O<sub>2</sub>-dependent, metal-independent and involves the sulfoxation of the methionine at A $\beta$  residue 35 (Butterfield,



D.A., *et al.*, *Biochem. Biophys. Res. Commun.* 200:710 (1994); Hensley, K., *et al.*, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 91:3270 (1994); Hensley, K., *et al.*, *Ann N Y Acad Sci.*, 786: 120-134 (1996).  $A\beta_{25-35}$  peptide has been reported to exhibit  $H_2O_2$ -like reactivity towards aqueous  $Fe^{2+}$ , nitroxide spin probes, and synaptosomal membrane proteins (Butterfield, D.A., *et al.*, *Life Sci.* 58:217 (1996)), and  $A\beta_{1-40}$  has also been reported to generate the hydroxyl radical by mechanisms that are unclear (Tomiyama, T., *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 271:6839 (1996)). However, there has been no quantitative appraisal of the ROS-generating capacity of  $A\beta_{1-42}$  versus that of  $A\beta_{1-40}$  and other  $A\beta$  variants, to date.

$A\beta$  is a metal binding protein which saturably binds zinc via a histidine-mediated specific high affinity site ( $K_D = 107$  nM) as well as by low affinity binding ( $K_D = 5.2$   $\mu$ M). The high-affinity zinc binding site was mapped to a stretch of contiguous residues between positions 6-28 of the  $A\beta$  sequence (Bush, A.I., *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 269:12152 (1994)). Concentrations of zinc  $\geq 1$   $\mu$ M rapidly induce aggregation of human  $A\beta_{1-40}$  solutions (Bush, A.I., *et al.*, *Science* 265:1464 (1994)), in reversible manner which is dependent upon the dimerization of peptide in solution, its alpha-helical content, and the concentration of NaCl (Huang, X., *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 272:26464-26470 (1997)). Rat/mouse  $A\beta_{1-40}$  ("rat  $A\beta$ ", with substitutions of  $R_5 \rightarrow G$ ,  $Y_{10} \rightarrow F$ , and  $H_{13} \rightarrow R$ , as compared to human  $A\beta$ ) binds zinc less avidly (a single binding site,  $K_A = 3.8$   $\mu$ M) and, unlike the human peptide, is not precipitated by zinc at concentrations  $\leq 25$   $\mu$ M. Since zinc is concentrated in the neocortex, we hypothesized that the differential solubility of the rat/mouse  $A\beta$  peptide in the presence of zinc may explain the scarcity with which these animals form cerebral  $A\beta$  deposits (Johnstone, E.M., *et al.*, *Mol. Brain Res.* 10:299 (1991); Shivers, B.D., *et al.*, *EMBO J.* 7:1365 (1988)).

We have also observed interactions of  $A\beta$  with  $Cu^{2+}$ , which stabilizes dimerization of  $A\beta_{1-40}$  on gel chromatography (Bush, A.I., *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.*

269:12152 (1994)), and which binds to the peptide with an affinity estimated to be in the low picomolar range.  $\text{Fe}^{2+}$  has been observed to induce partial aggregation of  $\text{A}\beta$  (Bush, A.I., *et al.*, *Science* 268:1921 (1995)), and to induce SDS-resistant polymerization of the peptide (Dyrks, T., *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 267:18210-18217 (1992)). We hypothesized that the interactions of  $\text{A}\beta$  with Fe and Cu may contribute to the genesis of the oxidation insults that are observed in the AD-affected brain. This is because  $\text{Fe}^{3+}$  and  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$  are redox-active metal ions that are concentrated in brain neurons, and may participate in the generation of ROS by transferring electrons in their reduced state (reviewed in Markesbery, 1997).

The levels of Cu and Fe, and their binding proteins, are dysregulated in AD (Diebel, M.A., *et al.*, *J. Neurol. Sci.* 143:137 (1996); Good, P.F., *et al.*, *Ann. Neurol.* 31:286 (1992); Robinson, S.R., *et al.*, *Alzheimer's Research* 1:191 (1995); Thompson, C.M., *et al.*, *Neurotoxicology* 9:1 (1988); Kennard, M.L., *et al.*, *Nature Medicine* 2:1230 (1996); Connor, J.R., *et al.*, *Neurosci. Lett.* 159:88 (1993)) and may therefore lead to conditions that could promote ROS production. While a direct role for  $\text{A}\beta$  in metal-dependent ROS generation has not been described, the peptide's physiochemical interaction with transition metals, the presence of ferritin (Grudke-Iqbal, I., *et al.*, *Acta Neuropathol.* 81:105 (1990)) and redox reactive iron (Smith, M.A., *et al.*, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 94:9866 (1997)) in amyloid lesions, and the facilitation of  $\text{A}\beta_{1-40}$  neurotoxicity in cell culture by nanomolar concentrations of iron (Schubert, D. & Chevion, M., *Biochem. Biophys. Res. Commun.* 216:702 (1995)), collectively support such a possibility.

We report the simultaneous production of  $\text{H}_2\text{O}_2$  and reduced metal ions by  $\text{A}\beta$ , with the consequent generation of the hydroxyl radical. The amounts of reduced metal and ROS were both greatest when generated by  $\text{A}\beta_{1-42} > \text{A}\beta_{1-40} > \text{rat A}\beta_{1-40}$ ,  $\text{A}\beta_{40-1}$  and  $\text{A}\beta_{1-28}$ , a chemical relationship that correlates with the relative neurotoxicity of these peptides. These data describe a novel,  $\text{O}_2^-$

and biometal-dependent pathway of ROS generation by Alzheimer A $\beta$  peptides which may explain the occurrence of oxidative stress in AD brain.

a) *Metal Ion Reduction by A $\beta$  Peptides*

To determine whether A $\beta$  peptides possess metal-reducing properties, the ability of A $\beta$  peptides (Example 1) to reduce Fe<sup>3+</sup> and Cu<sup>2+</sup>, compared to Vitamin C and other polypeptides (Example 2) was measured. Vitamin C, serving as a positive control, reduced Cu<sup>2+</sup> efficiently (Figure 13A). However, the reduction of Cu<sup>2+</sup> by A $\beta$ <sub>1-42</sub> was as efficient, reducing all of the available Cu<sup>2+</sup> during the incubation period. A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> reduced 60% of the available Cu<sup>2+</sup>, whereas rat A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> and A $\beta$ <sub>1-28</sub> reduced no Cu<sup>2+</sup>. The reduction of Cu<sup>2+</sup> by BSA (25%) and insulin (10%) was less efficient than that by the human A $\beta$  peptides, and was not unexpected since these polypeptides possess cysteine residues and reduce Cu<sup>2+</sup> in the process of forming disulfide bonds.

Fe<sup>3+</sup>/Fe<sup>2+</sup> has lower standard reduction potential (0.11 V) than Cu<sup>2+</sup>/Cu<sup>+</sup> (0.15 V) does under our experimental conditions (Miller, D.M., *et al.*, *Free Radical Biology & Medicine* 8:95 (1990)), and, in general, Fe<sup>3+</sup> was reduced with less efficiency by Vitamin C and the polypeptides that reduced Cu<sup>2+</sup>. Vitamin C reduced 15% of the available Fe<sup>3+</sup>, however A $\beta$ <sub>1-42</sub> was the most efficient (50%) of the agents tested for Fe<sup>3+</sup> reduction, reducing more Fe<sup>3+</sup> in the incubation period than Vitamin C (15%), A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> (12%) and BSA (8%). Rat A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub>, A $\beta$ <sub>1-28</sub> and insulin did not significantly facilitate the reduction of Fe<sup>3+</sup>. Analysis of A $\beta$ <sub>1-42</sub> and A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> after incubation with Cu<sup>2+</sup> and Fe<sup>3+</sup> under these conditions revealed that there was no apparent mass modification of the peptides on mass spectrometry, and no change in its migration pattern on sodium dodecyl sulfate polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis (SDS PAGE), nor evidence for increased aggregation of the peptides by turbidometry or sedimentation analysis, suggesting that the peptides were not consumed or modified during the reduction reaction. Under these conditions, the complete kinetics of the peptide-mediated reactions cannot be appreciated (the presence

- 62 -

of A $\beta_{1-42}$  induced the total consumption of the Cu<sup>2+</sup> substrate within the incubation period), but a striking relationship exists between the relative efficiencies of the various A $\beta$  peptides to reduce Cu<sup>2+</sup>/Fe<sup>3+</sup> in this system and their respective participation in amyloid neuropathology.

Since the dissolved O<sub>2</sub> in the buffer vehicle may be expected to react with the reduced metals being generated [Reaction (1)], the effect of modulating the O<sub>2</sub> tension in the buffer upon the generation of reduced metals by the A $\beta$  peptides (Figure 13B) was examined. Prior to the addition of Vitamin C or polypeptide, the buffer vehicle was continuously bubbled for 2 hours at 20°C with 100% O<sub>2</sub> to create conditions of increased O<sub>2</sub> tension, or Argon to create anaerobic conditions. Increasing the O<sub>2</sub> tension slightly reduced the levels of reduced metals being detected, probably due to the diversion of a fraction of the Fe<sup>2+</sup>/Cu<sup>+</sup> being generated to Reaction (1), and, if H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> is being produced as a product of Reaction (2), the recruitment of Fe<sup>2+</sup>/Cu<sup>+</sup> into the Fenton reaction [Reaction (3)]. However, performing the reaction under anaerobic (Argon purged) conditions also slightly reduced the levels of reduced metals being detected. This may be because some of the reduction of Fe<sup>3+</sup>/Cu<sup>2+</sup> is due to reaction with O<sub>2</sub>:



To determine whether the reduction of metal ions in the presence of A $\beta$  was due to the action of the peptide or the generation of O<sub>2</sub> by the peptide, the effects of metal ion chelators on the generation of reduced metal ions (Figure 13B) was studied. It was found that coincubation of A $\beta_{1-42}$  with the relatively Fe<sup>3+</sup>-specific chelator desferrioxamine (DFO) under ambient oxygenation conditions nearly halved the production of Fe<sup>2+</sup>. Coincubation of A $\beta_{1-42}$  with the high-affinity Cu<sup>2+</sup> chelator TETA abolished 95% of the Cu<sup>+</sup> generated by the peptide under ambient oxygenation conditions. These data indicate that

- 63 -

the majority of the  $\text{Cu}^+$  and a significant amount of the  $\text{Fe}^{2+}$  produced by  $\text{A}\beta_{1-42}$  are due to the direct action of the peptide and not indirectly due to the production of  $\text{O}_2^-$ .

5 The inhibitory effects of chelation upon  $\text{A}\beta$ -mediated reduction of metal ions indicates that  $\text{A}\beta$  probably directly coordinates  $\text{Fe}^{3+}$  and  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$ , and also that these chelating agents are not potentiating the redox potential of the metals ions, suggested to be an artifactual mechanism for the generation of reduced metal species (Sayre, L.M. *et al.*, *Science* 274:1933 (1996)). The reasons for DFO being less effective than TETA in attenuating metal reduction  
10 may relate to the respective (unknown) binding affinities for  $\text{Fe}^{3+}$  and  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$  to the  $\text{A}\beta$  peptide, the stereochemistry of the coordination of the metal ions by the peptide, and the abilities of the chelating agents to affect electron transfer after coordinating the metal ion.

15 The reduction of metal ions by  $\text{A}\beta$  must leave the peptide, at least transiently, radicalized, in agreement with the electron paramagnetic resonance (EPR) findings of Hensley *et al.*, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci.* 91:3270 (1994). In their report, DFO, EDTA or Chelex 100 could not abolish the EPR signal generated by  $\text{A}\beta_{25-35}$  in PBS, leading these investigators to conclude that the radicalization of  $\text{A}\beta$  was metal-independent. However, the inventors have  
20 found that after treatment with Chelex 100 the concentrations of Fe and Cu in PBS are still as high as  $\approx 0.5 \mu\text{M}$  (8), which could be sufficient to induce the radicalization of the peptide after metal reduction. Since DFO does not abolish the reduction of  $\text{Fe}^{3+}$  by  $\text{A}\beta_{1-42}$  (Figure 13B), and since EDTA has been observed to potentiate Fe-mediated Fenton chemistry (Samuni *et al.*, *Eur. J.*  
25 *Biochem.* 137:119-124(1983)), it is suspected that Hensley and colleagues may have inadvertently overlooked the contribution of metal reduction to  $\text{A}\beta$ -mediated radical formation.

30 Rat  $\text{A}\beta_{1-40}$  did not reduce metal ions, and has been shown to have attenuated binding of  $\text{Zn}^{2+}$  (Bush *et al.*, *Science*, 265:1464 (1994)). A similar attenuation of  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$  and  $\text{Fe}^{3+}$  binding by rat  $\text{A}\beta_{1-40}$  compared to human  $\text{A}\beta_{1-40}$  is

anticipated. These data also indicate that the rat A $\beta$  substitutions in human A $\beta$ 's zinc binding domain towards the peptide's amino terminus (Bush *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.*, 269:12152 (1994)) involve residues that mediate the metal-reducing properties of the peptide. However, the hydrophobic carboxyl-terminal residues were also critical to the reduction properties of A $\beta$ . That A $\beta_{1-28}$  did not reduce metal ions indicates that an intact Zn<sup>2+</sup>-binding site (Bush *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 269:12152 (1994)) is insufficient to facilitate the metal reduction reaction. The mechanism by which the two additional hydrophobic residues (Ile and Ala) on A $\beta_{1-42}$  so substantially enhance the peptide's redox activity compared to A $\beta_{1-40}$  is still unclear.

It has been observed that sulfoxation of the methionine residue at A $\beta$  position 35 accompanies the EPR changes seen during the incubation of A $\beta_{25-35}$  for 3 hours in PBS at 37°C (Hensley, K., *et al.*, *Ann N Y Acad Sci.*, 786: 120-134 (1996)), however, no evidence was found for a modification of A $\beta_{1-40}$  and A $\beta_{1-42}$  after mass spectrophotometric examination of the peptides incubated under conditions as described. Therefore, A $\beta$ -mediated metal reduction, and the subsequent A $\beta$ -mediated redox reactions described below, appear to be achieved by a mechanism that differs from that previously reported.

#### b) *Production of H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> by A $\beta$ Peptides*

The reduced metal ions produced by A $\beta$  were expected to generate O<sub>2</sub><sup>-</sup> and H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> by Reactions (1) and (2). To study this, a novel assay was developed (Example 3) which detected the generation of 10  $\mu$ M H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> by A $\beta_{1-42}$  in the presence of 1  $\mu$ M Fe<sup>3+</sup> under ambient O<sub>2</sub> conditions (Figure 14A). To validate the assay, coincubation with catalase was observed to abolish the H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> signal in a dose dependent manner. The amount of H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> produced by the various A $\beta$  peptides was studied, and observed that the order of the production of H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> by the A $\beta$  variants was A $\beta_{1-42}$  > A $\beta_{1-40}$  >> rat A $\beta_{1-40}$  - A $\beta_{1-28}$  (Figure 14B), paralleling the amounts of metal reduction by the same peptides (Figure 13A).

- 65 -

$H_2O_2$  formation is likely to be mediated first by  $O_2$ -dependent  $O_2^-$  formation [Reaction (1)], followed by dismutation [Reaction (2)]. To appraise the contribution of Reaction (1) to  $H_2O_2$  formation,  $H_2O_2$  formation by  $A\beta_{1-42}$  in the presence of chelators was measured (Figure 14C). The amount of  $H_2O_2$  formed in the presence of  $1 \mu M Cu^{2+}$  was 25% greater than the amount formed in the presence of  $1 \mu M Fe^{3+}$ . Coincubation with DFO had no effect on  $H_2O_2$  formation in the presence of  $1 \mu M Fe^{3+}$ . However, TETA, and the  $Cu^{2+}$ -specific indicator BC, both substantially inhibited the formation of  $H_2O_2$  in the presence of  $1 \mu M Cu^{2+}$ . The reasons why DFO partially inhibited  $Fe^{3+}$  reduction, but was unable to inhibit  $H_2O_2$  formation are unclear. These data indicate that the formation of  $H_2O_2$  by  $A\beta$  is dependent upon the presence of substoichiometric amounts of  $Cu^{2+}/(II)$ . The possibility that formation of  $H_2O_2$  in the presence of  $Fe^{3+}$  was due to the presence of trace quantities of  $Cu^{2+}$  cannot be excluded.

BC and BP, agents that specifically complex reduced metal ions, were far more effective than DFO and TETA at inhibiting  $H_2O_2$  formation by  $A\beta$  (Figure 14C) but the reasons for this are not clear. The relatively  $Fe^{2+}$ -specific complexing agent, BP, inhibited  $H_2O_2$  formation in the presence of  $Cu^{2+}$ , and the relatively  $Cu^{2+}$ -specific complexing agent, BC, inhibited  $H_2O_2$  formation in the presence of  $Fe^{3+}$ , suggesting that these agents are not totally specific in their metal ion affinities. The formation of  $H_2O_2$  by  $A\beta$  in the absence of BC or BP confirms that the reduction of metals is not contingent upon the artifactual enhancement of the metal ions' redox potentials (Sayre, L.M., *Science* 274:1933 (1996)).

To determine whether the formation of  $O_2^-/H_2O_2$  by  $A\beta$  is merely due to the reduction of metal ions, or whether  $A\beta$  also facilitates the recruitment of the substrates in Reaction (1), the generation of  $H_2O_2$  by  $A\beta_{1-42}$ ,  $A\beta_{1-40}$  and Vitamin C under different  $O_2$  tensions in the presence of  $1 \mu M Fe^{3+}$  (Figure 14D) or  $1 \mu M Cu^{2+}$  (Figure 14E) was studied. The presence of Vitamin C was used as a control measure to determine the amount  $H_2O_2$  that is generated by

- 66 -

the presence of reduced metals alone. In the presence of either metal ion, there was a significant increase in the amount of  $H_2O_2$  produced under higher  $O_2$  tensions. The presence of either  $A\beta_{1-42}$  and  $A\beta_{1-40}$  generated more  $H_2O_2$  ( $A\beta_{1-42} > A\beta_{1-40}$ ) than Vitamin C under any  $O_2$  tension studied, and generated  $H_2O_2$  under conditions where Vitamin C produced none, even though reduced metal ions must be present due to the activity of Vitamin C. Therefore, under these ambient and argon-purged conditions, the reduction of metal ions is insufficient to produce  $H_2O_2$ . These data indicate that  $A\beta$  indeed facilitates the recruitment of  $O_2$  into Reaction (1) more than would be expected by the interaction of the metals reduced by  $A\beta$  with the passively dissolved  $O_2$ . Under relatively anaerobic conditions, the  $A\beta$  peptides were observed to still produce  $H_2O_2$  in the presence of  $Cu^{2+}$  (Figure 14E). This is probably due to the ability of  $A\beta$  to recruit  $O_2$  into Reaction (1) under conditions of very low  $O_2$  tension. Since  $O_2$  is preferentially dissolved in hydrophobic environments (Halliwell and Gutteridge, *Biochem. J.*, 219:1-14 (1984)), it seems that the hydrophobic carboxyl-terminus of  $A\beta$  could attract  $O_2$ , serving as a reservoir for the substrate.

c) *Evidence of the Superoxide Anion Formed by the  $A\beta$ -metal Complex*

To confirm the production of  $O_2^-$  by  $A\beta$ , the absorbance of the peptide in solution at 250 nm, the absorbance peak of  $O_2^-$  (Figure 15A) was measured. The absorbance generated by  $A\beta_{1-42}$  in the presence of  $1 \mu M Fe^{3+}$  was 60% reduced when co-incubated with SOD, increased in the presence of high  $O_2$  tension and abolished under anaerobic conditions. These data support the likelihood that  $A\beta$  generates  $H_2O_2$  by first generating  $O_2^-$ .

The absorbance changes at 250 nm for the various  $A\beta$  peptides in PBS (Figure 15B) paralleled the production of  $H_2O_2$  from the same peptides (Figure 14B), but the reason for the  $A_{250}$  being much greater for  $A\beta_{1-42}$  compared to  $A\beta_{1-40}$  is unclear. It is likely that a fraction of the total  $H_2O_2$  generated by  $A\beta$



is decomposed by the Fenton reaction [Reaction (3)]. Therefore, the amount of  $\text{H}_2\text{O}_2$  detected may be an attenuated reflection of the amount of  $\text{O}_2$  detected.

d) *Detection of Hydroxyl Radicals Generated from the  $\text{A}\beta$ -metal Complex*

5 Having demonstrated that human  $\text{A}\beta$  peptides simultaneously produce  $\text{H}_2\text{O}_2$  and reduced metals, it was determined whether the hydroxyl radical was formed by the Fenton or Haber-Weiss reactions [Reactions (3) and (4)]. A modified TBARS assay was employed to detect  $\text{OH}\cdot$  released from co-incubation mixtures of  $\text{A}\beta$  peptides and  $1\ \mu\text{M}$   $\text{Fe}^{3+}$  or  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$ . As expected,  $\text{A}\beta_{1-42}$  produced more  $\text{OH}\cdot$  than  $\text{A}\beta_{1-40}$ , and rat  $\text{A}\beta$  did not generate  $\text{OH}\cdot$  (Figure 16A). In contrast to the amount of  $\text{Fe}^{2+}$  and  $\text{Cu}^+$  produced (Figure 13A),  $\text{A}\beta$  generated more  $\text{OH}\cdot$  in the presence of  $\text{Fe}^{3+}$  than in the presence of  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$ . This may be because  $\text{Fe}^{2+}$  is more stable than  $\text{Cu}^+$ , which may be more rapidly oxidized by Reaction (1). Therefore, the  $\text{Fe}^{2+}$  generated by  $\text{A}\beta$  may have a greater opportunity than the  $\text{Cu}^+$  generated to react with  $\text{H}_2\text{O}_2$ . It is also possible that the contribution of the Haber-Weiss reaction to the production of  $\text{OH}\cdot$  [Reaction (5)] is greater in the presence of  $\text{Fe}^{3+}$  than in the presence of  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$ .

20 The effects of the  $\text{OH}\cdot$  scavengers, dimethyl sulfoxide (DMSO) and mannitol, upon  $\text{A}\beta_{1-42}$ -mediated  $\text{OH}\cdot$  generation were studied. Whereas these agents suppressed the generation of  $\text{OH}\cdot$  by Vitamin C in the presence of  $\text{Fe}^{3+}$ , and DMSO suppressed the generation of  $\text{OH}\cdot$  by Vitamin C in the presence of  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$ , neither were able to quench the generation of  $\text{OH}\cdot$  by  $\text{A}\beta_{1-42}$ , whether in the presence of  $\text{Fe}^{3+}$  or  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$  (Figure 16B). This suggests that these scavengers cannot encounter the  $\text{OH}\cdot$  generated by  $\text{A}\beta$  before the TBARS reagent does.

e) *Similarity Between Bleomycin-Fe and  $\text{A}\beta$ -Fe/Cu Complexes*

25 The present Examples provide evidence for a model by which  $\text{Fe}/\text{Cu}$  and  $\text{O}_2$  are mediators and substrates for the production of  $\text{OH}\cdot$  by  $\text{A}\beta$  (Figures 16A and 16B) in a manner that depends upon the presence and length of the

peptide's carboxyl terminus. The brain neocortex is an environment that is rich in both O<sub>2</sub> and Fe/Cu, which may explain why this organ is predisposed to A $\beta$ -mediated neurotoxicity, if this mechanism is confirmed *in vivo*. The transport of Fe, Cu and Zn in the brain is largely energy-dependent. For example, the copper-transporting gene for Wilson's disease is an ATPase (Tanzi, R.E. *et al.*, *Nature Genetics* 5:344 (1993)), and the re-uptake of zinc following neurotransmission is highly energy-dependent (Assaf, S.Y. & S.H. Chung, *Nature*, 308:734-736 (1984); Howell *et al.*, *Nature*, 308:736-738 (1984)).

There is increasing evidence for lesions of brain energy metabolism in aging and AD (Parker *et al.*, *Neurology*, 40:1302-1303 (1990); Mecocci *et al.*, *Ann. Neurol.* 34:609-616 (1993); Beal, M.F. *Neurobiol. Aging* 15 (Suppl 2):S171-S174(1994)). Therefore, damage to energy-dependent brain metal homeostasis may be an upstream lesion for the genesis of A $\beta$  deposition in AD. Most brain biometals are bound to proteins or other ligands, however, according to our findings, only A $\beta$  small fraction of the available metals needs to be derailed to the A $\beta$ -containing compartment to precipitate the peptide and to activate its ROS-generating activities. The generation of ROS described herein depends upon the sub-stoichiometric amounts of Fe<sup>3+</sup>/Cu<sup>2+</sup> (1:10, metal:A $\beta$ ), and it was estimated that 1% of the zinc that is released during neurotransmission would be sufficient to precipitate soluble A $\beta$  in the synaptic vicinity (Huang, X. *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 272:26464-26470 (1997)).

A polypeptide which generates both substrates of the Fenton reaction in sufficient quantities to form significant amounts of the OH $\cdot$  radical is unusual. Therefore, A $\beta$  collections in the AD-affected brain are likely to be a major source of the oxidation stress seen in the effected tissue. One recent report describes that A $\beta$  is released by the treatment of the mammalian lens in culture with H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> (Frederikse, P.H., *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 271:10169 (1996)). If a similar response mechanism to H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> stress exists in neocortex, then the increasing H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> concentration generated by the accumulating A $\beta$  mass in the

- 69 -

AD-affected brain may induce the production of even more A $\beta$  leading to a vicious cycle of A $\beta$  accumulation and ROS stress.

The simultaneous production of Fenton substrates by A $\beta$  is a chemical property that is brought into therapeutic application in the oxidation mechanism of the bleomycin-iron complex. Bleomycin is a glycopeptide antibiotic produced by *Streptomyces verticillus* and is a potent antitumor agent. It acts by complexing Fe<sup>3+</sup> and then binding to tumor nuclear DNA which is degraded *in situ* by the generation of OH• (Sugiura, Y., *et al.*, *Biochem. Biophys. Res. Commun.* 105:1511 (1997)). Similar to A $\beta$ -Fe<sup>3+</sup>/Cu<sup>2+</sup> complexes, incubation of bleomycin in aqueous solution also engenders the production of O<sub>2</sub><sup>-</sup>, H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> and OH• in an Fe<sup>3+</sup>-dependent manner. DFO could not inhibit H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> production from the A $\beta$ -Fe<sup>3+</sup>/Cu<sup>2+</sup> complex, and similarly, DFO does not inhibit the OH•-mediated DNA damage caused by the bleomycin-Fe<sup>3+</sup> complex. Also, low-molecular-mass OH• scavengers mannitol and DMSO were unable to inhibit the generation of OH• by A $\beta$ -Fe<sup>3+</sup>/Cu<sup>2+</sup>, and are similarly unable to inhibit OH• production from bleomycin-Fe<sup>3+</sup>.

It is proposed herein that inhibition of A $\beta$ -mediated OH• provides means of treatment, *e.g.* therapy, by compounds that are Fe or Cu chelators. The clinical administration of DFO was reported as being effective in preventing the progression of AD (Crapper-McLachlan, D.R. *et al.*, *Lancet* 337:1304 (1991)); however, since DFO chelates Zn<sup>2+</sup> as well as Fe<sup>3+</sup> and Al(III), the effect, if verifiable, may not have been due to the abolition of the redox activity of A $\beta$ , but may have been due to the disaggregation of Zn<sup>2+</sup>-mediated A $\beta$  deposits (Cherny, R.A. *et al.*, *Soc. Neurosci. Abstr.* 23:(abstract)(1997)) which may have reduced cortical A $\beta$  burden and, consequently, oxidation stress.

#### *f) Oxidative Stress and Alzheimer's Disease Pathology*

Autopsy tissue from AD subjects has been reported to exhibit higher basal TBARS formation than control material (Subbarao, K.V. *et al.*, *J.*

5 *Neurochem.* 55:342 (1990); Balazs, L. and M. Leon, *Neurochem. Res.* 19:1131 (1994); Lovell *et al.*, *Neurology* 45:1594 (1995)). These observations could be explained, on the basis of the present findings, as being due to the reactivity of the A $\beta$  content within the tissue. A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> recently has been shown to generate TBARS in a dose-dependent manner when incubated in cell culture, however TBARS reactivity was reduced by pre-treating the cells with trypsin which also abolished the binding of the peptide to the RAGE receptor (Yan *et al.*, *Nature* 382:685 (1996)). One possibility for this result is that the RAGE receptor tethers an A $\beta$  microaggregate sufficiently close to the cell to permit increased penetration of the cell by H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> which may then combine with reduced metals within the cell to generate the Fenton reaction. Alternatively, A $\beta$  may generate the Fenton chemistry at the RAGE receptor. The resulting attack of the cell surface by the highly reactive OH• radical, which reacts within nanometers of its generation, may have been the source of the positive TBARS assay.

15 APP also reduces Cu<sup>2+</sup>, but not Fe<sup>3+</sup>, at a site in its amino terminus (Multhaup, G., *et al.*, *Science* 271:1406-1409 (1996)), adjacent to a functional and specific Zn<sup>2+</sup>-binding site that modulates heparin binding and protease inhibition (Bush *et al.*, 1993; Van Nostrand, 1995). Therefore, the amino terminus of APP reiterates an association with transition metal ions that is found in the A $\beta$  domain. This intriguing theme of tandem Cu/Zn interaction and associated redox activity found in two soluble fragments of the parent protein may indicate that the function and metabolism of APP could be related to biometal homeostasis and associated redox environments.

20 The present findings indicate that the manipulation of the brain biometal environment with specific agents acting directly (*e.g.* chelators and antioxidants) or indirectly (*e.g.* by improving cerebral energy metabolism) holds promise as a means for therapeutic intervention in the prevention and treatment of Alzheimer's disease.

### *Example 4*

#### *Resolubilization of A $\beta$*

5 Considerable evidence now indicates that the accumulation of A $\beta$  in the brain cortex is very closely related to the cause of Alzheimer's disease. A $\beta$  is a normal component of biological fluids whose function is unknown. A $\beta$  accumulates in a number of morphologies varying from highly insoluble amyloid to deposits that can be extracted from post-mortem tissue in aqueous buffer. The factors behind the accumulation are unknown, but the inventors have systematically appraised the solubility of synthetic A $\beta$  peptide in order to get some clues as to what kind of pathological environment could induce the peptide to precipitate.

10 It was found that A $\beta$  has three principal vulnerabilities - zinc, copper and low pH. The precipitation of A $\beta$  by copper is dramatically exaggerated under mildly acidic conditions (e.g., pH 6.9), suggesting that the cerebral lactic acidosis that complicates Alzheimer's disease could contribute to the precipitation of A $\beta$  were this event to be mediated by copper. A consideration of the involvement of zinc and copper in plaque pathology is contemplatable since the regulation of these metals in the brain has been shown to be abnormal in AD.

20 Recently direct evidence has been obtained indicating that these metals are integral components of the A $\beta$  deposits in the brain in AD. It was found that zinc- and copper-specific chelators (including clioquinol) dramatically redissolve a significant proportion (up to 70%) of A $\beta$  extracted from post-mortem AD affected brain tissue, compared to the amount extracted from the tissue by buffer in the absence of chelators.

25 These data support a strategy of redissolving A $\beta$  deposits *in vivo* by chelation. Therefore, clioquinol is an excellent candidate for further development since it chelates both copper and zinc, and since it is

- 72 -

hydrophobic, is enriched in the brain. Interestingly, a reported success in attempting to slow down the progression of Alzheimer's disease used a chelation strategy with desferrioxamine. The authors (Crapper-McLachlan, D.R., *et al.*, 337:1304 (1991), thought that they were chelating aluminum, but  
5 desferrioxamine is also a chelator of copper and zinc. Treatment with desferrioxamine is impractical because the therapy requires twice daily deep intramuscular injections which are very painful, and also causes side effects such as anaemia due to iron chelation.

*Resolubilization of Metal-induced A $\beta$  Aggregates by Chelators*

10 A $\beta$  (10 ng/well in TBS) aggregation was induced by addition of ZnCl<sub>2</sub> (25  $\mu$ M), CuCl<sub>2</sub> (5  $\mu$ M) or acidic conditions (pH 5.5). Aggregates were transferred to a 0.2  $\mu$  nylon membrane by filtration. The aggregates were then washed (200  $\mu$ l/well) with TBS alone, TBS containing 2  $\mu$ M EDTA, or TBS containing 2  $\mu$ M clioquinol. The membrane was fixed, probed with the anti-  
15 A $\beta$  monoclonal antibody 6E10, and developed for exposure to ECL-film. Figure 17 shows relative signal strength as determined by transmittance analysis of the ECL-film, calibrated against known amounts of the peptide. Values are expressed as a percentage of A $\beta$  signal after washing with TBS alone.

20 Both EDTA and clioquinol treatments were more effective than TBS alone at resolubilizing the retained (aggregated) A $\beta$  when the peptide was precipitated by Zn or Cu (see Figure 17). When A $\beta$  was precipitated by pH 5.5 however, it was not resolubilized more readily by either chelator compared to TBS washing alone. The pH 5.5 precipitate contains a much greater  
25 proportion of beta-sheet amyloid than the A $\beta$  precipitates formed by Zn or Cu.

### Example 5

#### *A $\beta$ Extraction from Human Brain Post-Mortem Samples*

The inventors have recently characterized zinc-mediated A $\beta$  deposits in human brain (Cherny, R.A., *et al.*, *Soc. Neurosci Abstr.* 23:(Abstract) (1997)). It was recently reported that there is a population of water-extractable A $\beta$  deposit in the AD-affected brain (Kuo, Y-M., *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 271:4077-81 (1996)). The inventors hypothesized that homogenization of brain tissue in water may dilute the metal content in the tissue, so lowering the putative zinc concentration in A $\beta$  collections, and liberating soluble A $\beta$  subunits by freeing A $\beta$  complexed with zinc [Zn<sup>2+</sup>].

To test this hypothesis, the brain tissue preparation protocol of Kuo and colleagues was replicated, but phosphate-buffered saline pH 7.4 (PBS) was substituted as the extraction buffer, achieving similar results. Highly sensitive and specific anti-A $\beta$  monoclonal antibodies (Ida, N., *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.*, 271:22908 (1996)) were used to assay A $\beta$  extraction by western blot. Next, the extraction of the same material was repeated with PBS in the presence of chelators of varying specificities (Table 1), and it was determined that the presence of a chelator increased the amount of A $\beta$  in the soluble extract several-fold (Figures 19A-19C, 20A and 20B, 25A; Table 2).

The amount of A $\beta$  detected in the pellet fraction of each sample is correspondingly lower, indicating that the effect of the chelator is upon the disassembly of the A $\beta$  aggregate, and not by inhibition of an A $\beta$ -cleaving metalloprotease (such as insulin degrading enzyme cleavage of A $\beta$  reported recently by Dennis Selkoe at the 27<sup>th</sup> Annual Meeting for the Society for Neuroscience, New Orleans). The extraction of sedimentable A $\beta$  into the soluble phase correlated only with the extraction of zinc from the pellet, and not with any other metal assayed (Table 3). Examination of the total amount

of protein released by the treatments revealed that chelation was not merely liberating more proteins in a non-specific manner.

Table 1. Dissociation Constants for Metal Ions of Various Chelators Used to Extract Human Brain A $\beta$ .

CHELATOR	Ca	Cu	Mg	Fe	Zn	Al	Co
EGTA	10.9	17.6	5.3	11.8	12.6	13.9	12.4
EDTA	10.7	18.8	8.9	14.3	16.5	16.5	16.5
Penicillamine	0	18.2	0	0	10.2	0	0
TPEN	3.0	20.2	0	14.4	15.4	0	0
Bathophenanthroline	0	8.8	0	5.6	6.9	0	0
Bathocuproine (BC)	0	19.1 (Cu <sup>+</sup> )	0	0	4.1	0	4.2

LogK is illustrated for the chelators, where  $K = [ML]/[M][L]$ . Different chelators have greatly differing affinities for metal ions, as shown. TPEN is relatively specific for Zn and Cu, and has no affinity for Ca and Mg (which are far more abundant metal ions in tissues). Bathocuproine (BC) has high affinity for zinc and for cuprous ions. Whereas all the chelators examined have a significant affinity for zinc, EGTA and EDTA have significant affinities for Ca and Mg.

The ability of chelators to extract A $\beta$  from post-mortem brain tissue was studied in over 40 cases (25 AD, 15 age-matched and young adult controls, all confirmed by histopathology). While there is a lot of variation between samples as to what is the best concentration of given chelator for the optimum extraction of A $\beta$ , there are no cases where a chelator does not, at some concentration, extract far more A $\beta$  than PBS alone.

Figure 19 shows that metal chelators promote the solubilization of A $\beta$  from human brain sample homogenates. Representative curves for three chelators (TPEN, EGTA, Bathocuproine) used in extracting the same



- 75 -

representative AD brain sample are shown. 0.5 g of prefrontal cortex was dissected and homogenized in PBS  $\pm$  chelator as indicated. The homogenate was then centrifuged (100,000 g) and the supernatant removed, and a sample taken for western blot assay using anti-A $\beta$  specific antibodies after Tricine PAGE. Densitometry was performed against synthetic peptide standards. The blots shown here represent typical results. Similar results were achieved whether or not protease inhibitors were included in the PBS (extraction was at 4°C). Furthermore, similar results were achieved when the brain sample was homogenized in PBS and then pelleted before treated with PBS  $\pm$  chelator.

There is also a complex relationship between the dose of the chelator and the resultant resolubilization of A $\beta$  (Figures 19A-C). For the same given sample, neither TPEN nor EGTA could increase the extraction of A $\beta$  in a dose-dependent manner. Rather, although concentrations of chelators could be very effective in the low micromolar range (*e.g.*, TPEN 4  $\mu$ M, Figure 19A), higher concentrations induced a paradoxical loss of recovery. This kind of response was found in every case examined. The extraction of A $\beta$  is abolished by adding exogenous zinc, but is enhanced by adding magnesium. Preliminary *in vitro* data indicate that whereas Mg has no effect on the precipitation of A $\beta$ , its presence enhances the peptide's resolubilization following zinc-induced precipitation. Therefore, the "polyphasic" profile of chelator extraction of A $\beta$ , with higher concentrations of TPEN and EGTA inducing a loss of recovery, may be explained by the chelation of Mg that is only expected to occur after the chelation of zinc when the relative abundance of Mg in the sample, and the relative dissociation constants of TPEN and EGTA are considered.

In contrast, bathocuproine (BC) exhibits a clear dose-dependent increase in A $\beta$  extraction from human brain, probably due to its relatively high specificity for zinc, although an interaction with trace amounts of Cu<sup>+</sup> or other metals not yet assayed, cannot be excluded.

- 76 -

Western blot analysis of extracts using A $\beta$ <sub>1-42</sub>-specific monoclonals revealed the presence of abundant A $\beta$ <sub>1-42</sub> species. It was observed that  $\approx$ 20% of AD cases exhibit clear SDS-resistant A $\beta$  dimers in the soluble extract after treatment with chelators. These dimers are reminiscent of the neurotoxic A $\beta$ <sub>1-42</sub> dimers that were extracted by Roher and colleagues from AD-affected brain (Roher, A.E., *et al.*, *Journal of Biological Chemistry* 271:20631-20635 (1996)). An estimation of the proportion of total precipitated A $\beta$  in the sample was achieved by extracting the homogenate pellet following centrifugation, into formic acid, and then performing a western blot on the extract following neutralization. The proportion of pelletable A $\beta$  that is released by chelation treatment varies considerably from case to case, from as little as 30% to as much as 80%. In the absence of a chelator, no more than  $\approx$ 10% of the total pelletable A $\beta$  is extracted by PBS alone.

One preliminary emerging trend is that samples with a greater proportion of diffuse or vascular A $\beta$  deposit are more likely to have their pelletable A $\beta$  resolubilized by chelation treatment. Also, extraction of the tissue homogenate overnight with agitation greatly increases the amount of A $\beta$  extracted in the presence of chelators (compared to PBS alone), when compared to briefer periods of extraction indicating that the disassembly of A $\beta$  deposits by chelation treatment is a time-dependent reaction and is unlikely to be due to inhibition of a protease. A study of brain cortical tissue from one amyloid-bearing APP transgenic mouse indicates that, like human brain, homogenization in the presence of a chelator enhances the extraction of pelletable A $\beta$ .

Effects of various chelators on the extraction of A $\beta$  into the supernatant as a percentage change from control extractions is summarized below in Table 2.

Table 2. Effects of Various Chelators Upon Extraction of A $\beta$ .

Effect of Chelators (% change from control)						
	TPEN		EGTA		BATHOCUP	
	0.1mM	2.0mM	0.1mM	2.0mM	0.1mM	2.0mM
Mean (n=6)	182	241	207	46	301	400
+/- SD	79	81	115	48	190	181

Densitometry of A $\beta$  western blots (Figures 19A-19C) was performed for a series of 6 AD brain samples homogenized in the presence of chelators as indicated. The mean ( $\pm$ SD) increases in signal, above the signal generated by PBS extraction alone, are indicated in Table 2. A significantly increased amount of chelator-induced A $\beta$  resolubilization was achieved by a 16 hour extraction with agitation in subsequent studies.

Table 3 shows a comparison between pellets of post-centrifugation homogenates in the presence and absence of a chelator (TPEN).

Table 3. Residual Metals in Pellets of Post-Centrifugation Homogenates in the Presence and Absence of Chelator.

METAL	Zn	Cu	Fe	Ca	Mg	Al
PBS alone mg/kg (SD)	50.7 (12.0)	11.9 (3.5)	227 (69)	202 (69)	197 (94)	44 (111)
+TPEN mg/kg (SD)	33.2* (9.8)	9.8 (3.1)	239 (76)	(210) (89)	230 (94)	65 (108)

Frontal cortex from AD (n=6) and healthy controls (n=4) was homogenized in the presence and absence of PBS  $\pm$  TPEN (0.1 mM). After ultracentrifugation of the homogenate, the pellets were extracted into concentrated HCl and measured for metal content by ion coupled plasma - atomic emission spectroscopy (ICP-AES).

- 78 -

Using the same technique, zinc-mediated assembly of A $\beta$  in normal brains was shown. Figures 20A and 20B show sedimentable A $\beta$  deposits in healthy brain tissue. The effects of chelators in enhancing A $\beta$  extraction from brain homogenates is also observed in normal tissue. Figure 20A illustrates a western blot with anti-A $\beta$  antibody of material extracted from a 27-year-old individual with no history of neurological disorder. T= TPEN, E= EGTA, B= bathocuproine. Bathocuproine is much less effective in extracting A $\beta$  from control tissue than from AD tissue. These data are typical of 15 cases.

As expected, far less total A $\beta$  is present in normal brain samples compared to AD brain samples, although the content of A $\beta$  increases with age. It is possible that these findings in young adult brains represent the zinc-mediated initiation of amyloid formation in deposits that, in youth, are too diffuse to be detected by immunohistochemistry.

Roher and others have suggested that dimers of A $\beta$  are the toxic component of amyloid. As shown in Figure 21, dimers appear in response to chelation in disproportion to the monomeric signal (treatment with PBS alone does not generate soluble dimers). This suggests that A $\beta$  deposits are being dismantled by the chelators into SDS-resistant dimeric structural units.

Figure 22 shows that the recovery of total soluble protein is not affected by the presence of chelators in the homogenization step. The proportionality of extracted subfractions, calculated based on total protein as determined by formic acid extraction, should not be prone to artifact based on chelator-specific affects.

### ***Example 6***

#### ***Resolubilization of A $\beta$ by Clioquinol***

In one previous attempt to use metal chelation as a therapeutic for AD, Crapper-McLachlan and colleagues (Crapper-McLachlan, D.R., *et al.*, 337:1304 (1991)) administered intramuscular desferrioxamine (DFO) daily to

a small cohort of AD patients, and reported that their treatment attenuated the progression of the disease. Replication of this study has not been attempted.

The inventors attributed the beneficial effect to the removal of aluminum; however, they have conceded in presentations at meetings (*e.g.* International Conference on Alzheimer's Disease, 1992, Padua) that post-mortem metal analysis on brain tissue from subjects in the study indicated that although aluminum levels were lowered than placebo controls, zinc and iron levels were also lower in the brains of subjects treated with DFO. This is because, like all chelators, DFO has only a relative specificity for aluminum, but with also complex with zinc and iron. There appears to be no report on a histopathological analysis of post-mortem brain A $\beta$  content in the subjects who took DFO compared to the controls.

The administration of DFO, a painful intramuscular injection, is fraught with complications including the non-specific problems of chelation therapies (*e.g.* anemia). Although the results of Crapper-McLachlan and colleagues remain contentious and have not yet been reproduced, the possibility that the beneficial effects they reported were due to the partial removal of zinc from brain A $\beta$  collections cannot be excluded. DFO is a charged molecule that does not easily penetrate the blood-brain barrier, and, as such, is not an ideal candidate for the removal of zinc from A $\beta$  deposits, especially as its affinity for zinc is relatively low. Therefore, a more suitable candidate compound to attempt a trial of A $\beta$  Dissolution in APP Tgs was sought.

Clioquinol (iodochlorhydroxyquin, 5-chloro-7-iodo-8-hydroxyquinoline, MW 305.5) is a USP drug that chelates zinc [K(Zn)= 12.5, K(Cu)= 15.8, K(Ca)= 8.1, K(Mg)= 8.6], is hydrophobic, has a low general toxicity profile, and crosses the blood brain barrier (Padmanabhan *et al.*, 1989). It therefore possesses some of the ideal prototypic properties for a candidate agent that could solubilize zinc-assembled A $\beta$  deposits *in vivo*. It has been used as an oral antiamebic antibiotic, and as a topical antibiotic.

It has been demonstrated that clioquinol is rapidly absorbed from the gut of rats and mice where blood levels reached  $\approx 1-10 \mu\text{M}$  within one hour of ingestion (Kotaki *et al.*, *J Pharmacobiodyn*, 6(11):881-887 (1983)). Since the drug is hydrophobic, it passes rapidly into the brain, and then is rapidly excreted, so that a bolus dose of clioquinol is almost completely removed from the brain within three hours. It appears to be safe in many mammalian species, including rat and mouse (Tateishi, J., *et al.*, *Lancet*, 2(7786):1096 (1972); Tateishi, J., *et al.*, *Acta Neuropathol.*, (Berl), 24(4):304-320 (1973)), and is still used as a veterinary antibiotic (Entero Vioform).

Clioquinol was withdrawn from use as an oral antibiotic for humans in the early 1970's when its ingestion in Japan was linked to a mysterious condition called subacute myelo-optic neuritis (SMON), a condition that resembles subacute combined degeneration of the cord caused by vitamin B12 deficiency. The mechanism of SMON has never been elucidated, but in the 1970's a considerable literature developed exploring the pathophysiology of clioquinol ingestion (Tateishi, J., *et al.*, *Lancet*, 2(7786):1096 (1972); Tateishi, J., *et al.*, *Acta Neuropathol.*, (Berl), 24(4):304-320 (1973)). Several reports have demonstrated that clioquinol complexes with zinc in the brain, especially in areas enriched in synaptic vesicular zinc such as the temporal lobe (Shiraki, H. *Handbook of Clinical Neurology*, Vol. 37 (1979)). Indeed, over ingestion of clioquinol has been reported to induce amnesia in humans (Shiraki, H. *Handbook of Clinical Neurology*, Vol. 37 (1979)).

Because of its relatively safe profile in mice, and because there is a large literature on its pharmacology in this animal, clioquinol was chosen for study as a means to specifically chelate zinc from A $\beta$  deposits *in vitro* (induced aggregates and brain samples). It is possible that the low concentrations of clioquinol shown to be effective in resolubilizing A $\beta$  in the present invention may avoid the adverse SMON effect noted above. Thus, given its other pharmacological properties, clioquinol may hold promise as a effective agent in the treatment of AD in humans.

### *Dissolving Clioquinol*

In order to obtain a solution of clioquinol in PBS, the following protocol was followed: 5.3 grams of clioquinol was suspended with agitation in 200 milliliter of n-decane. The undissolved material was settled, air dried,  
5 and weighed, based on which it was determined that only 2 % of the clioquinol had dissolved in the n-decane. 100 milliliter of the supernatant (light yellow) was agitated in 100 milliliter of PBS, pH 7.4. Next, the phases were allowed to separate. The lower phase (PBS) was collected and filtered to remove the residue which had formed at the phase interface upon extraction with the  
10 organic solvent. The concentration of clioquinol in the PBS was determined to be 800 nanomolar. This number was arrived at based on two assumptions: (1) 2 % of the clioquinol was dissolved in the n-decane; and (2) the partitioning coefficient is 1/1750 with PBS at 1:1 mixture of n-decane to clioquinol.

### *Resolubilization of In Vitro Metal-Induced A $\beta$ Aggregates*

15 First, in order to appraise the efficacy of clioquinol in resolubilizing A $\beta$  aggregates, its ability to resolubilize A $\beta$  aggregates formed *in vitro* by the action of Cu<sup>2+</sup> or Zn<sup>2+</sup> upon A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> was examined. Figure 23 shows resolubilization of metal-induced A $\beta$  aggregate by chelators. A $\beta$  (10 ng/well in buffered saline) aggregation was induced by addition of metals (5  $\mu$ M) or  
20 acidic conditions (pH 5.5). Aggregates were transferred to a 0.2  $\mu$  nylon membrane by filtration. The aggregates were then washed (200  $\mu$ l/well) with TBS alone, TBS containing 2  $\mu$ M EDTA or TBS with 2  $\mu$ M clioquinol. The membrane was then fixed, probed with anti-A $\beta$  monoclonal antibody 6E10 and developed for exposure to ECL-film. Figure 23 shows the relative signal  
25 as determined by densitometric analysis of the ECL-film, calibrated against known amounts of the peptide. Values are expressed as a % of A $\beta$  signal remaining on the filter after washing with TBS alone. Clioquinol is hydrophobic, so that the reagent must first be solubilized in an organic solvent, and then partitioned into the aqueous buffer according to established protocols.

- 82 -

Like EDTA ( Figure 17), clioquinol significantly resolubilized precipitated A $\beta$ . Cu<sup>2+</sup> partially precipitates A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> (Bush, A.I., *et al.*, *Science* 268:1921 (1995)) at pH 7.4. EDTA (2  $\mu$ M) resolubilized 35% of a Zn<sup>2+</sup>-induced A $\beta$  precipitate, 60% of a Cu<sup>2+</sup>-induced precipitate, and 15% of a pH 5.5-induced precipitate. In contrast, clioquinol (2  $\mu$ M) was more effective at resolubilizing the Zn<sup>2+</sup>- and Cu<sup>2+</sup>- induced A $\beta$  precipitates (50%, and 85%, respectively), but was also ineffective at resolubilizing the pH 5.5 precipitate (10%). Since the aggregate at pH 5.5 is predominantly  $\beta$ -sheet (Wood, S.J. *et al.*, *J. Mol. Bio.*, 256:870-877 (1996)), these data indicate that the resolubilization of A $\beta$  by clioquinol/EDTA is likely to be due to specific chelation effects.

#### *Extraction of A $\beta$ from Samples of AD-Affected Brains*

Next the ability of clioquinol to extract A $\beta$  deposits from human brain was examined. It was found that, like other zinc chelators, clioquinol efficiently increases the resolubilization of A $\beta$ , compared to the amount of A $\beta$  resolubilized from the pellet fraction of brain homogenate by PBS alone. Figure 24 shows the effect of clioquinol upon the extraction of A $\beta$  from AD-affected brain. Fragments of prefrontal cortex from individual post-mortem samples with the histopathological diagnosis of AD were homogenized in PBS, pH 7.4, and then pelleted after centrifugation. The pellets were then washed with agitation twice for 30 minutes, 4 °C, with PBS or PBS containing clioquinol (100% = 0.8  $\mu$ M clioquinol). The suspension was then pelleted (10,000 g for 30 minutes) and the supernatant removed (S1) for western blot analysis using A $\beta$ -specific antibodies (illustrated). The pellet was treated a second time in this experiment with agitation and centrifugation, and the second supernatant (S2) analysed. The data show typical results by western blot.

In agreement with earlier findings which showed that the optimal concentration of chelator for the extraction of A $\beta$  is idiosyncratic from case



to case, and that there is a paradoxical diminution of A $\beta$  extraction when the chelator concentration rises above the optimum, it was found that optimal clioquinol concentrations for A $\beta$  resolubilization vary in a similar manner (e.g., Specimen #1= 0.08  $\mu$ M, #2= 0.8  $\mu$ M). It was also observed that  
5 apparently dimeric A $\beta$  was more frequently observed on SDS-PAGE (illustrated), and that in these cases (e.g., Specimen #2) the first wash did not resolubilize much A $\beta$ , but the second wash was very efficient at resolubilizing the peptide. It was surmised that the pellet mass may be coated with adventitial, non-A $\beta$ , proteins that are removed by the first wash, allowing the  
10 second treatment access to the A $\beta$  collection. Indeed, further studies have shown that both sustained (for 16 hours) and repeated exposure to the chelator increases the resolubilization of A $\beta$  significantly.

Figure 25A and 25B show the western blot and accompanying densitometric analysis of reolubilization of A $\beta$  from AD-affected brain.  
15 Figure 25A is a western blot showing the effect of clioquinol upon the resolubilization of A $\beta$  from AD-affected brain. In this study, the brain specimen (from a different case than that of Figure 24) was homogenized according to the protocols in Figure 19. In this case a dose-dependent response to clioquinol was observed. Synthetic peptide standards that were  
20 used to calibrate densitometric quantification are shown in the two right-most lanes.

Figure 25B is a chart showing densitometry performed upon the results in Figure 25A, above. Proportional change in the amount of A $\beta$  recovered in the extraction of A $\beta$  by clioquinol from human brain is shown. As little as a  
25 1% dilution of clioquinol in PBS (100% = .8 $\mu$ M) or 8nM clioquinol is capable of doubling the recovery of A $\beta$  in the soluble phase.

In sequential extraction experiments, as described above, clioquinol (1.12  $\mu$ M) has been shown to result in a 2.5 fold increase in solubilization of A $\beta$  relative to PBS alone (see Figures 25A and 25B). Significantly, the  
30 findings the present invention show that very low (8nM) concentrations of

clioquinol may resolubilize more than twice the amount of A $\beta$  compared to PBS buffer alone (see Figures 25A and 25B). This suggests that such low concentrations may be therapeutically effective in treating amyloidosis, preferably that occurring in AD-affected human subjects.

5

### Example 7

#### *Potentiation of Resolubilization of Amyloid from AD-Affected Brain Tissue*

A $\beta$  was extracted from cortical tissue obtained from three subjects with clinically and histopathologically confirmed Alzheimer's disease in the presence of 1.6 $\mu$ M clioquinol (CQ), 2mM bathocuproine (BC), CQ + BC or PBS. Soluble A $\beta$  (ng/g tissue) was determined as described. Total A $\beta$  was determined following formic acid extraction of otherwise untreated tissue.

Figure 26 illustrates the potentiation of A $\beta$  resolubilization using clioquinol in combination with bathocuproine by graphically showing the proportion of total A $\beta$  extracted. Table 4 below shows the data depicted in Figure 26 and, in addition, shows each chelator or chelator combination in PBS buffer.

Table 4. Potentiation of Chelator-Promoted A $\beta$  Solubilization

Subject	PBS	CQ	BC	CQ+BC	CQ+PBS	BC+PBS	CQ+BC+PBS
1	0.74	1.85	3.1	5	0.11	2.36	4.26
2	1.8	4.5	7.2	11.2	2.7	5.4	9.4
3	2.3	3.4	6	12.7	1.1	3.7	10.4

(% of total A $\beta$  extracted)

The effect of clioquinol and bathocuproine combined is seen to be much more than additive. In subject 3, for example, the potentiated effect was over twice that of a simple additive effect (10.4 compared to 1.1 + 3.7 or 4.8). These data suggest that combinations of clioquinol and bathocuproine may be particularly

25

effective therapeutic combinations for the treatment of amyloidosis, in particular, the pathological A $\beta$ -aggregation manifest in brains of those afflicted with Alzheimer's disease.

### *Example 8*

#### 5     *Differential Effects of Chelation of Cerebral A $\beta$ Deposits in AD-Affected Subjects Versus Age-Matched Controls and the Effect of Magnesium*

Experiments involving extraction of cerebral tissue from AD-affected subjects and non-AD, age-matched controls by chelation indicate different  
10     resolubilization responses of amyloid deposits between the two sample groups with regard to extraction by specific chelators.

Higher concentrations of chelators with relatively broad specificity (e.g. EGTA) result in less resolubilization of A $\beta$  deposits. Experiments show that chelation of magnesium negatively affects resolubilization of A $\beta$  deposits.

#### *Materials and Methods*

15     Cortical tissue was dissected from the frontal poles of frozen AD and age-matched normal brains for which histopathological and clinical documentation were provided. AD tissue was selected according to CERAD criteria (Mirra et al., *Neurology* 41:479-486 (1991)) with particular attention paid to the presence of neuritic plaques and neurofibrillary tangles.  
20     Histological examination of A $\beta$  levels in normal specimens ranged from immunohistochemically undetectable to substantially present in the form of diffuse plaques.

Suitable quantities of gray matter from each subject were minced to serve as pools of homogenous tissue. Equal portions (0.5 g unless otherwise  
25     specified) were homogenized (Ika Ultaturax T-25, Janke and Kunkel, Staufen,

Germany) for 3 x 30s periods at full speed with a 30 second rest between runs in 3 ml of ice-cold phosphate-buffered saline (PBS pH 7.4) containing a cocktail of protease inhibitors (Biorad, Hercules, California. - Note: EDTA was not included in the protease inhibitor mixture) or in the presence of chelators or metal ions prepared in PBS. To obtain the soluble fraction, the homogenates were centrifuged at 100,000 x g for 30 min (Beckman J180, Beckman instruments, Fullerton, California) and the supernatant collected in 1 ml aliquots and stored on ice or immediately frozen at -70°C. In each experiment, all protein was precipitated from 1 ml of supernatant from each treatment group using 1:5 ice cold 10% trichloroacetic acid and pelleted in a bench top microfuge (Heraeus, Osteroder, Germany) at 10,000 x g. The remaining pellet was frozen at -70°C.

The efficiency of the precipitation was validated by applying the technique to a sample of whole human serum, diluted 1:10, to which had been added 2 µg of synthetic Aβ<sub>1-40</sub> or Aβ<sub>1-42</sub> (W. Keck Laboratory, Yale University New Haven, CT). Protein in the TCA pellet was estimated using the Pierce BCA kit (Pierce, Rockford, IL). The total Aβ load of unextracted cortex was obtained by dissolving 0.5 g of grey matter in 2 ml of 90% formic acid, followed by vacuum drying and neutralization with 30% ammonia.

Precipitated protein was subjected to SDS polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis (SDS-PAGE) on Novex pre-cast 10-20% Tris-Tricine gels followed by Western transfer onto 0.2 µm nitrocellulose membrane (Biorad, Hercules, CA). Aβ was detected using the WO2, G210 or G211 monoclonal antibodies (Ida, N., *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.*, 271:22908 (1996)) in combination with HRP-conjugated rabbit anti-mouse IgG (Dako, Denmark), and visualized using chemiluminescence (ECL, Amersham Life Science, Little Chalfont, Buckinghamshire, UK). Each gel included two or more lanes containing known quantities of synthetic Aβ which served as internal reference standards. Blot images were captured by a Relisys scanner with transparency adapter (Teco Information Systems, Taiwan, ROC) and densitometry conducted using

the NIH Image 1.6 program (National Institutes for Health, USA. Modified for PC by Scion Corporation, Frederick, MD), calibrated using a step diffusion chart. For quantitation of A $\beta$  in brain extracts, the internal reference standards of synthetic A $\beta$  were utilized to produce standard curves from which values were interpolated.

In the experiments corresponding to the results shown in Figure 27, duplicate 0.2 g samples of AD cortical tissue were homogenized and subjected to ultracentrifugation as described, but using either 1 ml or 2 ml of extraction buffer (PBS). Protein was precipitated from the entire supernatant and redissolved in 100  $\mu$ l of sample buffer. Equal volumes of TCA-precipitated protein were subjected to Tris-Tricine SDS-PAGE and A $\beta$  was visualized as described above.

In the experiments corresponding to the results shown in Figure 28A, 0.2 g specimens of frontal cortex from AD brain were homogenized in the presence of 2 ml of PBS or varying concentrations of Cu<sup>2+</sup> (Cu(SO<sub>4</sub>)<sub>2</sub>) or Zn<sup>2+</sup> (Zn(SO<sub>4</sub>)<sub>2</sub>). A $\beta$  in the high speed supernatant was visualized as described above.

In the experiments corresponding to the results shown in Figure 28B, 0.2 g specimens of frontal cortex from AD brain were homogenized in the presence of 2 ml of PBS or 2 mM EGTA. The homogenates were spun at 100,000 x g for 30 min and the supernatant discarded. The remaining (metal depleted) pellets were rehomogenized in a further 2 ml of either PBS alone EGTA alone, 2 mM Mg<sup>2+</sup> (Mg(Cl)<sub>2</sub> • 6H<sub>2</sub>O) in PBS or 2 mM Ca<sup>2+</sup> (CaCl<sub>2</sub> • 2H<sub>2</sub>O) in PBS and the homogenate subjected to ultracentrifugation. A $\beta$  in the soluble fraction was visualized as described above.

In the experiments corresponding to the results shown in Figures 29A and 29B, frontal cortex from AD (n=6) and age-matched, amyloid-positive (n=5) subjects were treated with PBS, TPEN, EGTA or BC (0.1mM and 2mM) and soluble A $\beta$  assessed as described above.

In the experiments corresponding to the results shown in Figure 30, representative AD (left panels) and aged-matched control specimens (right panels) were prepared as described in PBS or 5mM BC. Identical gels were run and Western blots were probed with mAbs WO2 (raised against residues 5-16, recognizes A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> and A $\beta$ <sub>1-42</sub>), G210 (raised against residues 35-40, recognizes A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub>), or G211 (raised against residues 35-42, recognizes A $\beta$ <sub>1-42</sub>) (See Ida, N., *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.*, 271:22908 (1996)).

### Results and Discussion

To further explore the involvement of metal ions in the deposition and architecture of amyloid deposits, the inventors extracted brain tissue from histologically-confirmed AD-affected subjects and from subjects that were age-matched to AD-affected subjects but were not clinically demented (age-matched controls, "AC") in the presence of a variety of chelating agents and metals. Chelators were selected which displayed high respective affinities for zinc and/or copper relative to more abundant metal ions such as calcium and magnesium. See Table 5 below.

Table 5. Stability constants of metal chelators

	Ca	Cu	Mg	Fe	Zn	Al	Co
EGTA	10.86	17.57	5.28	11.8	12.6	13.9	12.35
TPEN	3	20.2	n/a	14.4	15.4	n/a	n/a
BC	n/a	Cu <sup>2+</sup> 6.1 Cu <sup>+</sup> 19.1	n/a	n/a	4.1	n/a	4.2

logK10 where  $K = \frac{[\text{Metal.Ligand}]}{[\text{Metal}][\text{Ligand}]}$ . From: NIST database of critically selected stability constants for metal complexes Version 2.0 1995.

A series of titration curves were prepared to determine the chelator concentration at which maximal response was obtained. In these experiments,

selected chelators were limited to EGTA, TPEN and BC. Figures 19A-C show that chelators affect the solubilization of A $\beta$  in a dose-dependent manner.

It was found that EGTA and TPEN elicited a significant enhancement in solubilization of A $\beta$  in a pattern of response typified by peak values at or near 0.004mM and 0.1mM, and lower values at concentrations in between. Both chelators were increasingly ineffective at concentrations over 1mM, and at 2mM, EGTA virtually abolished the signal for A $\beta$ . In contrast, BC elicited a typical concentration-dependent response with no decline in effectiveness in the low millimolar range even when extended to 20mM. Total TCA-precipitated protein in the supernatant was assayed and found to be unaffected by either chelator kind or concentration.

Recent findings have demonstrated the presence of neurotoxic dimers in the soluble (Kuo, Y-M., *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 271:4077-81 (1996)) and insoluble (Roher, A.E., *et al.*, *Journal of Biological Chemistry* 271:20631-20635 (1996); Giulian, D. *et al.*, *J. Neurosci.*, 16:6021-6037 (1996)) fractions of A $\beta$  extracts of the brains of AD individuals. Figure 21 shows that chelator-promoted solubilization of A $\beta$  elicits SDS-resistant dimers. Under the preparation conditions used, SDS-resistant dimers were not generally observed in the extracts with PBS alone. Dimers were found to appear in response to chelator-promoted solubilization of A $\beta$  however.

The signal for dimeric A $\beta$  was frequently disproportionate to that of monomeric A $\beta$  and the ratio varied with both the type and concentration of chelator used (Figure 21). In contrast, when synthetic A $\beta_{1-40}$  was run under identical conditions, the monomer:dimer ratio reflected a predictable and reproducible concentration-dependent relationship. These data suggest that the dimers observed in extracts of human brain are predominantly an intermediate structural unit generated by the dissolution of amyloid, resulting in turn from the sequestration of metals by chelating agents.

Figure 28A shows the effect of metals upon the solubility of brain-derived A $\beta$ . Precipitation of A $\beta$  was induced by adding either copper or zinc to

unchelated extracts. The resulting signal for soluble A $\beta$  was attenuated, the threshold concentration being between 20 and 50  $\mu$ M for copper and between 5 and 20  $\mu$ M for zinc. At concentrations greater than 100  $\mu$ M solubility was abolished. Interestingly, at lower concentrations of copper there appears to be a transitional stage where A $\beta$  is present in the dimeric form prior to complete aggregation, mirroring the intermediate stage dimers elicited by chelator-mediated solubilization.

In order to confirm that the chelators were effective at sequestering metals at the concentrations employed in these experiments, ICP was used to determine the residual levels of several metals in the post-centrifugation pellets retained from the experiment described in Figures 19A-19C. Of the six metals tested, zinc levels were reduced by TPEN in a dose dependent manner, whereas EGTA affected calcium and magnesium, particularly at higher concentrations. See Table 6 below.

Table 6. Residual Metal Levels in Post-Centrifugation (Extracted) Pellets

		Mg (mg/kg)	Al (mg/kg)	Ca (mg/kg)	Fe (mg/kg)	Zn (mg/kg)	Cu (mg/kg)
TPEN (mM)	PBS	202	36	573	411	60	13
	0.004	147	22	322	317	28	10
	0.001	192	34	490	512	42	12
	0.04	201	22	956	322	22	10
	0.1	200	60	708	389	21	12
	2.0	200	148	419	376	19	11
	5.0	205	16	377	307	17	10
EGTA (mM)	PBS	223	52	1186	266	45	11
	0.004	228	73	795	247	53	11
	0.001	237	43	862	281	49	12
	0.04	247	104	1402	438	71	13
	0.01	213	61	675	272	54	13
	2.0	191	62	519	238	27	13
	5.0	168	27	455	230	18	12
BC (mM)	0.004	234	33	489	231	47	12
	0.001	225	88	1306	275	47	13
	0.04	226	38	753	248	56	15
	0.01	223	73	762	256	49	13



- 91 -

	Mg (mg/kg)	Al (mg/kg)	Ca (mg/kg)	Fe (mg/kg)	Zn (mg/kg)	Cu (mg/kg)
2.0	254	42	1602	271	49	14
5.0	238	38	912	249	53	15

Metal levels were measured in 10 AD specimens treated with 0.1 mM TPEN. See Table 7 below. The observed increase in extractable A $\beta$  correlated with significant depletion in zinc in every case and to a lesser extent, copper, when compared with PBS-treated tissue. No other metal tested was significantly influenced by treatment at this concentration.

Table 7. Residual Metal Levels (Based on 10 AD Specimens)

	Zn	Cu	Fe	Ca	Mg	Al
PBS (+/- SEM)	50.7 (4.9)	11.9 (1.5)	227 (28.8)	202 (28.3)	197 (39.1)	44 (46.2)
TPEN (+/-SEM)	33.2 (4.1)	9.8 (1.7)	239 (31.7)	210 (37.0)	230 (39.2)	65 (45.0)

Given the precipitous decline in extractable A $\beta$  observed when employing high concentrations of TPEN or EGTA (see Figure 9), it was hypothesized that magnesium or calcium might also have a significant role in the A $\beta$  solubility equilibrium. Magnesium or calcium added to the homogenization buffer produced no appreciable alteration in soluble A $\beta$ . However, using an extract previously depleted of metals by high levels of EGTA, the addition of magnesium, and to a much lesser extent calcium, led to resolubilization of the precipitated A $\beta$ . Figure 28B shows that A $\beta$  solubility in metal-depleted tissue samples is restored by supplementing with magnesium.

Mindful of the high variability observed between individual subjects, 6 AD and 5 aged-matched control brains were chosen at random to determine if the observed phenomena were broadly applicable. These specimens were subjected to chelation treatment at selected concentrations of 0.1 or 2.0 mM or with PBS alone. Figure 29A shows that patterns of chelator-promoted solubilization of A $\beta$  differ in AD and aged, non-AD tissue. The chelator-

promoted solubilization of A $\beta$  from AD brains represented an increase of up to 7-fold over that seen with PBS alone; the mean increase for BC being around 4 fold, and that for TPEN around 2 fold. Treatment with EGTA at 2 mM always produced a diminution in A $\beta$  signal below that observed for the PBS control (See Figure 29B).

The effects observed with non-demented, aged-matched controls were similar with respect to EGTA and TPEN. However, it is noteworthy that the effect of BC was much reduced. In some cases (Figure 29A, lower panel), BC treatment caused an attenuation in soluble A $\beta$  suggesting that the amyloid deposits in AD-affected brain respond to this chelator in a different fashion than the deposits predominating in non-demented elderly brain.

For each subject in the experiments of Figures 29A and 29B, the extractable A $\beta$  was derived and calculated as a proportion of the total pre-extraction A $\beta$  load See Table 8 and 9 below.

Table 8. AD-Affected Tissue

AD	1	2	3	4	5	6	X	+/-SEM	X C/PBS
Total A $\beta$ ( $\mu$ g/g)	10.8	77.0	80.3	6.0	14.4	16.8	43.0	14.1	
PBS $\mu$ g/g	0.74	1.39	1.04	0.07	3.0	0.06	1.05	0.44	
(% of total)	(0.1)	(1.8)	(1.3)	(1.1)	(2.1)	(0.4)	(1.2)	(0.3)	
TPEN 2mM $\mu$ g/g	0.21	3.40	1.80	5.50	5.00	0.28	2.73	0.85	2.60
(% of total)	(0.2)	(4.4)	(2.25)	(9.2)	(3.5)	(1.75)	(4.6)	(0.9)	
BC2mM $\mu$ g/g	0.31	5.54	3.62	6.05	6.03	0.54	4.10	0.86	3.90
(% of total)	(0.3)	(7.2)	(4.5)	(10.0)	(4.2)	(3.4)	(5.4)	(1.2)	

Table 9. Age-Matched Control Tissue

AC	1	2	3	4	5	X	+/-SEM	X C/PBS
Total A $\beta$ ( $\mu$ g/g)	0.7	4.2	2.7	3.2	3.6	2.8	0.60	
PBS $\mu$ g/g	0.17	0.13	0.18	0.10	0.66	0.25	0.10	
(% of total)	(25.0)	(3.1)	(6.7)	(3.3)	(18.3)	(11.3)	(4.4)	
TPEN 2mM $\mu$ g/g	0.22	0.38	0.26	0.09	1.06	0.40	0.17	1.6
(% of total)	(32.0)	(9.0)	(9.7)	(3.0)	(29.5)	(16.7)	(5.1)	

- 93 -

AC	1	2	3	4	5	X	+/-SEM	X C/PBS
BC 2mM $\mu$ g/g	0.03	0.24	0.29	0.08	0.98	0.32	0.16	1.28
(% of total)	(5)	(5.7)	(11.0)	(2.6)	(27.2)	(10.3)	(4.6)	

Total A $\beta$  for AD brains ranged from 6 - 80 $\mu$ g/g wet weight tissue. The percentage of A $\beta$  extractable (one extraction/centrifugation sequence) ranged from 0.33 - 10%. The corresponding values for aged-matched control brains were 0.68 - 4.2 $\mu$ g/g total A $\beta$  and 2.6 - 29.5% extractable.

In order to further investigate these different responses to chelators, triplicate blots of AD tissue and control tissue which displayed cerebrovascular and diffuse amyloid deposits were compared. Figure 30 shows that chelation promotes the solubilization of A $\beta_{1-40}$  and A $\beta_{1-42}$  from AD and non-AD tissue. Using 3 different monoclonal antibodies, attempts to detect whether any particular species of A $\beta$  were selectively affected by chelation were performed. Both A $\beta_{1-40}$  and A $\beta_{1-42}$  were liberated by chelation; however the dimeric form of A $\beta_{1-40}$  in both AD and control tissue predominated. As reported by Roher, A.E., *et al.*, *PNAS* 90: 10,836-10,840 (1993), the predominant form of cerebrovascular amyloid is A $\beta_{1-42}$ . Somewhat surprisingly, the dimeric form of this highly aggregating species is absent in the (control) tissue in which it is most favored.

It has recently been reported that the zinc-dependent Insulin Degrading Enzyme (IDE) has significant A $\beta$  cleavage activity (Perez *et al.*, *Proc Soc. for Neuroscience* 20: Abstract 321.13 (1997)). In the experiments presented here, the disassembly of amyloid is reflected in the intermediate dimeric species which result from conversion between soluble and insoluble forms. Thus, simple inhibition of catalytic enzyme activity cannot account for the observed increase in soluble A $\beta$ . However, in the event that a proportion of the chelator-mediated augmentation of A $\beta$  solubilization was due to inhibition of this enzyme, homogenisations were conducted both in the presence of 1mM n-ethyl amide (NEM), a potent inhibitor of IDE, and at 37°C. No enhancement of

A $\beta$  signal was observed above that of PBS alone for NEM , nor was there any diminution of signal after incubation at 37°C.

### Discussion

5 Metal chelators offer a powerful tool for investigating the role of metals in the complex environment of the brain, however the strengths of these compounds may also define their limitations. The broad metal affinities of most chelators make them rather a blunt instrument. Attempts were made to sharpen the focus of the use of chelators by selecting chelators with a range of affinities for the metals of interest. These differences may be exploited by  
10 appropriate dilution, thereby favoring the binding of the relatively high affinity ligand (metal for which the chelator has the highest affinity).

The dilution profiles exhibited by EGTA and TPEN possibly reflect a series of equilibria between different metal ligands and the chelator, whereby the influence of abundant but low affinity metals is observed at high chelator  
15 concentrations and that of the high affinity, but more scarce, metals is predominates at low concentrations of chelator. In the case of A $\beta$  itself, this explanation is further complicated by the presence of low and high affinity binding sites for zinc (and copper) (Bush, A.I. *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.*, 269:12152-12158 (1994)).

20 Bathocuproine with its low affinity for metals other than Cu<sup>+</sup> is effective at solubilizing A $\beta$  through a dilution range over 3 orders of magnitude, and interestingly, does not diminish in effectiveness at the highest levels tested. The particular affinity of BC for Cu<sup>+</sup> has been exploited to demonstrate that in the process of binding to APP, Cu<sup>2+</sup> is reduced to Cu<sup>+</sup> resulting in the liberation  
25 of potentially destructive free radicals (Multhaup, G., *et al.*, *Science* 271:1406-1409 (1996)). It has been shown that A $\beta$  has a similar propensity for reducing copper with consequent free radical generation (Huang, X., *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 272:26464-26470 (1997)).

Although the predicted reduction in copper in extraction pellets treated with BC has not been demonstrated, it is possible that the ratio of  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$  to  $\text{Cu}^+$  has been affected. At this stage, however, the means to evaluate the relative contributions of divalent and reduced forms to the total copper content of such extraction pellets are not available.

In addition to their primary metal binding characteristics, chelators are a class of compounds which vary in hydrophobicity and solubility. Their capacity to infiltrate the highly hydrophobic amyloid deposits may therefore be an important factor in the disassembly of aggregated  $\text{A}\beta$ . It is also possible that the chelators are also acting to liberate intracellular stores of  $\text{A}\beta$  in vesicular compartments as metal-bound aggregates. Preliminary data from our laboratory indicates that this may be the case with platelets.

The variability between subjects is consistent, reflecting the heterogeneity of the disease in its clinical and histopathological expression. Despite this, a consistent pattern of response to the actions of chelators by tissue from both AD and non-AD subjects is observed. This universality of the phenomenon of chelator-mediated solubilization is strongly suggestive that metals are also involved in the assembly of amyloid deposits in normal individuals, although the dissimilar patterns of response suggest that different mechanisms are operating in the disease and non-pathological states.

On the basis of the evidence presented here and the *in vitro* data, it is proposed that zinc functions in the healthy individual to promote the reversible aggregation of  $\text{A}\beta$ , counteracted by magnesium acting to maintain  $\text{A}\beta$  solubility. Further, the disease state is characterized by an unregulated interaction with copper resulting in the generation of free radicals.

A functional homeostatic mechanism implies equilibrium between intracellular copper and zinc (and perhaps other metals) normally present in trace amounts, for which  $\text{A}\beta$  has strong affinity, and more abundant metals which bind less strongly to  $\text{A}\beta$ . Zinc is of particular interest because the anatomical distribution of zinc correlates with the cortical regions most

susceptible to amyloid plaque formation (Assaf, S.Y. & Chung, S.H., *Nature*, 308:734-736 (1984)).

It has recently been demonstrated (Huang, X., *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 272:26464-26470 (1997)) that zinc-promoted aggregation of synthetic A $\beta$  is reversible by the application of EDTA. The tightly-regulated neurocortical zinc transport system might provide a physiological parallel for this chelator-mediated disaggregation by moving zinc quickly in and out of the intraneuronal spaces.

Copper, while binding less avidly to A $\beta$  than zinc (Bush, A.I., *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 269:12152-12158 (1994)) has greater potential to inflict damage via free radical generation, resulting polymers are not reversible (see Example 10, below). Slight alterations in the transportation and/or metabolism of metals resulting from age-related deterioration of cellular processes may provide the environment for a rapid escalation of metal-mediated A $\beta$  accretion which eventually overwhelms regulatory and clearance mechanisms. In describing a mechanism for A $\beta$  homeostasis this model for amyloid deposition implies a possible physiological role for A $\beta$  whereby aggregation and disaggregation may be effected through regulation of cortical metal levels and that the predominantly sporadic character of AD reflects individual differences in the brain milieu. Such a mechanism by no means rules out other genetic, environmental, inflammatory or other processes influencing the progression of the disease. Furthermore, in demonstrating the effectiveness of chelators in solubilising amyloid, it is suggested herein that agents of this type are useful for therapeutic or prophylactic use in AD.

## Example 10

### *Formation of SDS-Resistant A $\beta$ Polymers*

The cause for the permanent deposition of A $\beta$  in states such as Alzheimer's Disease (AD) and Down's Syndrome (DS) are unknown, but the extraction of A $\beta$  from the brains of AD and DS patients indicates that there are forms of A $\beta$  that can be resolubilized in water and run as a monomer on SDS-PAGE (Kuo, Y-M., *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 271:4077-4081 (1996); see also Example 9 above), and forms that manifest SDS-, urea- and formic acid-resistant polymers on PAGE (Masters, C.L. *et al.*, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 82:4245-4249 (1985); Dyrks, T., *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 267:18210-18217 (1992); Roher, A.E., *et al.*, *Journal of Biological Chemistry* 271:20631-20635 (1996). Thus, the extraction of SDS-resistant A $\beta$  polymers from plaques implicates polymerization as a pathogenic mechanism that promotes the formation of AD amyloid.

The exact mechanism underlying the formation of SDS-resistant polymeric A $\beta$  species remains unresolved. Recently, we found that A $\beta$  reduces both Cu<sup>2+</sup> and Fe<sup>3+</sup> (Huang, X., *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 272:26464-26470 (1997)), providing a mechanism whereby a highly reactive species could promote the modification of proteins via an oxidative mechanism. In this study we test the ability of Cu<sup>2+</sup> and Fe<sup>3+</sup> to promote SDS-resistant A $\beta$  polymerization.

### *Materials and Methods*

Human A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> peptide was synthesized, purified and characterized as described above. Rat A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> was obtained from Quality Control Biochemicals, Inc. (Hopkinton, MA). Peptides were analyzed and stock solutions prepared as described above.

As above, electronic images captured using the Fluoro-S Image Analysis System (Bio-Rad, Hercules, CA) were analyzed using Multi-Analyst

Software (Bio-Rad, Hercules, CA). This chemiluminescent image analysis system is linear over 2 orders of magnitude and has comparable sensitivity to film.

Human AD derived SDS-resistant polymers were solublized in formic acid, and then dialyzed with 5 changes of 100 mM ammonium bicarbonate, pH 7.5. The solublized peptide was then used for subsequent chelation experiments.

### *Results and Discussion*

The generation of SDS-resistant A $\beta$  polymers by metal ions was tested by incubating Cu<sup>2+</sup> (30  $\mu$ M) or Zn<sup>2+</sup> (30  $\mu$ M) at pH 6.6, 7.4 and 9.0 with A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub>. As shown in Figure 9, Western blot analysis of samples incubated with Cu<sup>2+</sup> and run under SDS denaturing and  $\beta$ -mercaptoethanol reducing conditions revealed an increase in dimeric, trimeric and higher oligomeric A $\beta$  species over time. The dimer and trimer had molecular weights of approximately 8.5 kD and 13.0 kD, respectively. Image analysis indicated 42% and 9% conversion of the monomer to dimer and trimer, respectively, in samples incubated at pH 7.4 after 5 d. The conversion of monomer to the dimer and trimer was 29% and 2%, respectively, at pH 6.6 after 5 d.

In contrast, changes in [H<sup>+</sup>] alone did not induce SDS-resistant A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> polymerization. Less than 4% of the peptide was converted to the SDS-resistant dimer after 5 d in samples incubated at pH 6.6, 7.4 or 9.0, most likely as a result of contaminating Cu<sup>2+</sup> in the buffer and A $\beta$  solutions. Cu<sup>2+</sup> contamination of chelex-treated PBS was up to 0.5  $\mu$ M as determined by ion coupled plasma-atomic emission spectroscopy (ICP-AES). Although Zn<sup>2+</sup> induces rapid aggregation of A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> (Bush, A.I., *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 268:16109 (1993); Bush, A.I., *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 269:12152 (1994); Bush, A.I., *et al.*, *Science* 265:1464-1467 (1994); Bush, A.I., *et al.*, *Science* 268:1921-1922 (1995); Atwood *et al.*, submitted; Huang, X. *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.*



272:26464-26470 (1997)), it did not induce SDS-resistant A $\beta$  polymerization (Figure 9) as previously reported (Bush, A.I., *et al.*, *Science* 268:1921-1922 (1995)).

5 A $\beta_{1-42}$  is the predominant species found in amyloid plaques (Masters, C.L. *et al.*, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 82: 4245 (1985); Murphy, G.M., *et al.*, *Am. J. Pathol.* 144:1082-1088 (1994); Mak, K., *et al.*, *Brain Res.* 667:138-142 (1994); Iwatsubo, T., *et al.*, *Ann. Neurol.* 37:294-299 (1995); Mann *et al.*, *Ann. Neurol.* 40:149-156 (1996)). Therefore, the ability of A $\beta_{1-40}$  and A $\beta_{1-42}$  to form SDS-resistant polymers was compared.

10 In contrast to Cu<sup>2+</sup>-induced SDS-resistant A $\beta_{1-40}$  polymerization over days, SDS-resistant A $\beta_{1-42}$  polymerization occurred within minutes in the presence of Cu<sup>2+</sup> (Figure 31A). Unlike A $\beta_{1-40}$  where Cu<sup>2+</sup> induces the formation of a SDS-resistant dimeric species first, A $\beta_{1-42}$  initially forms an apparent trimer species in the presence of Cu<sup>2+</sup>. Over time, dimeric and higher polymeric species also appear in A $\beta_{1-42}$  incubations with Cu<sup>2+</sup> at both pH 7.4 and 6.6. The greater Cu<sup>2+</sup> induced A $\beta_{1-42}$  polymerization observed at pH 6.6 compared with pH 7.4 in samples incubated for 30 min. was reversed after 5 d. At pH 6.6, both A $\beta_{1-40}$  and A $\beta_{1-42}$  exist in an aggregated form within minutes. Therefore, the formation of these polymeric species occurs within A $\beta$  aggregates and the formation of SDS-resistant A $\beta$  polymers is independent of aggregation state (see below). Similar results were obtained using the monoclonal antibody 4G8.

20 Since redox active Fe (Smith, M.A., *et al.*, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 94:9866 (1997)) and ferritin (Grudke-Iqbal, I., *et al.*, *Acta Neuropathol.* 81:105 (1990)) are found in amyloid lesions, experiments were performed to determine if Fe could induce SDS-resistant polymerization of A $\beta_{1-40}$  and A $\beta_{1-42}$  (Figure 31A). Fe<sup>3+</sup> did not induce A $\beta_{1-40}$  polymerization above background levels with either peptide. The small increase in polymeric A $\beta_{1-40}$  and A $\beta_{1-40}$  in samples with no metal ions reflects a small contaminating concentration of Cu<sup>2+</sup>.

- 100 -

The formation of amyloid plaques is not a feature of aged rats (Johnstone, E.M., *et al.*, *Mol. Brain Res.* 10:229 (1991); Shivers *et al.*, *EMBO J.* 7:1365-1370 (1988)). To test whether rat A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> would form SDS-resistant A $\beta$  polymers, rat A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> was incubated with Cu<sup>2+</sup> and Fe<sup>3+</sup> at pH 7.4 and 6.6 (Figure 31B). Neither metal ion induced SDS-resistant A $\beta$  polymers (Huang, X. *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 272:26464-26470 (1997)). The binding and reduction of Cu<sup>2+</sup> by rat A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> is markedly decreased compared to that of human A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> (Huang, X. *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 272:26464-26470 (1997)). This result suggests that the generation of SDS-resistant A $\beta$  polymers is dependent upon the binding and reduction of Cu<sup>2+</sup> by A $\beta$ .

Tests were performed to determine the concentration of Cu<sup>2+</sup> required to induce the formation of SDS-resistant A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> and A $\beta$ <sub>1-42</sub> polymers. A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> and A $\beta$ <sub>1-42</sub> were incubated with different [Cu<sup>2+</sup>] (0-30  $\mu$ M) at pH 7.4 and 6.6 and the samples analyzed by Western blot and the signal quantitated using the Fluoro-S Image Analysis System (Bio-Rad, Hercules, CA) as previously described.

At pH 7.4, the increase in polymerization was barely detectable as [Cu<sup>2+</sup>] was increased from 0.5 to 1  $\mu$ M, but under mildly acidic conditions (pH 6.6), SOS-resistant polymerization could be detected (over 3-fold increase in dimerization (Table 10A)).

Table 10A. Cu<sup>2+</sup>- Induced SDS-Resistant Polymers of A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub>

[Cu <sup>2+</sup> ]	pH 7.4				
	Monomer	Dimer	Trimer	Tetramer	Pentamer
0	96.8	3.2	<0.1	0	0
0.5	94.8	4.9	0.3	0	0
1	93.6	5.9	0.6	0	0
5	84.3	14.2	1.5	0	0
10	85.2	13.2	1.6	0	0
30	76.2	19.1	4.7	0	0

- 101 -

	pH 6.6				
[Cu <sup>2+</sup> ]	Monomer	Dimer	Trimer	Tetramer	Pentamer
0	97.9	2.1	<0.1	0	0
0.5	97.6	2.2	0.2	0	0
1	92.6	7.3	0.1	0	0
5	90.1	9.8	0.1	0	0
10	79.4	16.1	4.5	0	0
30	74.5	13.2	12.2	0	0

A similar Cu<sup>2+</sup> concentration and pH dependent increase in SDS-resistant A $\beta$ <sub>1-42</sub> polymers also was observed (Table 10B), but SDS-resistant polymerization occurred at much lower [Cu<sup>2+</sup>].

Table 10B. Cu<sup>2+</sup>- Induced SDS-Resistant Polymers of A $\beta$ <sub>1-42</sub>

	pH 7.4				
[Cu <sup>2+</sup> ]	Monomer	Dimer	Trimer	Tetramer	Pentamer
0	76.61	0	16.0	5.5	1.9
0.5	70.7	0	20.5	6.2	2.5
1	64.9	0	23.6	7.4	4.0
5	56.1	0	31.8	8.7	4.1
10	55.1	0	30.3	10.3	4.3
30	57.1	0	31.1	8.3	4.2
	pH 6.6				
[Cu <sup>2+</sup> ]	Monomer	Dimer	Trimer	Tetramer	Pentamer
0	61.0	0	27.3	8.6	3.8
0.5	52.1	0	33.8	12.0	3.0
5	59.6	0	30.0	7.1	3.2
10	52.3	0	31.7	13.6	2.2

A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> polymerization was not detected with increasing Fe<sup>3+</sup> concentrations at any pH. Therefore, of the metal ions known to interact with

A $\beta$ , only Cu<sup>2+</sup>, whose ability to aggregate and bind Cu<sup>2+</sup> under mildly acidic conditions is enhanced, is capable of inducing SDS-resistant A $\beta$  polymerization.

Oxygen radical mediated chemical attack has been correlated with an increase in protein and free carbonyls (Smith, C.D., *et al.*, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 88:10540 (1991); Hensley, K., *et al.*, *J. Neurochem.* 65:2146 (1995); Smith, M.A., *et al.*, *Nature* 382:120 (1996)) and peroxynitrite-mediated protein nitration (Good, P.F., *et al.*, *Am. J. Pathol.* 149:21 (1996); Smith, M.A., *et al.*, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 94:9866 (1997)).

A $\beta$  is capable of reducing Cu<sup>2+</sup> and H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> is produced in solutions containing A $\beta$  and Cu<sup>2+</sup> or Fe<sup>3+</sup> (Huang, X. *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 272:26464-26470 (1997)). As shown above, the generation of SDS-resistant A $\beta$  polymers in the order A $\beta$ <sub>1-42</sub> >> A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> >> rat A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> in the presence of Cu<sup>2+</sup> correlates well with the generation of Cu<sup>+</sup> and reactive oxygen species (ROS; OH<sup>•</sup>, H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> and O<sub>2</sub><sup>•-</sup>; Huang, X., *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 272:26464-26470 (1997)) by each peptide.

The increased generation of SDS-resistant A $\beta$  polymers in the presence of Cu<sup>2+</sup> compared to Fe<sup>3+</sup> also was correlated with the generation of the reduced metal ions, respectively (Huang, X. *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 272:26464-26470 (1997)). The increase in SDS-resistant A $\beta$  polymerization seen under mildly acidic conditions may be a result of the higher [H<sup>+</sup>] driving the production of H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> dismutated from O<sub>2</sub><sup>•-</sup> with the subsequent generation of OH<sup>•</sup> via Fenton-like chemistry inducing a modification of A $\beta$  that results in SDS-resistant A $\beta$  polymers (see Figure 12, showing a schematic of the proposed mechanism of A $\beta$ -mediated reduced metal/ROS production).

To confirm whether ROS were involved in the generation of SDS-resistant polymers, experiments were performed to determine whether Cu in the presence or absence of H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> could promote A $\beta$  polymerization (Figure 32A). A similar level of A $\beta$ <sub>1-42</sub> polymerization was observed in the presence of Cu<sup>2+</sup> or Cu<sup>+</sup>, indicating that the reduced metal ion alone was not capable of

increasing A $\beta$  polymerization. Likewise, polymerization of A $\beta_{1-42}$  in the presence of H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> was low and equivalent to control levels. However, the addition of Cu<sup>2+</sup> or Cu<sup>+</sup> to A $\beta$  in the presence of H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> induced a similar, marked increase in dimers, trimers and tetramers within 1 hour. After 1 day, higher molecular weight polymers (> 18 kD) were generated (from the oligomers), with a subsequent reduction in the levels of monomer, dimer, trimer and tetramer only with the coincubation of H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> and Cu<sup>2+</sup>.

Both the reduced and oxidized forms of Cu produced similar levels of polymerization in the presence of H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub>. In contrast, Fe<sup>3+</sup> or Fe<sup>2+</sup> did not induce as much polymerization as Cu<sup>2+</sup> in the presence of H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> after 1 day incubation (Figures 32A and 32B). Since Fe<sup>3+</sup> is not reduced as efficiently as Cu<sup>2+</sup> by A $\beta$  (Huang, X., et al., *J. Biol. Chem.*, 272:26464-26470 (1997)), and Cu<sup>+</sup> is rapidly converted to Cu<sup>2+</sup> in solution, these results suggest that the reduction reaction is required for the polymerization reaction to proceed.

It was confirmed that the reduction of Cu<sup>2+</sup> was required for generating SDS-resistant A $\beta$  polymerization by incubating A $\beta_{1-42}$  and Cu<sup>2+</sup> with and without bathocupoindisulfonic acid (BC), a Cu<sup>+</sup> specific chelator (Figure 32C). There was a marked decrease in polymerization, indicating that Cu<sup>+</sup> generation was crucial for the polymerization of A $\beta$ . It is possible that the decreased polymerization may be due to chelation of Cu<sup>2+</sup> by BC, however given the low binding affinity of BC for Cu<sup>2+</sup> compared with A $\beta$ , it seems likely that the chelation of Cu<sup>+</sup> by BC prevents it from inducing SDS-resistant A $\beta$  polymerization. Therefore, A $\beta$  may undergo a hydroxyl radical modification that promotes its assembly into SDS-resistant polymers.

If H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> is required for the polymerization reaction under physiological conditions, the removal of H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> and its precursors O<sub>2</sub> and O<sub>2</sub><sup>-</sup> (Huang, X., et al., *J. Biol. Chem.*, 272:26464-26470 (1997)) should decrease SDS-resistant polymerization. To confirm that H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> generated in the presence of A $\beta$  and Cu<sup>2+</sup> was required for the polymerization reaction, A $\beta_{1-42}$  was incubated with or without Cu<sup>2+</sup> in the presence of TCEP (Figure 33A). TCEP significantly

reduced the level of polymerization in samples with and without  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$  over 3 days. This indicates that the generation of  $\text{H}_2\text{O}_2$  is required for the polymerization of  $\text{A}\beta$ .

To confirm that the generation of  $\text{O}_2^-$  was required for SDS-resistant  $\text{A}\beta$  polymerization,  $\text{A}\beta_{1-42}$  was incubated with and without  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$  at pH 7.4 and 6.6 under argon in order to decrease the reduction of molecular  $\text{O}_2$  (Figure 33B). Argon-purging of the solution markedly decreased  $\text{A}\beta_{1-42}$  polymerization under each condition, indicating that the generation of ROS is required for the polymerization of  $\text{A}\beta$ .

Taken together, these results indicate that polymerization occurs as a result of Haber-Weiss chemistry where the continual reduction of  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$  by  $\text{A}\beta$  provides a species for the reduction of molecular  $\text{O}_2$  and the subsequent generation of  $\text{O}_2^-$ ,  $\text{H}_2\text{O}_2$  and  $\text{OH}^\cdot$ . The binding and reduction of  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$  by  $\text{A}\beta$  is supported by the finding that the incubation of  $\text{Fe}^{3+}$ ,  $\text{H}_2\text{O}_2$  and ascorbic acid with  $\text{A}\beta_{1-40}$  (Figure 33A) and  $\text{A}\beta_{1-42}$  does not induce SDS-resistant polymerization equivalent to  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$  with  $\text{H}_2\text{O}_2$  alone. Since ascorbic acid effectively reduces  $\text{Fe}^{3+}$ , the reduction of a metal ion that is not bound to  $\text{A}\beta$  is insufficient to induce significant SDS-resistant polymerization.

The formation of SDS-resistant polymers of  $\text{A}\beta$  by this metal-catalyzed oxidative mechanism strongly suggested that a chemical modification to the peptide backbone allows the formation of the polymer species. To test if the SDS-resistant polymers were covalently linked, SDS-resistant polymers generated by incubating  $\text{A}\beta_{1-42}$  with  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$  at pH 7.4 and 6.6, or  $\text{A}\beta_{1-42}$  with  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$  plus  $\text{H}_2\text{O}_2$  were subjected to treatment with urea (Figure 34A) and guanidine HCl, chaotropic agents known to disrupt H-bonding. Urea and guanidine HCl did not disrupt the SDS-resistant polymers at 4.5 M, and only slightly at 9M, suggesting that the SDS-resistant polymers were held together by high-affinity bonds, but not hydrogen bonding alone. HPLC-MS analyses confirmed no covalent modification of the peptide and no evidence of intermolecular covalent crosslinking.

Since covalent and/or hydrogen bonding were not involved in polymer formation, experiments were performed to determine whether  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$  coordination of the complex by ionic interactions was allowing for the formation of the SDS-resistant polymer species. To disrupt these ionic interactions, different  
5 chelating agents were added to a solution containing  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$ -induced  $\text{A}\beta_{1-40}$  or  $\text{A}\beta_{1-42}$  SDS-resistant polymers generated at pH 7.4 (Figures 34B and 34C).

All chelators significantly reduced the amount of  $\text{A}\beta_{1-40}$  or  $\text{A}\beta_{1-42}$  SDS-resistant polymers. EDTA was less effective in destabilizing the polymers, possibly due to its larger molecular mass, and lower affinity for  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$ . EDTA  
10 reduced the amount of  $\text{A}\beta_{1-40}$  polymers, but increased the amount of  $\text{A}\beta_{1-40}$  polymers at pH 7.4. This may be due to the fact that EDTA can enhance the redox potential of Cu under certain conditions.

$\text{Cu}^{2+}$ -induced SDS-resistant polymers generated at pH 6.6 were also disrupted with chelation treatment to a similar extent. These results suggest  
15 that the chelation of  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$  away from  $\text{A}\beta$  results in the disruption of the polymer complex and the release of monomer species. Thus, there is an absolute requirement for metal ions in the stabilization of the SDS-resistant polymer complex.

The SDS-resistant polymers generated with  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$  are similar to those  
20 extracted from post-mortem AD brains (Roher, A.E., *et al.*, *Journal of Biological Chemistry* 271:20631-20635 (1996)). To determine if these human oligomeric  $\text{A}\beta$  species could be disrupted by metal chelators, TETA and BC were incubated with  $\text{A}\beta$  oligomers extracted from human brain. Figure 30E shows that both TETA and BC significantly increased the amount of monomer  
25  $\text{A}\beta$  in samples treated with these chelators. Although the increase in the amount of monomer was small, these results suggest that human oligomeric  $\text{A}\beta$  species are partially held together with metal ions. Importantly, this result indicates the potential of chelation therapy as a means of reducing amyloidosis.

To examine whether conformational changes could disrupt the SDS-resistant polymers, solutions of SDS-resistant  $\text{A}\beta_{1-42}$  polymers in the presence  
30

or absence of  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$  were incubated with the  $\alpha$ -helical promoting solvent system DMSO/HFIP, or under acidic conditions (pH 1) (Figure 34D). These conditions reduced the amount of polymer compared to untreated controls at both pH 7.4 and 6.6, indicating that an alteration in the conformation of  $\text{A}\beta_{1-42}$  to the  $\alpha$ -helical conformation could disrupt the strong  $\text{A}\beta$ - $\text{Cu}^{2+}$  ionic interactions. This provides indirect evidence that the polymer structures are likely to be in the more thermodynamically favorable  $\beta$ -sheet conformation, such as those found in neuritic plaques.

SDS-resistant  $\text{A}\beta$  polymers, such as that found in the AD-affected brain, are likely to be more resilient to proteolytic degradation and may explain the permanent deposition of  $\text{A}\beta$  in amyloid plaques. Incubation of SDS-resistant  $\text{A}\beta$  polymers with proteinase K resulted in complete degradation of both monomer and oligomeric  $\text{A}\beta$  species. Since protease treatment is incapable of digesting hard core amyloid, some form of covalent crosslinking of the peptide following its deposition may occur over time that prevents proteolytic digestion. This may explain the limited disruption of human SDS-resistant  $\text{A}\beta$  oligomers compared to the Cu-mediated SDS-resistant polymers generated *in vitro*.

Soluble  $\text{A}\beta_{1-40}$  and  $\text{A}\beta_{1-42}$  both exist in phosphate buffered saline as non-covalent dimers (Huang, X., *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 272:26464-26470 (1997); and unpublished observations). Disruption of ionic and hydrogen bonding of  $\text{A}\beta$  in the soluble and aggregated forms (pH or  $\text{Zn}^{2+}$ ) by the ionic detergent SDS results in the complete dissociation of  $\text{A}\beta$  into the monomer species as detected on SDS-PAGE (Figures 9, 28-30). The formation of SDS-resistant polymers of  $\text{A}\beta$  over time in the presence of  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$  (Figures 9, 31A-31B, 32C) suggests that conformational or structural alterations allow for the formation of a thermodynamically more stable complex.

Although no covalent crosslinking between peptides was detected, it is possible that a covalent modification(s) takes place within the peptide backbone that allows for a high affinity association to form between the peptide and  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$ .



Thus, a chemical modification to the peptide may increase the affinity of the polymer for  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$  and the formation of a stable complex. Alternatively, the requirement for molecular oxygen suggests that Cu may be coordinated by oxygen or ROS in the formation of SDS-resistant polymers.

5           The formation of SDS-resistant polymers was dependent upon the binding and reduction of  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$ . The binding of  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$  to A $\beta$  was confirmed by the detection of  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$  in both the monomer and dimer following SDS-PAGE. The [ $\text{Cu}^{2+}$ ] of PVDF membrane containing the immobilized peptide species was measured by ICP-AES (unpublished observations; Huang, X., *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 272:26464-26470 (1997)) and correlated with the generation of SDS-resistant polymers for each species.

10            $\text{Cu}^{2+}$  coordination between A $\beta$  molecules was required in order to maintain the structure since chelation treatment disrupted the *in vitro* generated SDS-resistant polymer (Figures 34B-34E). Human SDS-resistant A $\beta$  polymers also were disrupted with the  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$  specific chelator BC indicating Cu coordination in the stabilization of these structures (Figure 34E). Together with the fact that Cu specific chelators can extract more SDS-resistant A $\beta$  polymers from AD brains in aqueous buffer (see Example 9), these results implicate  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$  in the generation of SDS-resistant polymers *in vivo*.

15            $\text{Fe}^{3+}$  did not induce the formation of SDS-resistant polymers *in vitro* (Figures 31A) as previously reported except in the presence of excess  $\text{H}_2\text{O}_2$  or ascorbic acid as previously reported (Dyrks, T., *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 267:18210-18217 (1992); data not shown). Dyrks, T., *et al.* did, however observe significant increases in SDS-resistant polymerization with metal-catalyzed oxidation systems (Fe-hemin, Fe-hemoglobin or Fe-EDTA) in the presence of  $\text{H}_2\text{O}_2$ . The A $\beta_{1-42}$  used in their experiments was likely to be Cu-bound as it was extracted from a wheat germ expression system and already was present as SDS-resistant oligomers. Thus, it is possible that Cu-bound A $\beta$  used in these experiments contributed to the increased SDS-resistant polymerization observed in the Fe-catalyzed oxidation systems. Although  $\text{Fe}^{3+}$

20  
25  
30

is reduced by A $\beta$  (Huang, X., *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 272:26464-26470 (1997)), it is unable to effectively coordinate the complex like Cu (Figure 32B).

Fe<sup>2+</sup> is found in much higher concentrations in the brains of AD patients compared with age-matched controls (Ehmann, W.D., *et al.*, *Neurotoxicol.* 7:197-206 (1986); Dedman, D.J., *et al.*, *Biochem. J.* 287:509-514 (1992); Joshi, J.G., *et al.*, *Environ. Health Perspect.* 102:207-213 (1994)). This is partly attributable to the increased ferritin rich microglia and oligodendrocytes that localize to amyloid plaques (Grudke-Iqbal, I., *et al.*, *Acta Neuropathol.* 81:105 (1990); Conner, J.R., *et al.*, *J. Neurosci. Res.* 31:75-83 (1992); Sadowki, M., *et al.*, *Alzheimer's Res.* 1:71-76 (1995)).

Recently, redox active Fe was localized to amyloid lesions (Smith, M.A., *et al.*, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 94:9866 (1997). While Fe is normally sequestered by metalloproteins, this localization of ferritin-rich cells around amyloid deposits, and the very high concentrations of iron in amyloid plaques (Conner, J.R., *et al.*, *J. Neurosci. Res.* 31:75-83 (1992); Markesbery, W.R. and Ehmann, W.D., "Brain trace elements in Alzheimer's disease," in Terry, R.D., *et al.*, eds., *Alzheimer Disease*, Raven Press, New York (1994), pp. 353-368) suggests that reduced Fe released from ferritin and transferrin under mildly acidic conditions could be available for Fenton chemistry and the formation of SDS-resistant polymers. However, even in the presence of a Fe-ROS generating system (ascorbic acid, H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> and Fe) the generation of SDS-resistant A $\beta$  polymers *in vitro* was low (Figure 33A) and may be explained by Cu<sup>2+</sup> contamination of the buffers.

Interestingly, diffuse plaques, which may represent the earliest stages of plaque formation, are relatively free of ferritin-rich cells (Ohgami, T., *et al.*, *Acta Neuropathol* 81:242-247 (1991)). Therefore, the accretion of iron in amyloid plaques may be a secondary response to the neurodegeneration caused by the reduction of Cu<sup>2+</sup> and the generation of ROS by A $\beta$  and the formation of neurotoxic SDS-resistant A $\beta$  polymers.

5           Structural differences between  $A\beta_{1-40}$  and  $A\beta_{1-42}$  may allow for the formation of a thermodynamically stable dimer in the case of  $A\beta_{1-40}$  and trimer in the case of  $A\beta_{1-42}$  (Figures 31A, 34B and 34C). Irrespective of this, the increased generation of SDS-resistant polymers by  $A\beta_{1-42}$  compared to  $A\beta_{1-40}$  is most likely explained by the increased ability of  $A\beta_{1-42}$  to reduce Cu and generate ROS. Since the addition of exogenous  $H_2O_2$  to  $A\beta_{1-42}$  increases the generation of dimeric SDS-resistant polymers of  $A\beta_{1-42}$  (Figures 32A and 32B), this dimeric species may be an integral intermediate in the formation of the SDS-resistant  $A\beta$  trimers, and may explain why  $A\beta_{1-40}$  polymerization occurs more slowly.

#### *AD Pathology*

15           The present invention indicates that the manipulation of the brain biometal environment with specific agents acting directly (e.g. chelators and antioxidants) or indirectly (e.g., by improving cerebral energy metabolism) provides a means for therapeutic intervention in the prevention and treatment of Alzheimer's disease.

20           Those skilled in the art will appreciate that the invention described herein is susceptible to variations and modifications other than those specifically described. It is to be understood that the invention includes all such variations and modifications. The invention also includes all of the steps, features, compositions and compounds referred to or indicated in this specification, individually or collectively, and any and all combinations of any two or more of said steps or features.

25           All patents and publications cited in the present specification are incorporated by reference herein in their entirety.

*What Is Claimed Is:*

1. A method of treating amyloidosis in a subject, said method comprising administering to said subject a combination of (a) a metal chelator selected from the group consisting of: bathocuproine, bathophenanthroline,  
5 DTPA, EDTA, EGTA, penicillamine, TETA, and TPEN, or hydrophobic derivatives thereof; and (b) clioquinol, for a time and under conditions to bring about said treatment; wherein said combination reduces, inhibits or otherwise interferes with A $\beta$ -mediated production of radical oxygen species.
2. The method of claim 1 wherein the metal chelator is  
10 bathocuproine.
3. The method of claim 1 further comprising administering a supplement selected from the group consisting of: ammonium salt, calcium salt, magnesium salt, and sodium salt.
4. The method of claim 3 wherein the supplement is magnesium  
15 salt.
5. The method of claim 1 further comprising administering to the subject an effective amount of a compound selected from the group consisting of: rifampicin, disulfiram, and indomethacin, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.
- 20 6. A method of treating amyloidosis in a subject, said method comprising administering to said subject an effective amount of a combination of (a) a salt of a metal chelator, wherein said chelator is selected from the group consisting of: bathocuproine, bathophenanthroline, DTPA, EDTA, EGTA, penicillamine, TETA, and TPEN, or hydrophobic derivatives thereof, and (b)

- 111 -

clioquinol; wherein said salt of the metal chelator is selected from the group consisting of: ammonium, calcium, magnesium, and sodium; and wherein said combination reduces, inhibits or otherwise interferes with A $\beta$ -mediated production of radical oxygen species.

5                   7.     The method of claim 6 wherein the metal chelator is bathocuproine.

                  8.     The method of claim 6 wherein the salt of a metal chelator is a magnesium salt.

10               9.     The method of claim 6 further comprising administering to said subject a compound selected from the group consisting of: rifampicin, disulfiram, and indomethacin, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

15               10.    A method of treating amyloidosis in a subject, said method comprising administering to said subject an effective amount of a combination of (a) a chelator specific for copper, and (b) clioquinol; wherein said combination reduces, inhibits or otherwise interferes with A $\beta$ -mediated production of radical oxygen species.

                 11.    The method of claim 10 wherein the chelator specific for copper is specific for the reduced form of copper.

20               12.    The method of claim 11 wherein the chelator is bathocuproine or a hydrophobic derivative thereof.

                 13.    A method of treating amyloidosis in a subject, said method comprising administering to said subject an effective amount of a combination of (a) an alkalinizing agent and (b) clioquinol; wherein said combination

- 112 -

reduces, inhibits or otherwise interferes with A $\beta$ -mediated production of radical oxygen species.

14. The method of claim 13 wherein the alkalinizing agent is magnesium citrate.

5 15. The method of claim 13 wherein the alkalinizing agent is calcium citrate.

10 16. A method of treating amyloidosis in a subject, said method comprising administering to said subject a combination of (a) a metal chelator selected from the group consisting of: bathocuproine, bathophenanthroline, DTPA, EDTA, EGTA, penicillamine, TETA, and TPEN, or hydrophobic derivatives thereof; and (b) clioquinol, for a time and under conditions to bring about said treatment; wherein said combination prevents formation of A $\beta$  amyloid, promotes, induces or otherwise facilitates resolubilization of A $\beta$  deposits, or both.

15 17. The method of claim 16 wherein the metal chelator is bathocuproine.

18. The method of claim 16 further comprising administering a supplement selected from the group consisting of: ammonium salt, calcium salt, magnesium salt, and sodium salt.

20 19. The method of claim 18 wherein the supplement is magnesium salt.

20. The method of claim 16 further comprising administering to the subject an effective amount of a compound selected from the group consisting

- 113 -

of: rifampicin, disulfiram, and indomethacin, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

21. A method of treating amyloidosis in a subject, said method comprising administering to said subject an effective amount of a combination  
5 of (a) a salt of a metal chelator, wherein said chelator is selected from the group consisting of: bathocuproine, bathophenanthroline, DTPA, EDTA, EGTA, penicillamine, TETA, and TPEN, or hydrophobic derivatives thereof, and (b) clioquinol; wherein said salt of the metal chelator is selected from the group  
10 consisting of: ammonium, calcium, magnesium, and sodium; and wherein said combination prevents formation of A $\beta$  amyloid, promotes, induces or otherwise facilitates resolubilization of A $\beta$  deposits, or both.

22. The method of claim 21 wherein the metal chelator is bathocuproine.

23. The method of claim 21 wherein the salt of the metal chelator is  
15 a magnesium salt.

24. The method of claim 21 further comprising administering to said subject a compound selected from the group consisting of: rifampicin, disulfiram, and indomethacin, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

25. A method of treating amyloidosis in a subject, said method  
20 comprising administering to said subject an effective amount of a combination of (a) a chelator specific for copper, and (b) clioquinol; wherein said combination prevents formation of A $\beta$  amyloid, promotes, induces or otherwise facilitates resolubilization of A $\beta$  deposits, or both.

- 114 -

26. The method of claim 25 wherein the chelator specific for copper is specific for the reduced form of copper.

27. The method of claim 26 wherein the chelator is bathocuproine or a hydrophobic derivative thereof.

5           28. A method of treating amyloidosis in a subject, said method comprising administering to said subject an effective amount of a combination of (a) an alkalinizing agent and (b) clioquinol; wherein said combination prevents formation of A $\beta$  amyloid, promotes, induces or otherwise facilitates resolubilization of A $\beta$  deposits, or both.

10           29. The method of claim 28 wherein the alkalinizing agent is magnesium citrate.

30. The method of claim 28 wherein the alkalinizing agent is calcium citrate.

15           31. A pharmaceutical composition for treatment of conditions caused by amyloidosis, A $\beta$ -mediated ROS formation, or both, comprising: (a) a metal chelator selected from the group consisting of: bathocuproine, bathophenanthroline, DTPA, EDTA, EGTA, penicillamine, TETA, and TPEN, or hydrophobic derivatives thereof; and (b) clioquinol, together with one or more pharmaceutically acceptable carriers or diluents.

20           32. The pharmaceutical composition of claim 31 wherein the metal chelator is bathocuproine.



33. The pharmaceutical composition of claim 31 further comprising a supplement selected from the group consisting of: ammonium salt, calcium salt, magnesium salt, and sodium salt.

5 34. The pharmaceutical composition of claim 33 wherein the supplement is a magnesium salt.

35. The pharmaceutical composition of claim 31 further comprising a compound selected from the group consisting of: rifampicin, disulfiram, and indomethacin.

10 36. A pharmaceutical composition for treatment of conditions caused by amyloidosis, A $\beta$ -mediated ROS formation, or both, comprising a combination of (a) a salt of a metal chelator selected from the group consisting of: bathocuproine, bathophenanthroline, DTPA, EDTA, EGTA, penicillamine, TETA, and TPEN, or hydrophobic derivatives thereof; and (b) clioquinol; wherein said salt of the metal chelator is selected from the group consisting of:  
15 ammonium, calcium, magnesium, and sodium, together with one or more pharmaceutically acceptable carriers or diluents.

37. The pharmaceutical composition of claim 36 wherein the metal chelator is bathocuproine.

20 38. The pharmaceutical composition of claim 36 wherein the salt of the metal chelator is a magnesium salt.

39. The pharmaceutical composition of claim 36 further comprising a compound selected from the group consisting of: rifampicin, disulfiram, and indomethacin.

- 116 -

40. A pharmaceutical composition for treatment of conditions caused by amyloidosis, A $\beta$ -mediated ROS formation, or both, comprising a chelator specific for copper, with one or more pharmaceutically acceptable carriers or diluents.

5           41. The pharmaceutical composition of claim 40 wherein the chelator is specific for the reduced form of copper.

42. The pharmaceutical composition of claim 41 wherein the chelator specific for the reduced form of copper is bathocuproine or a hydrophobic derivative thereof.

10           43. A pharmaceutical composition for treatment of conditions caused by amyloidosis, A $\beta$ -mediated ROS formation, or both, comprising a combination of (a) an alkalinizing agent and (b) clioquinol; together with one or more pharmaceutically acceptable carriers or diluents.

15           44. The pharmaceutical composition of claim 43 wherein the alkalinizing agent is magnesium citrate.

45. The pharmaceutical composition of claim 43 wherein the alkalinizing agent is calcium citrate.

20           46. A composition of matter comprising: (a) a metal chelator selected from the group consisting of: bathocuproine, bathophenanthroline, DTPA, EDTA, EGTA, penicillamine, TETA, and TPEN, or hydrophobic derivatives thereof; and (b) clioquinol.

47. The composition of claim 46 wherein the metal chelator is bathocuproine.

- 117 -

48. The composition of claim 46 further comprising a supplement selected from the group consisting of: ammonium salt, calcium salt, magnesium salt, and sodium salt.

5 49. The composition of claim 48 wherein the supplement is a magnesium salt.

50. The composition of claim 46 further comprising a compound selected from the group consisting of: rifampicin, disulfiram, and indomethacin.

10 51. A composition of matter comprising a combination of (a) a salt of a metal chelator selected from the group consisting of: bathocuproine, bathophenanthroline, DTPA, EDTA, EGTA, penicillamine, TETA, and TPEN, or hydrophobic derivatives thereof; and (b) clioquinol; wherein said salt of the metal chelator is selected from the group consisting of: ammonium, calcium, magnesium, and sodium.

15 52. The composition of claim 51 wherein the metal chelator is bathocuproine.

53. The composition of claim 51 wherein the salt of the chelator is a magnesium salt.

54. The composition of claim 51 further comprising a compound selected from the group consisting of: rifampicin, disulfiram, and indomethacin.

20 55. A composition of matter comprising a combination of (a) an alkalizing agent and (b) clioquinol.

- 118 -

56. The composition of claim 55 wherein the alkalinizing agent is magnesium citrate.

57. The composition of claim 55 wherein the alkalinizing agent is calcium citrate.

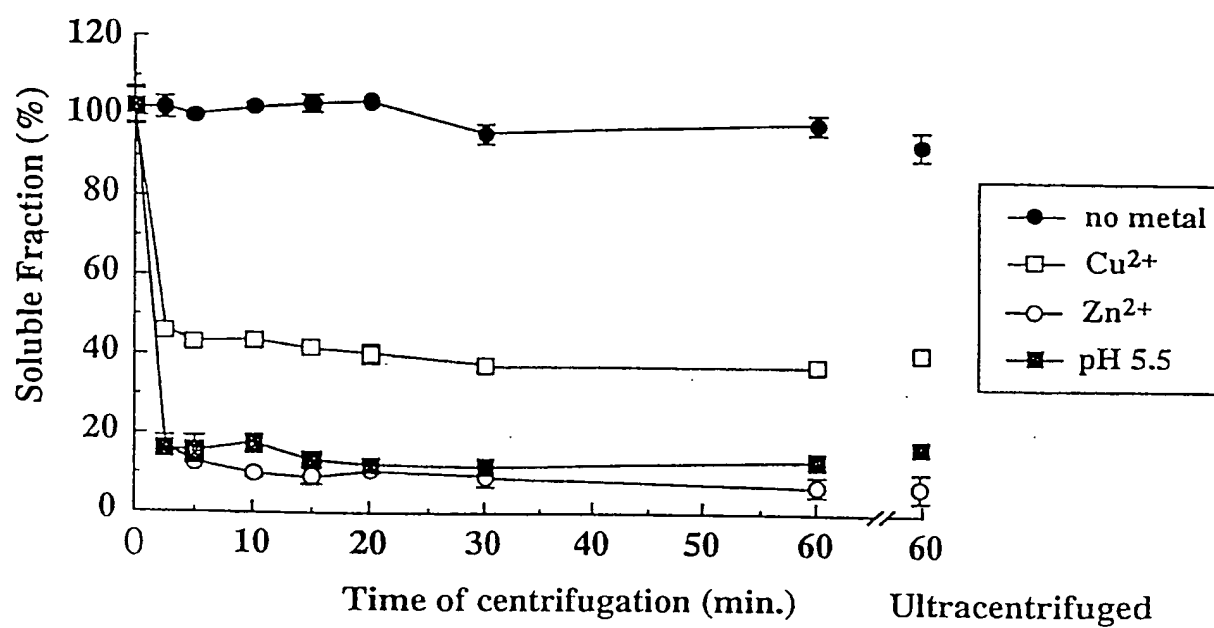


Fig 1

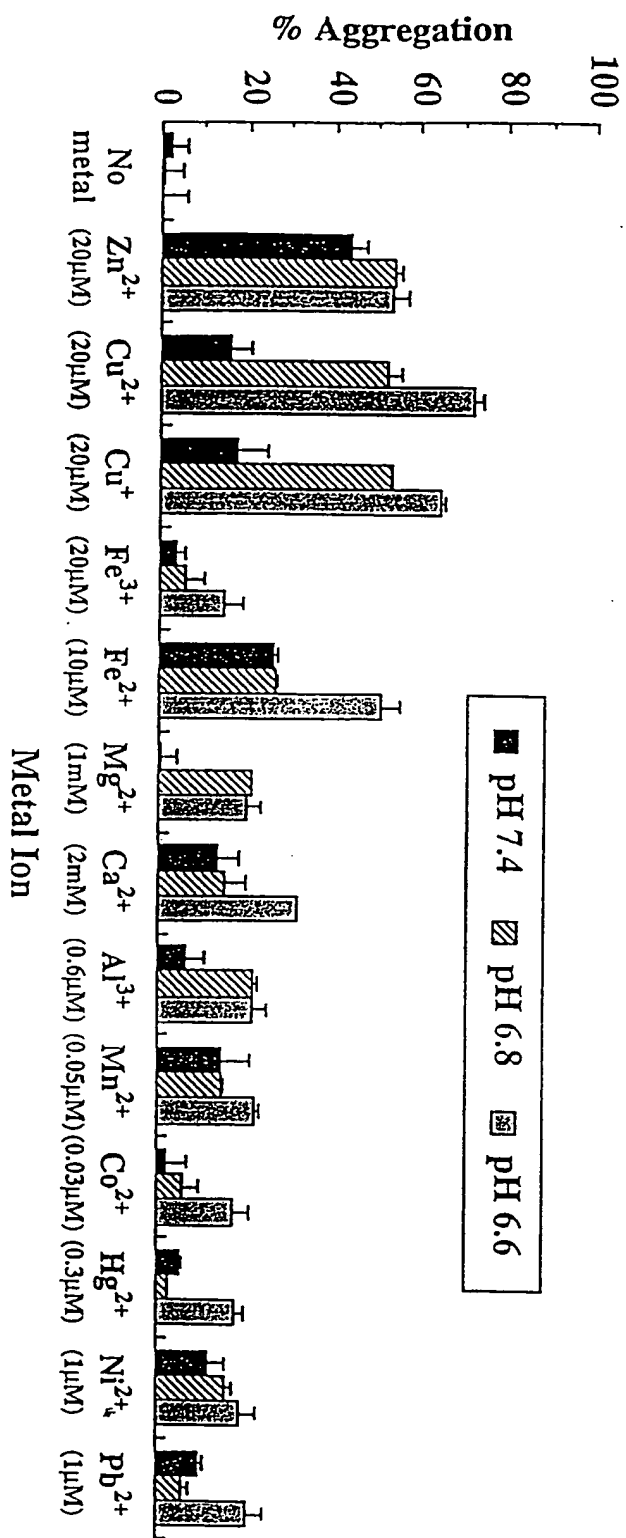


Fig 2A

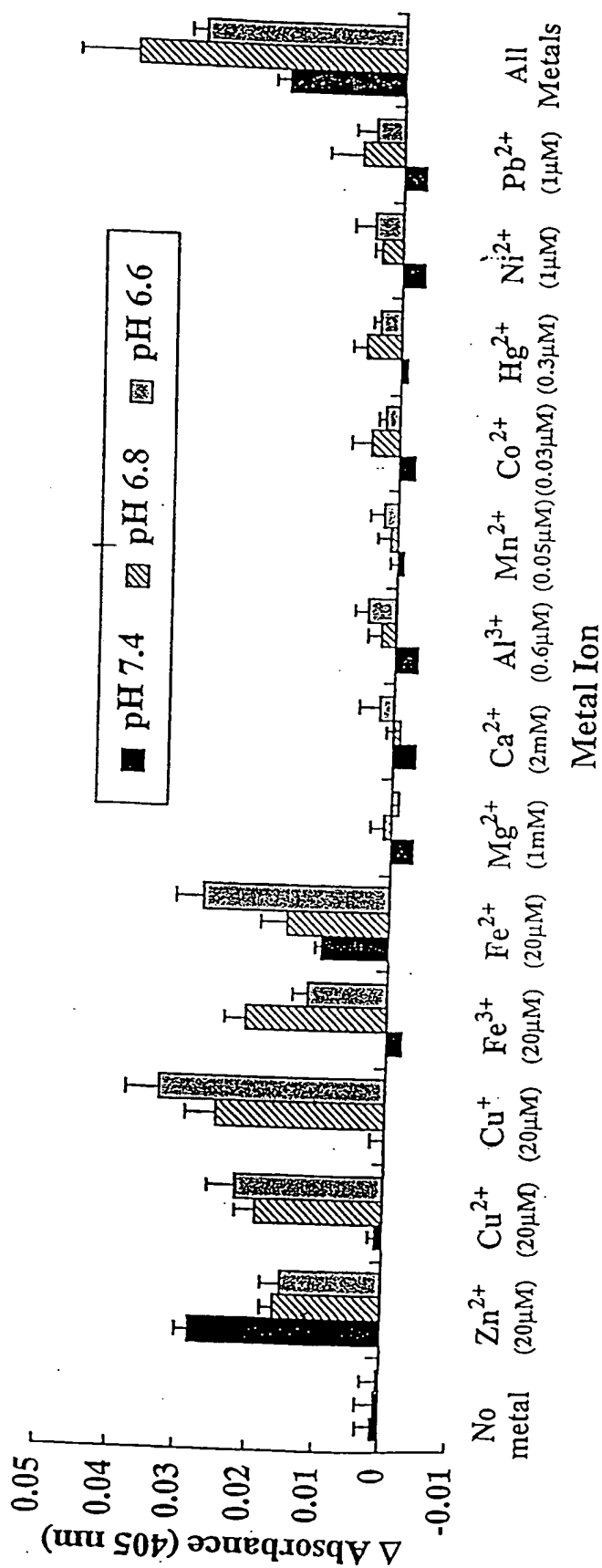


Fig. 2B

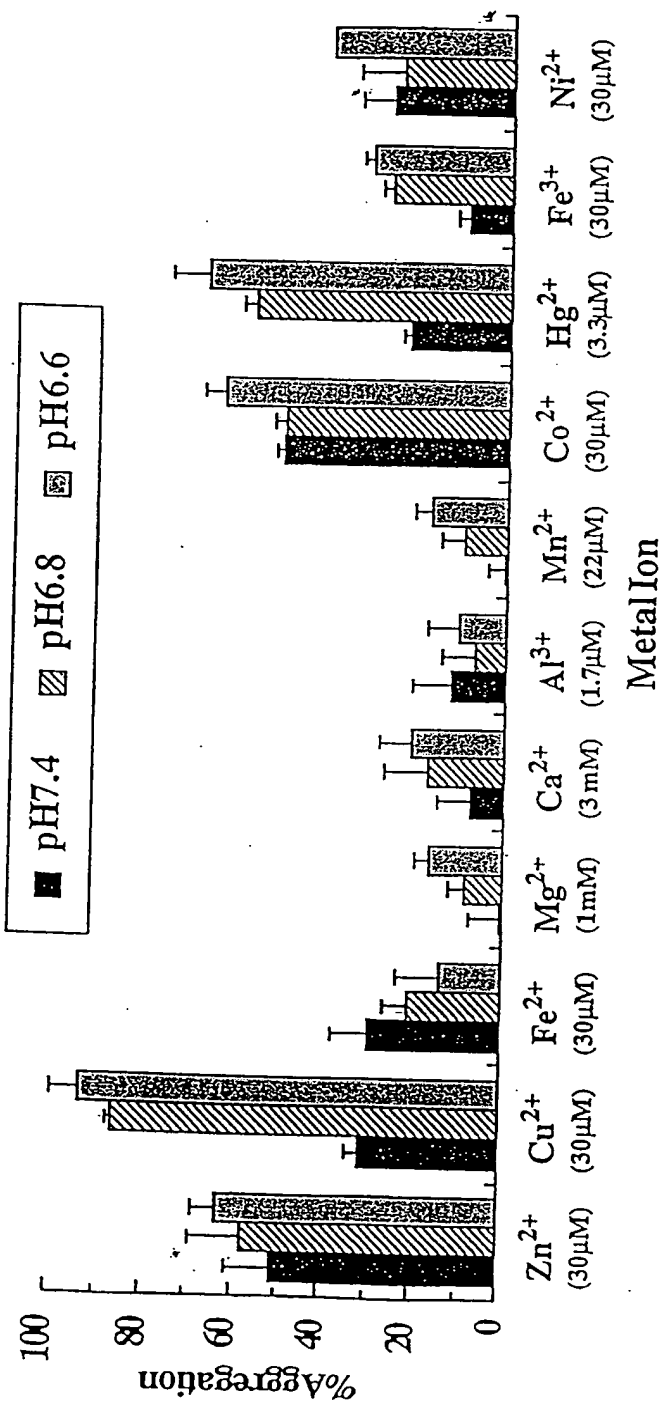
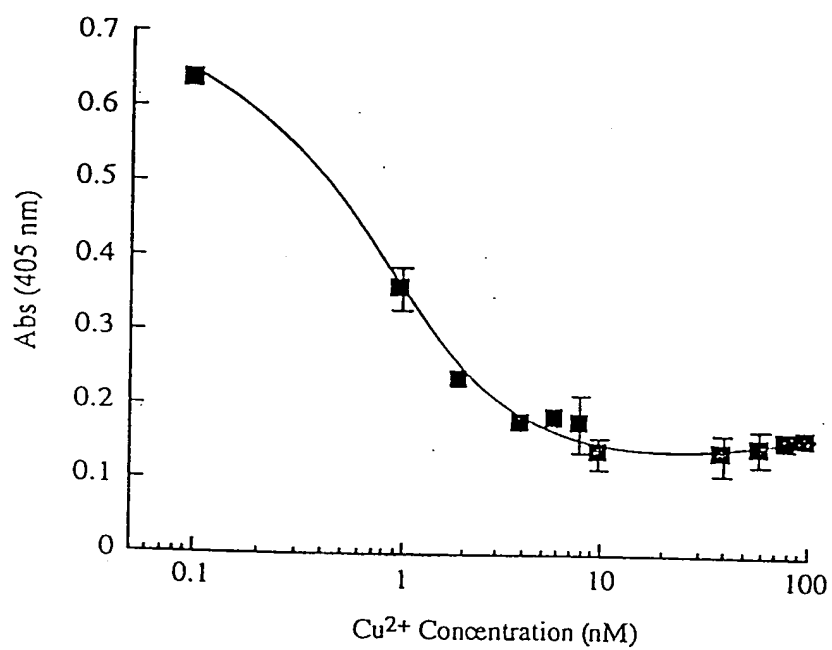


Fig 2C





F.g. 3

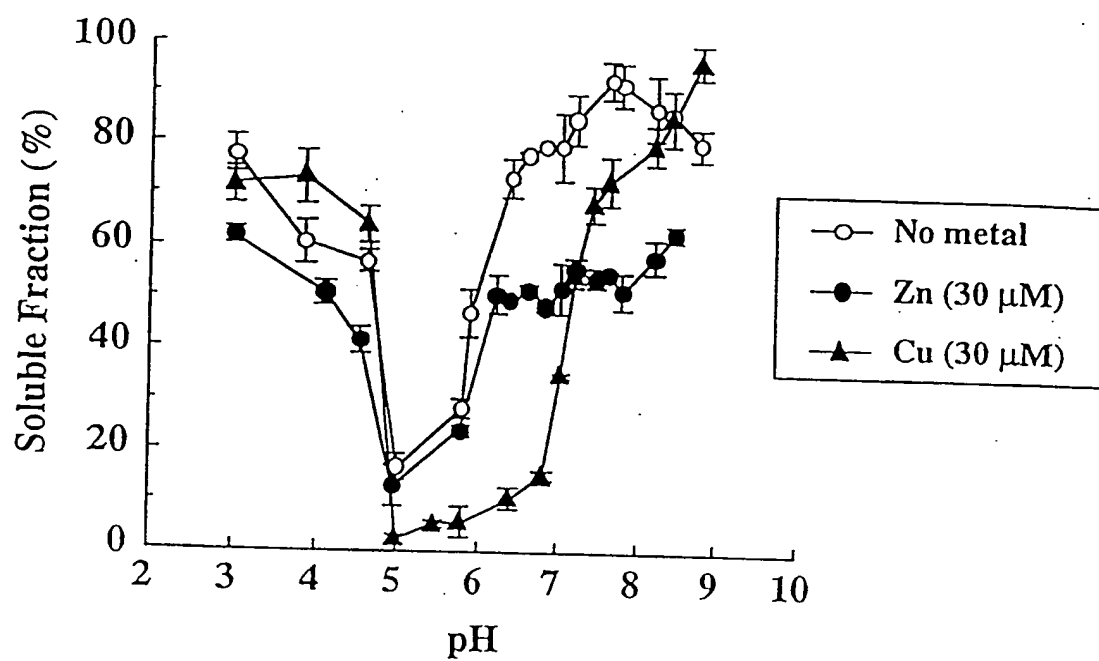


Fig. 4 A

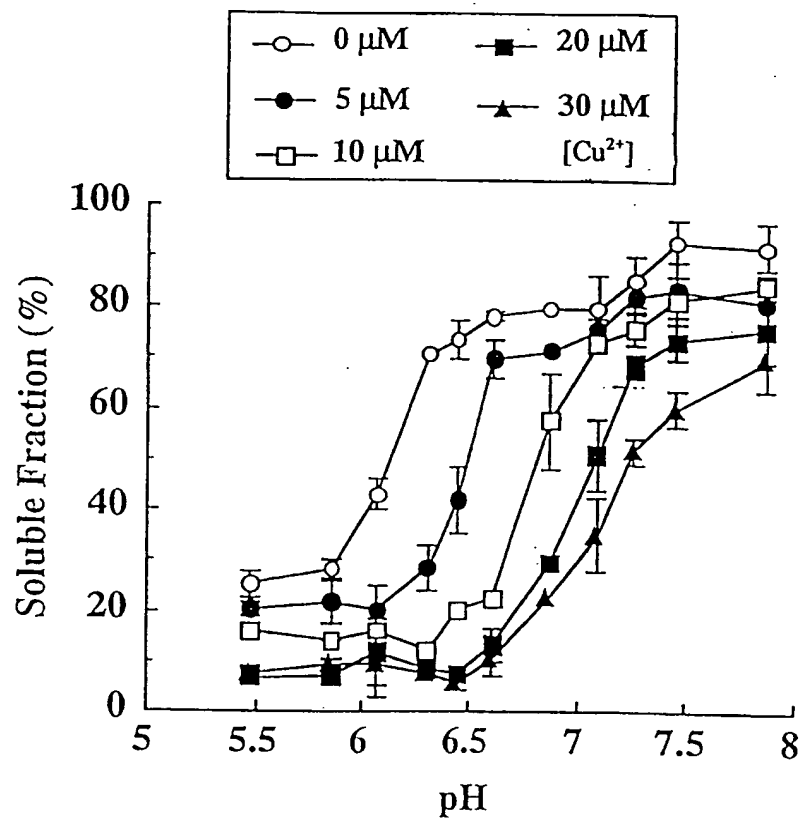


Fig 4 B

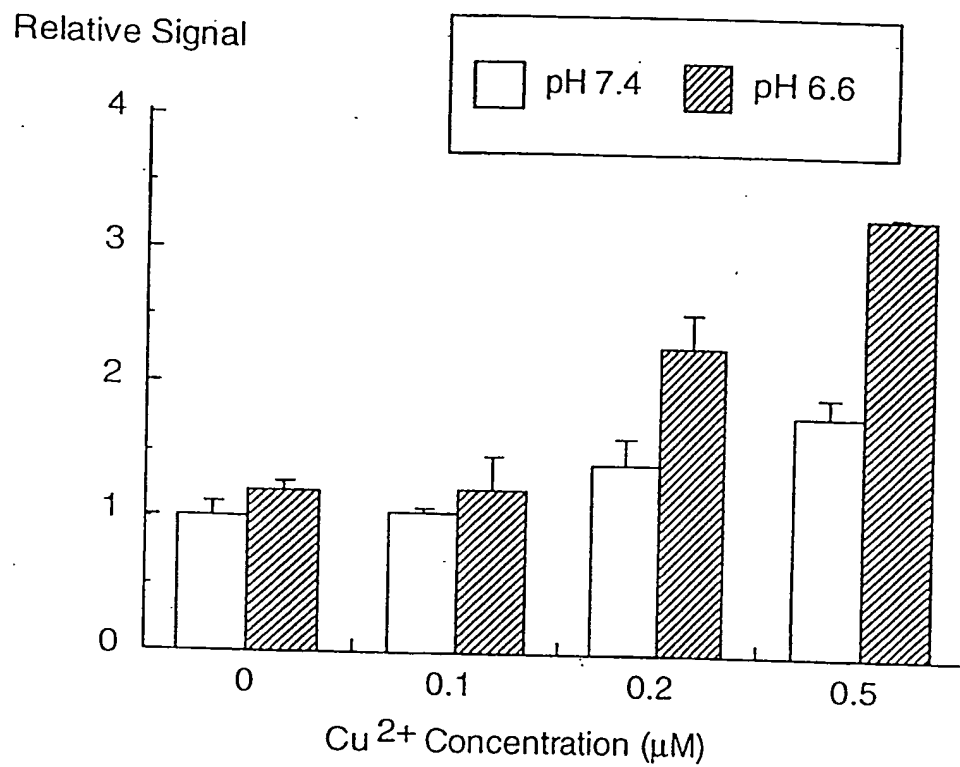


Fig. 4C

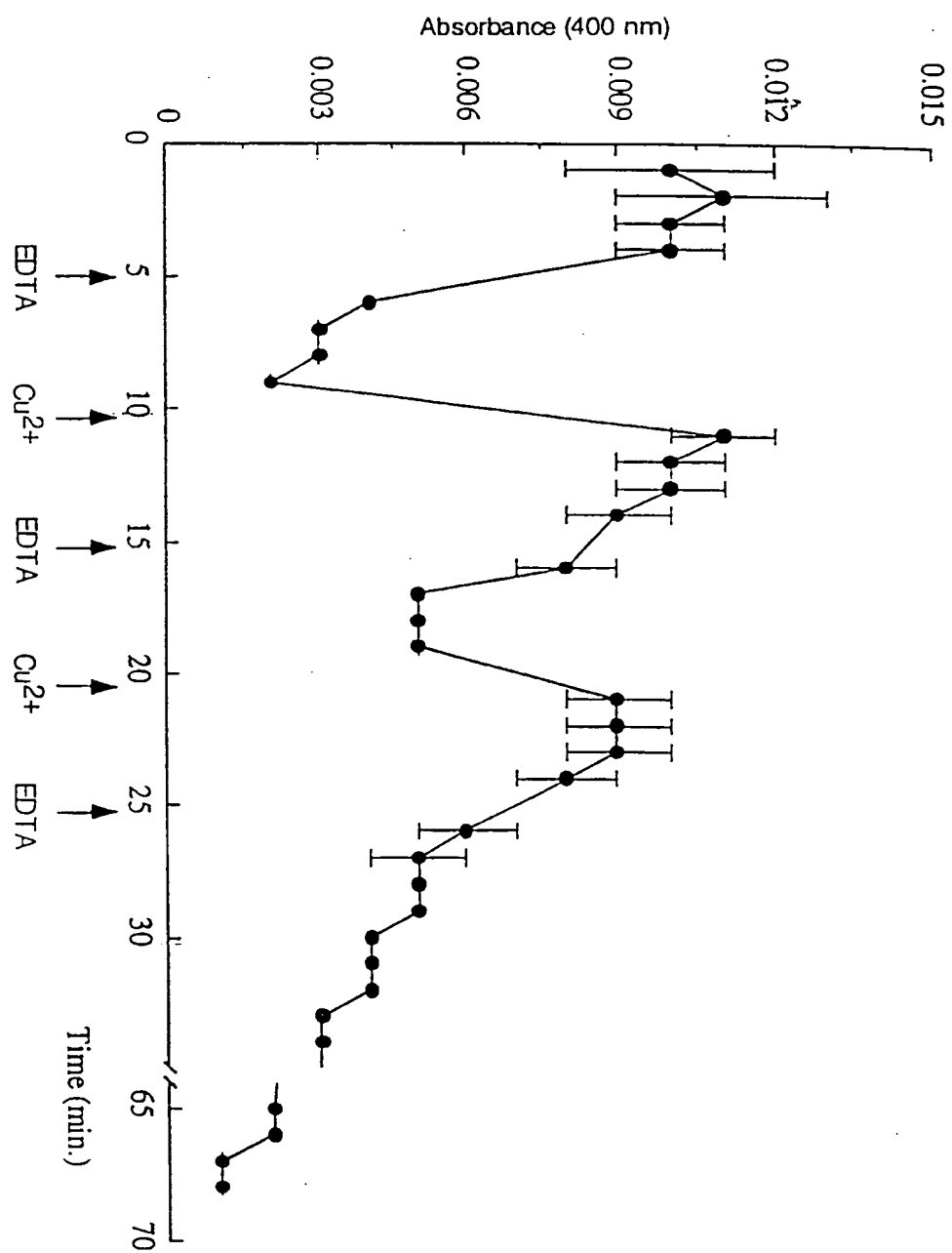


Fig. 5A

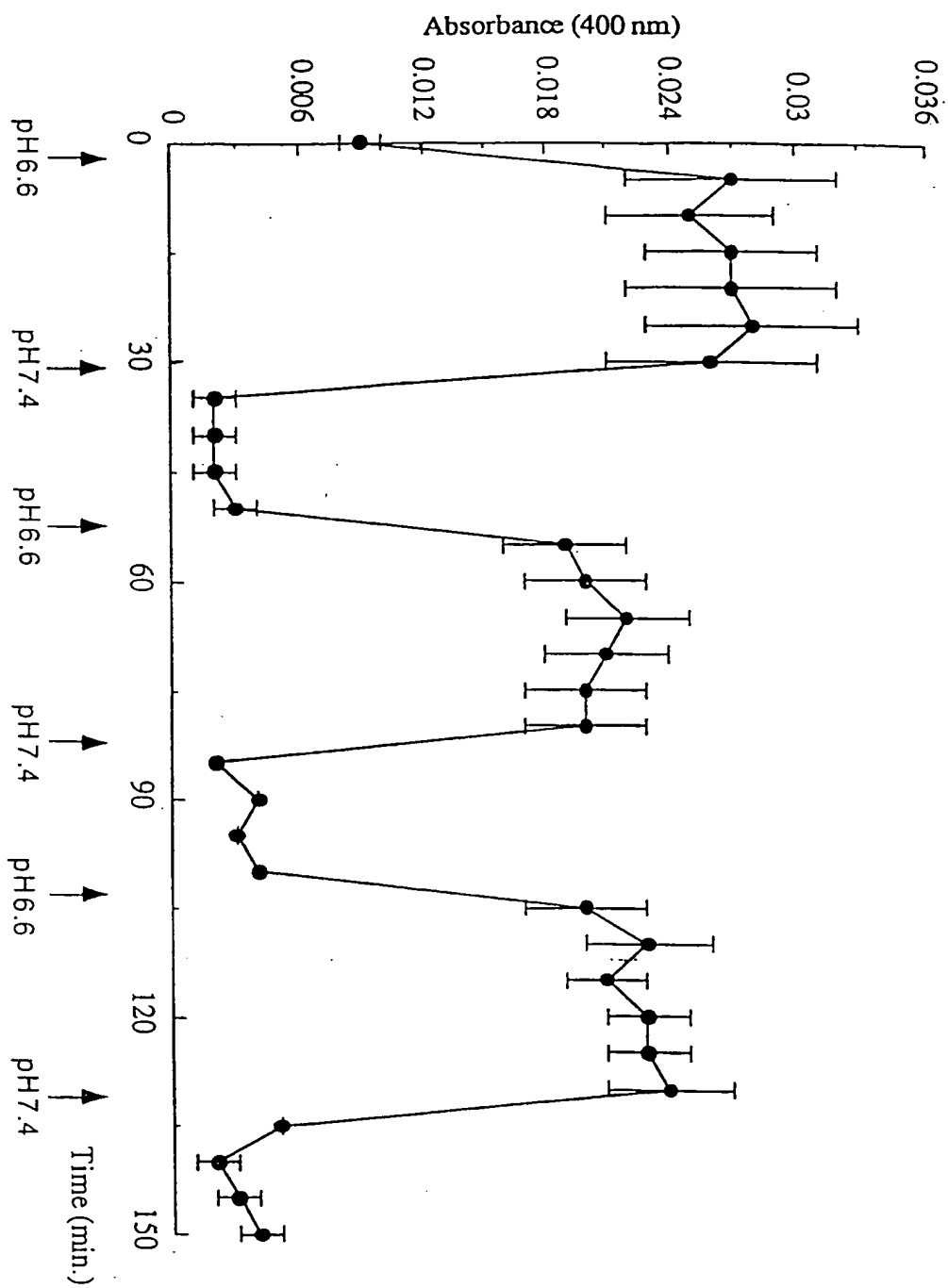


Fig. 5B

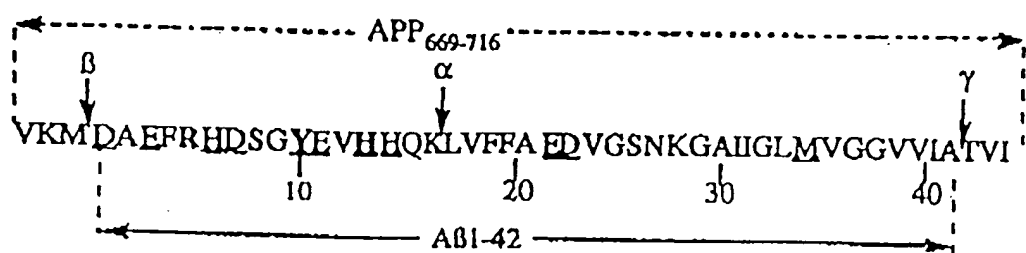


Fig 6

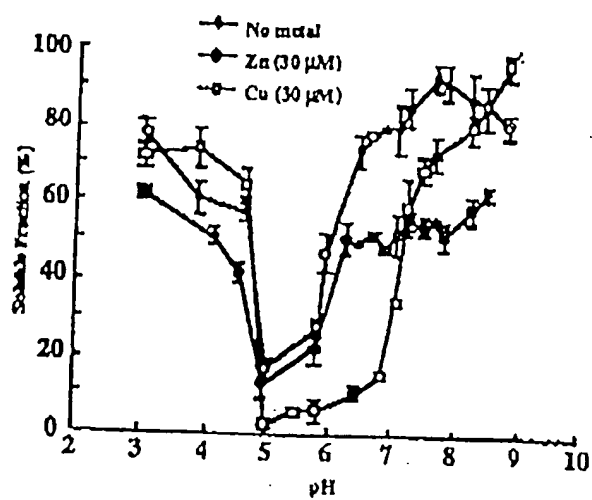


Fig. 7



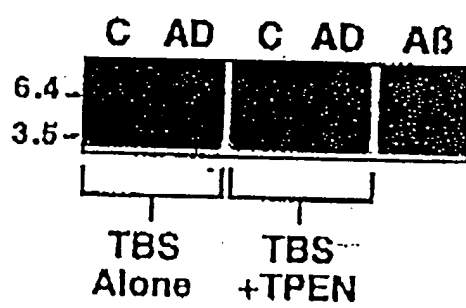


Fig. 8

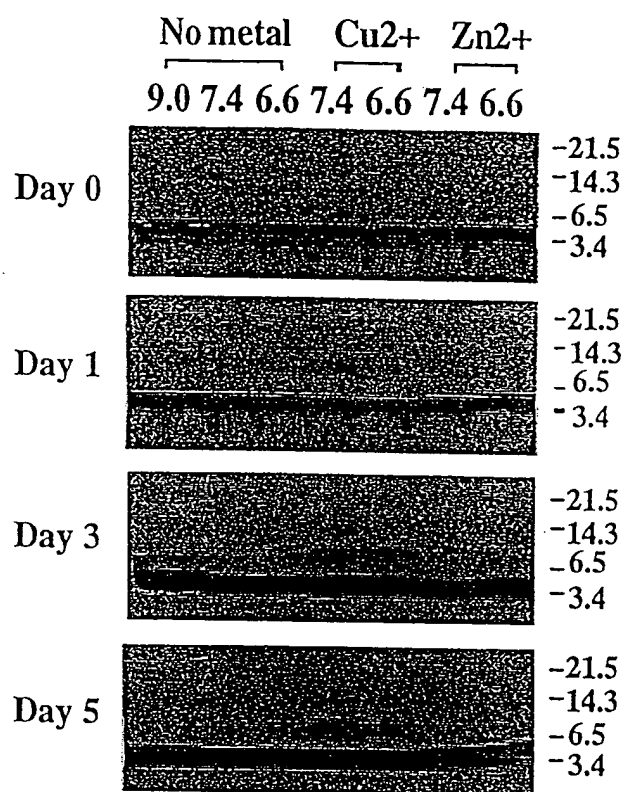


Fig. 9

15/60

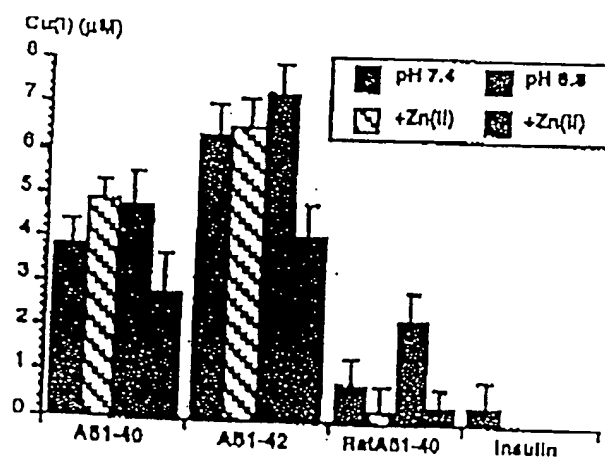


Fig. 10

16/60

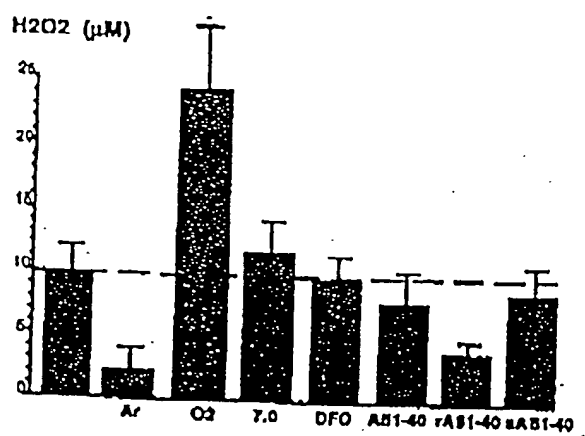


Fig. 11

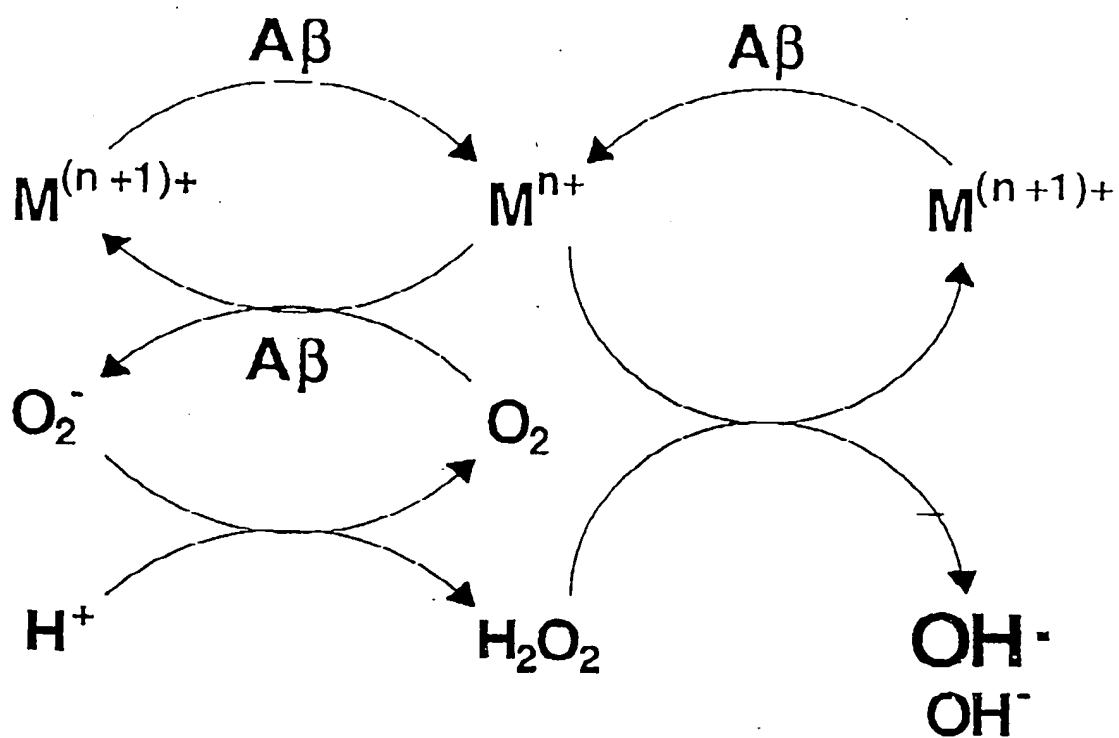


Fig. 12

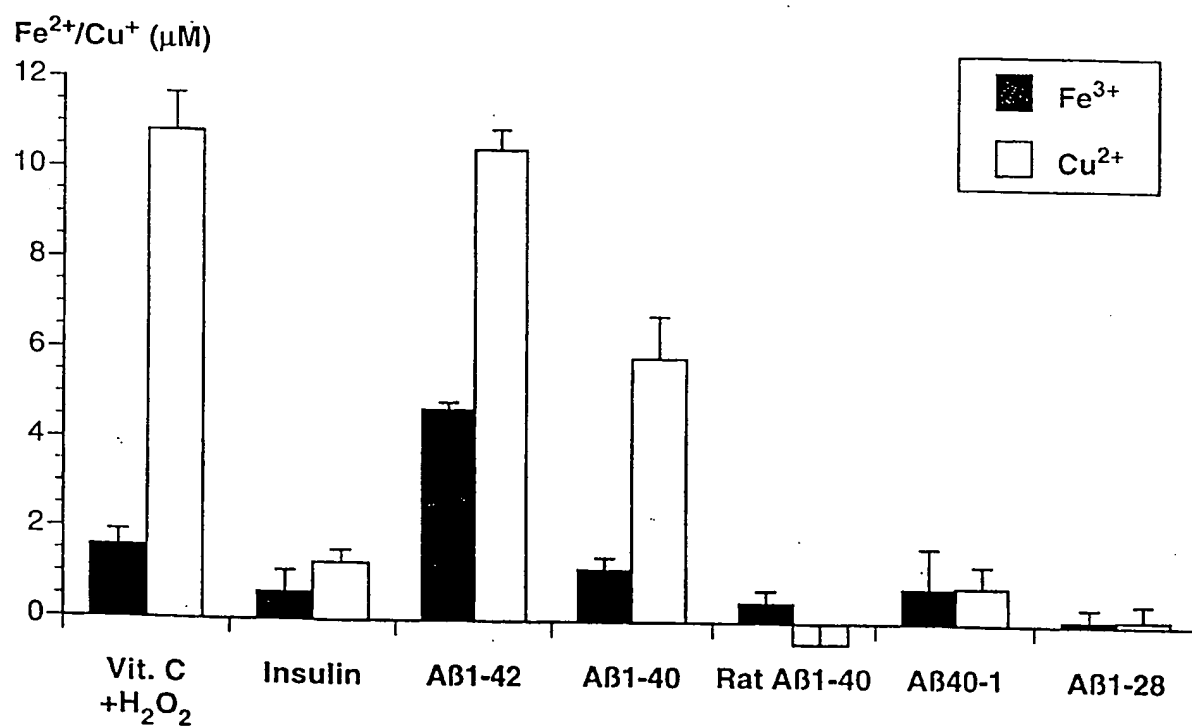


Fig. 13A

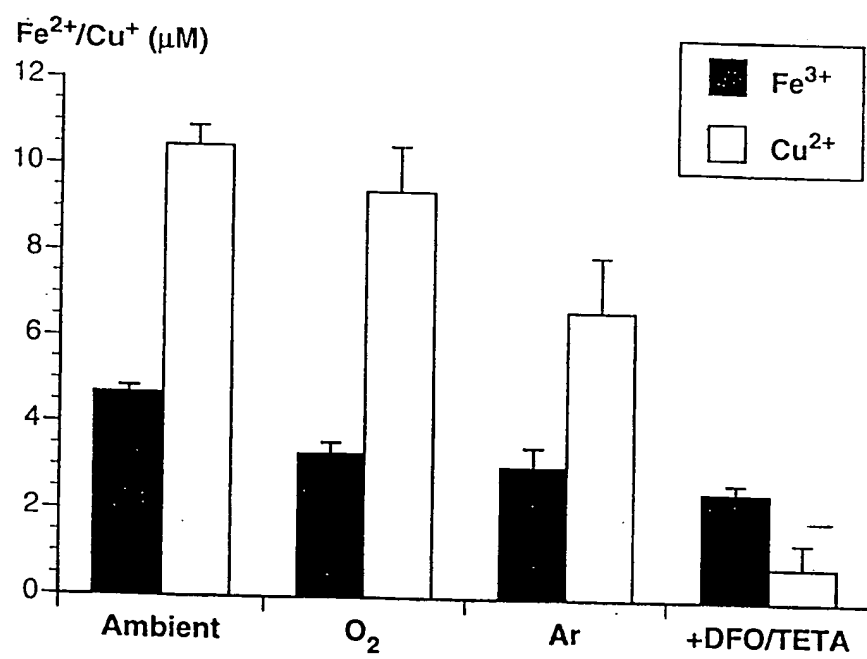


Fig. 13B

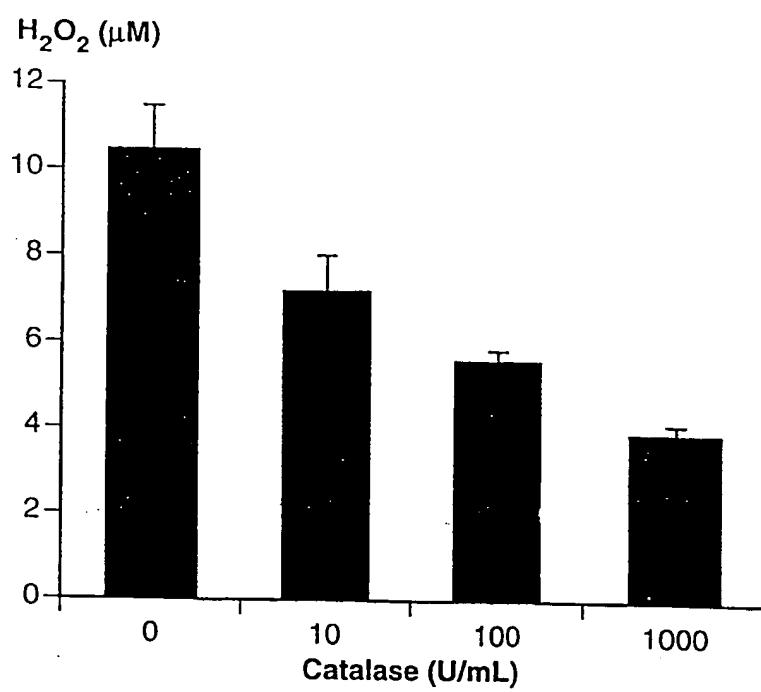


Fig. 14A



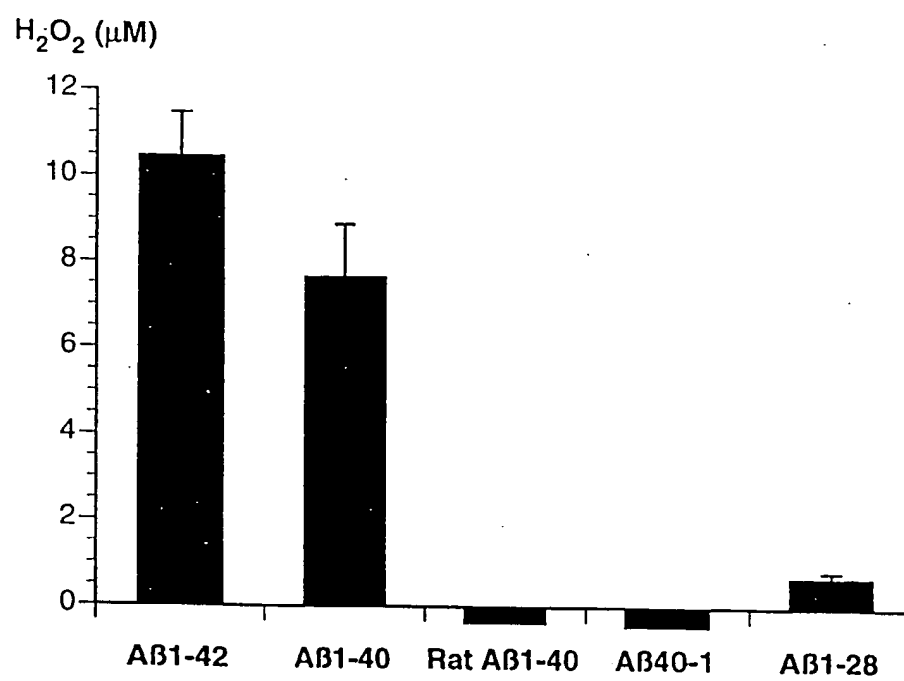


Fig. 14B

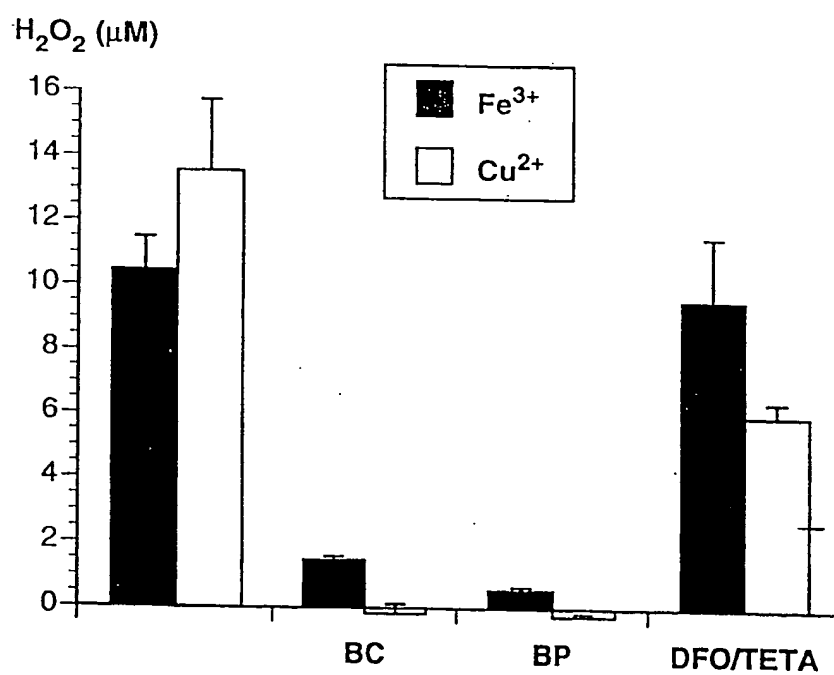


Fig. 14C

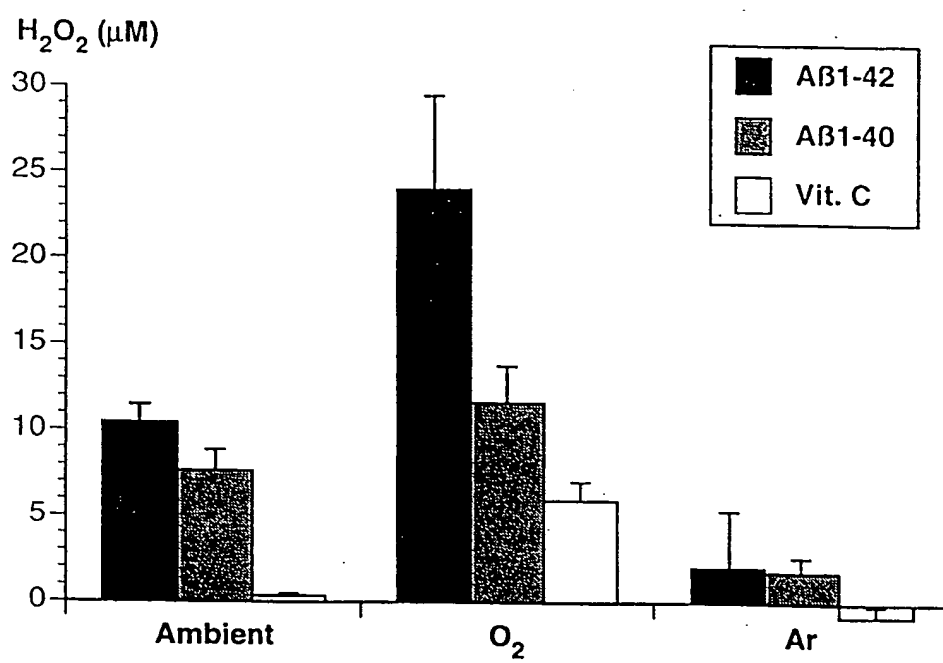


Fig. 14D

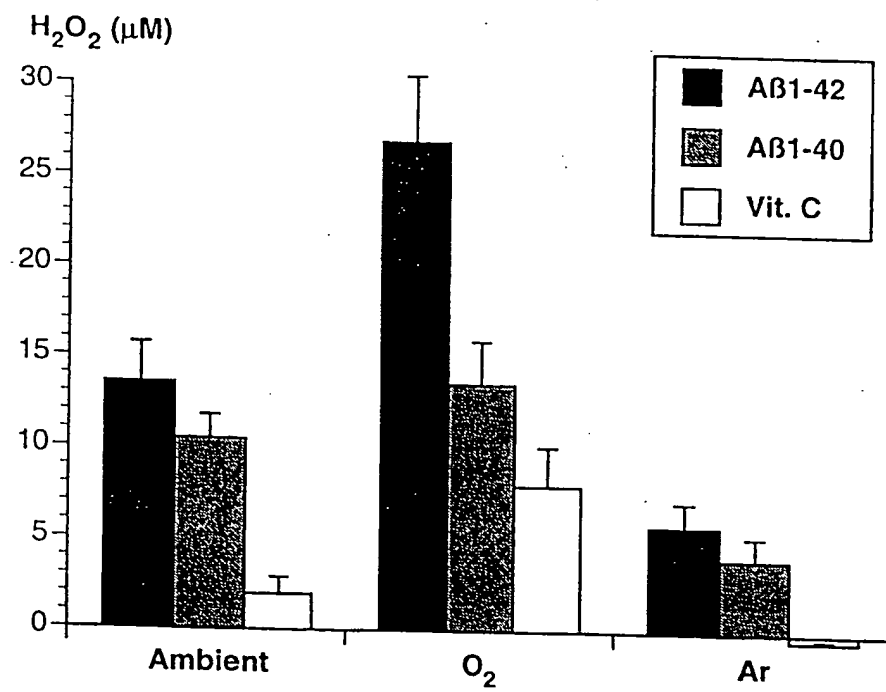


Fig. 14E

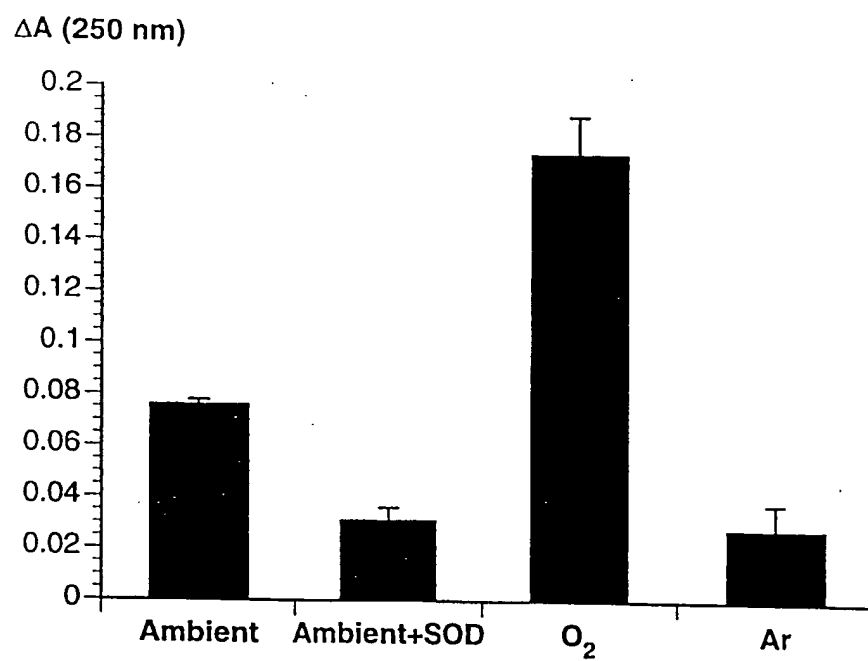


Fig. 15A

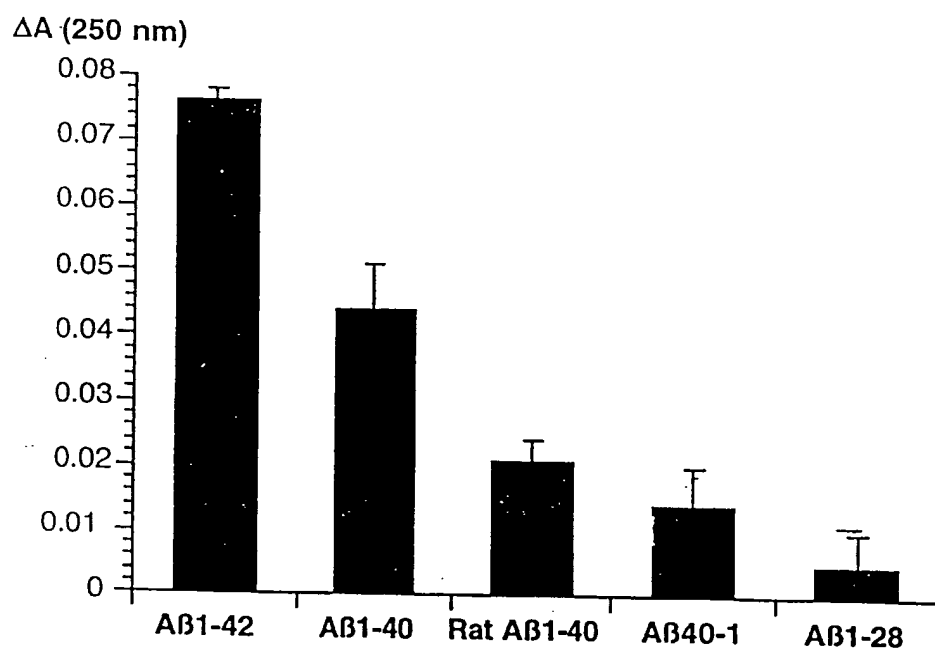


Fig. 15B

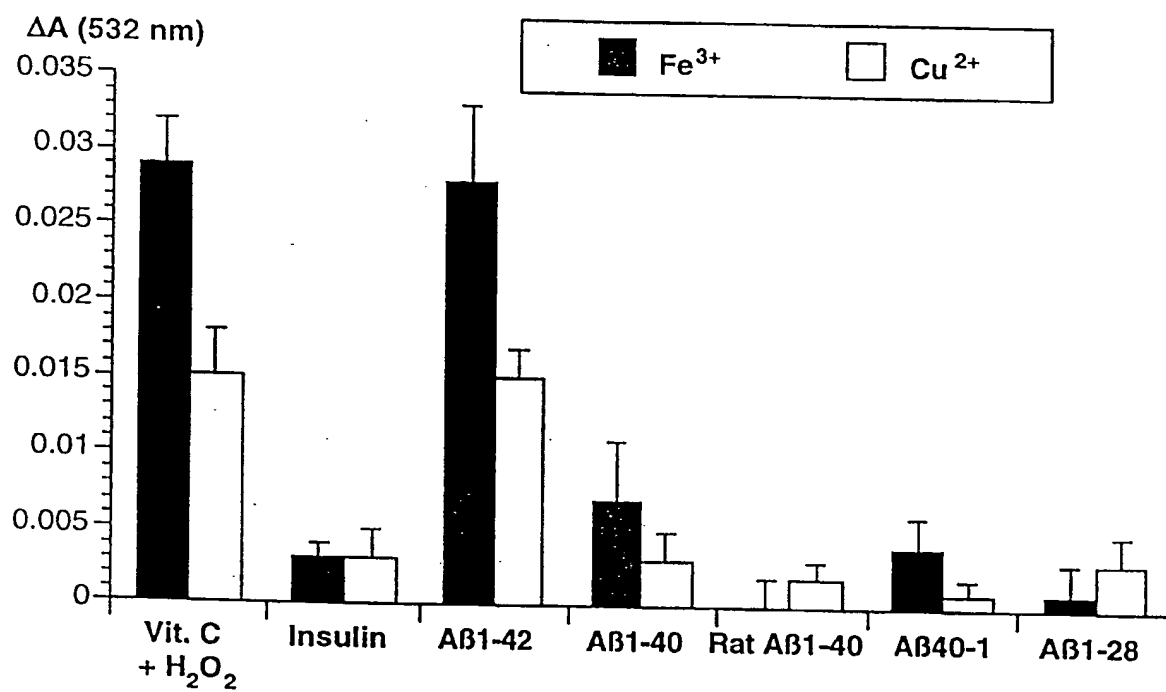


Fig. 16A

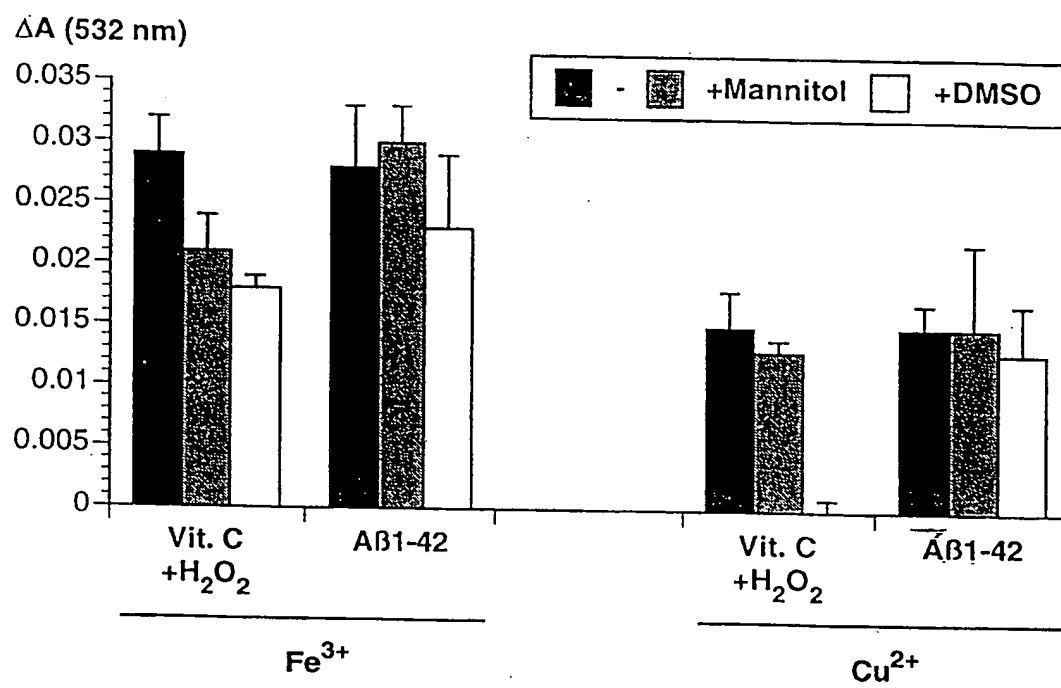


Fig. 16B



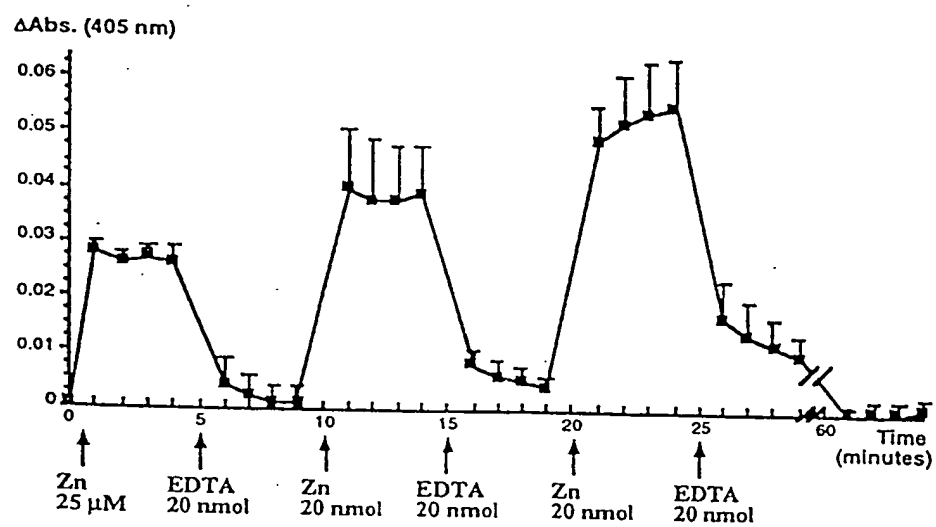


Fig. 17

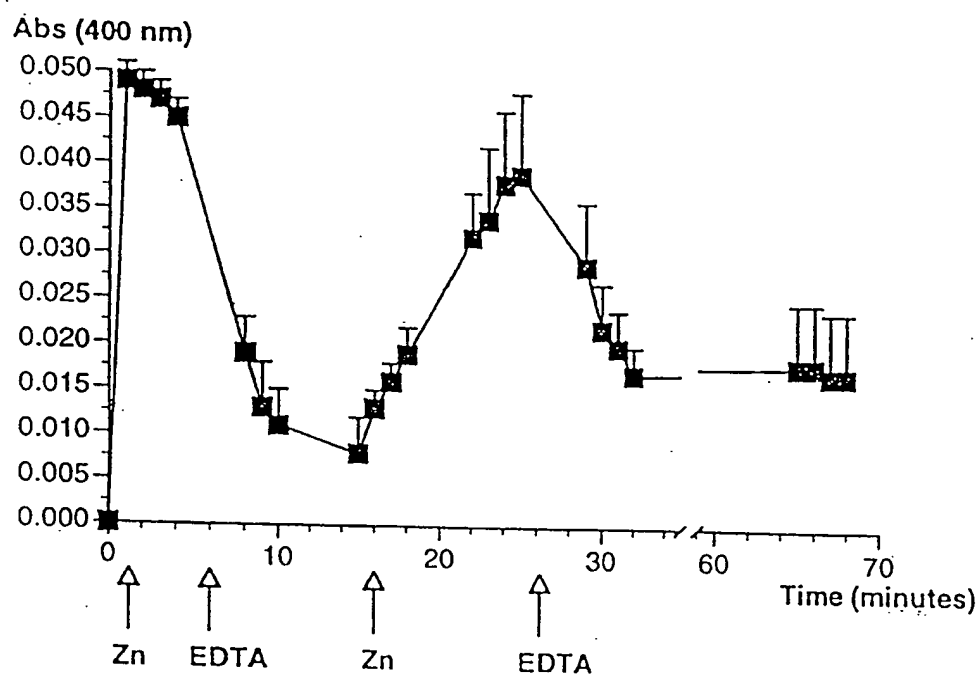


Fig. 18

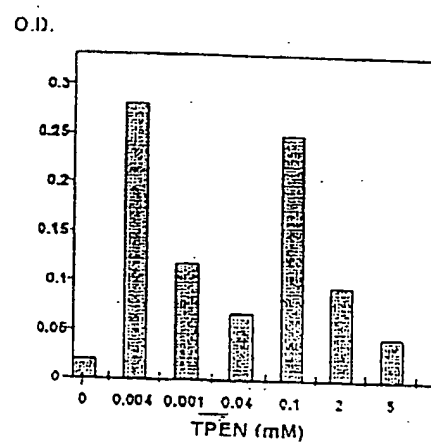
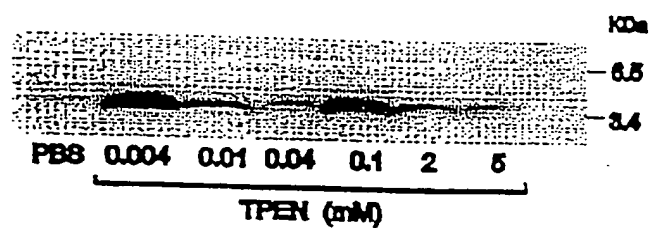


Fig. 19A

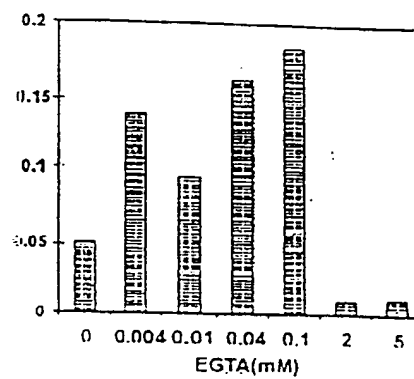
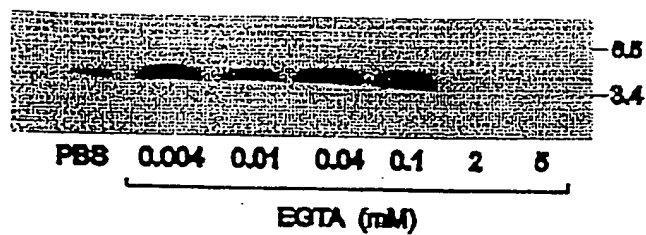


Fig. 19B

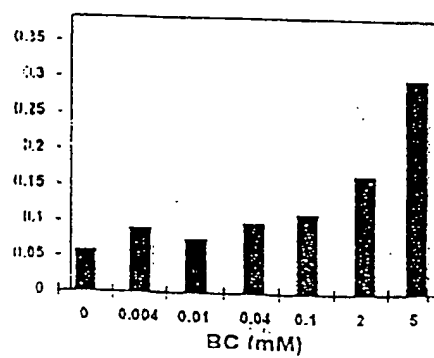
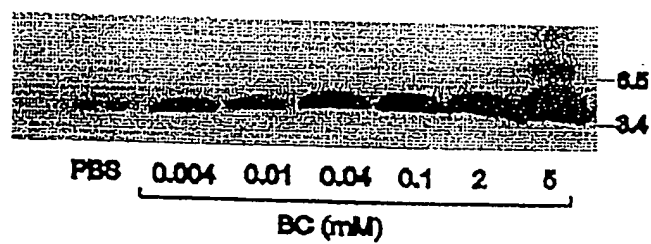
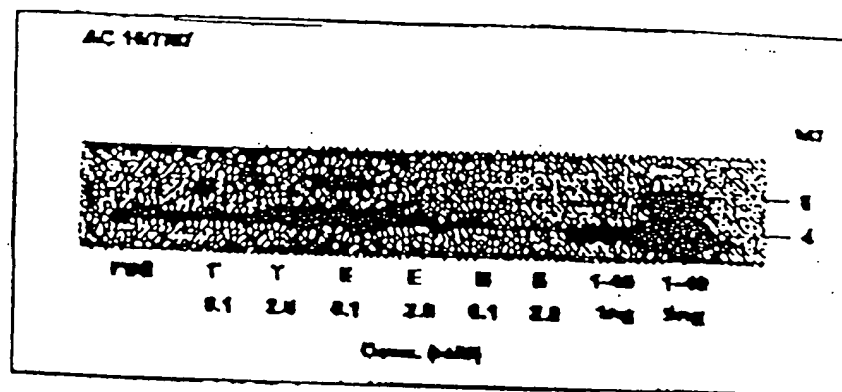
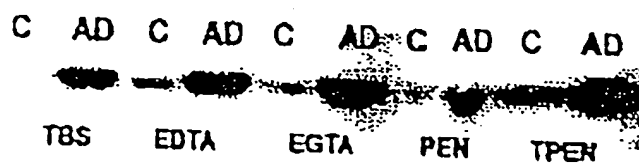


Fig. 19C



Age- matched control- (indicative gel)

Fig. 20A



Young control vs AD, various chelators. 5mM

Fig. 20B

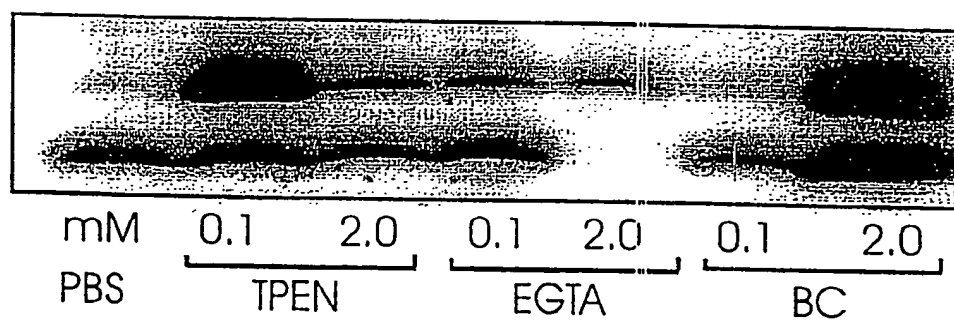


Fig. 21



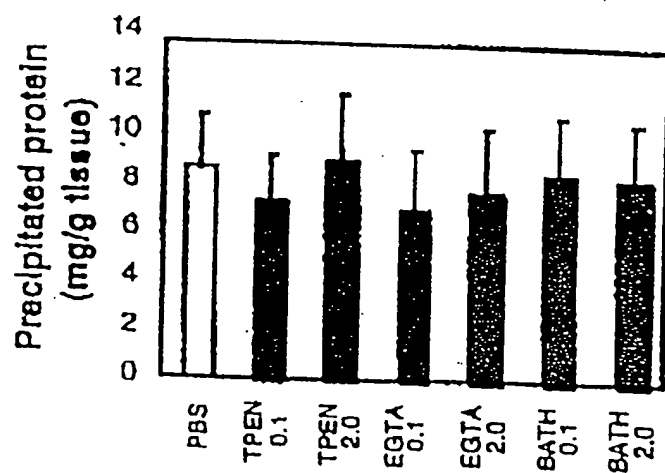


Fig. 22

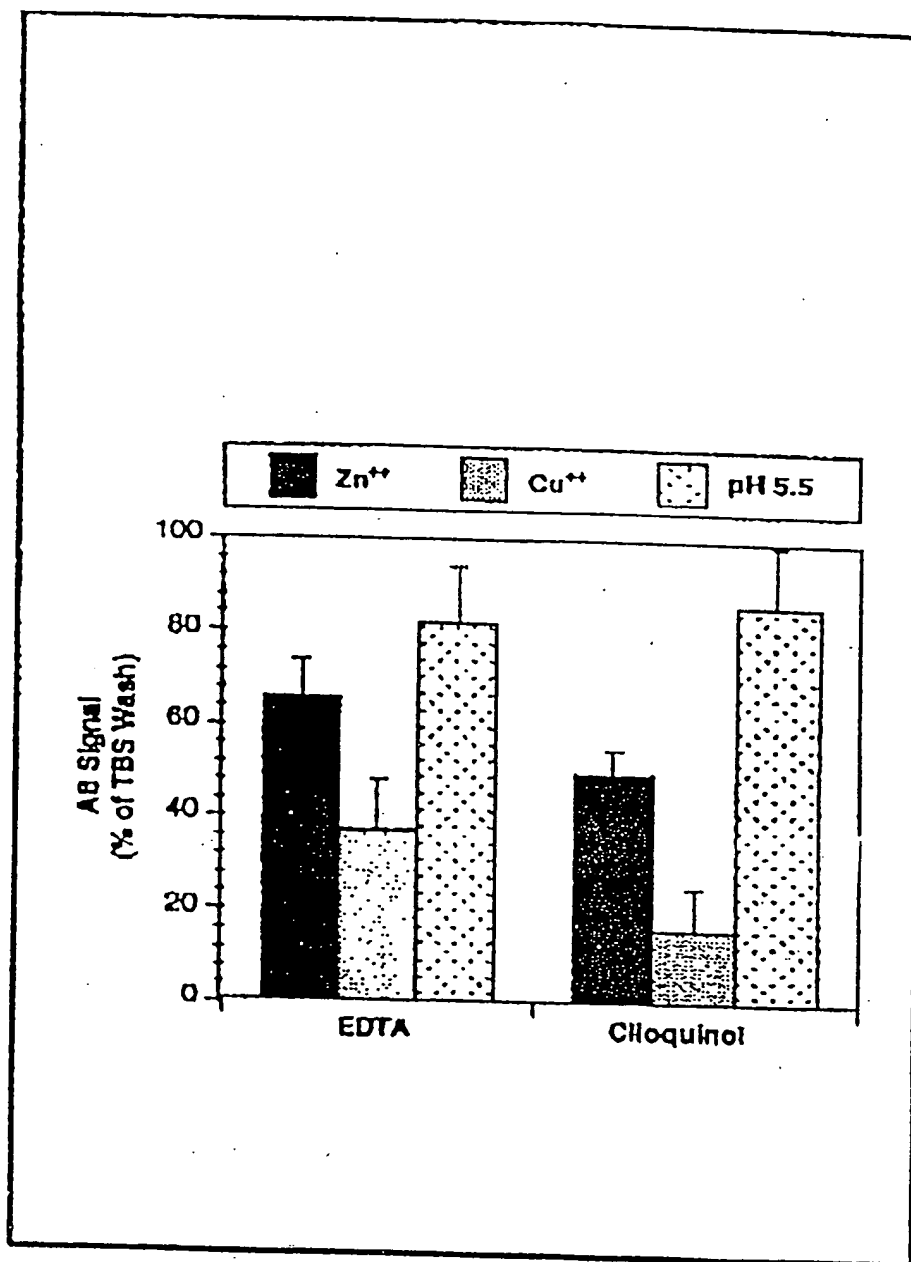


Fig. 23

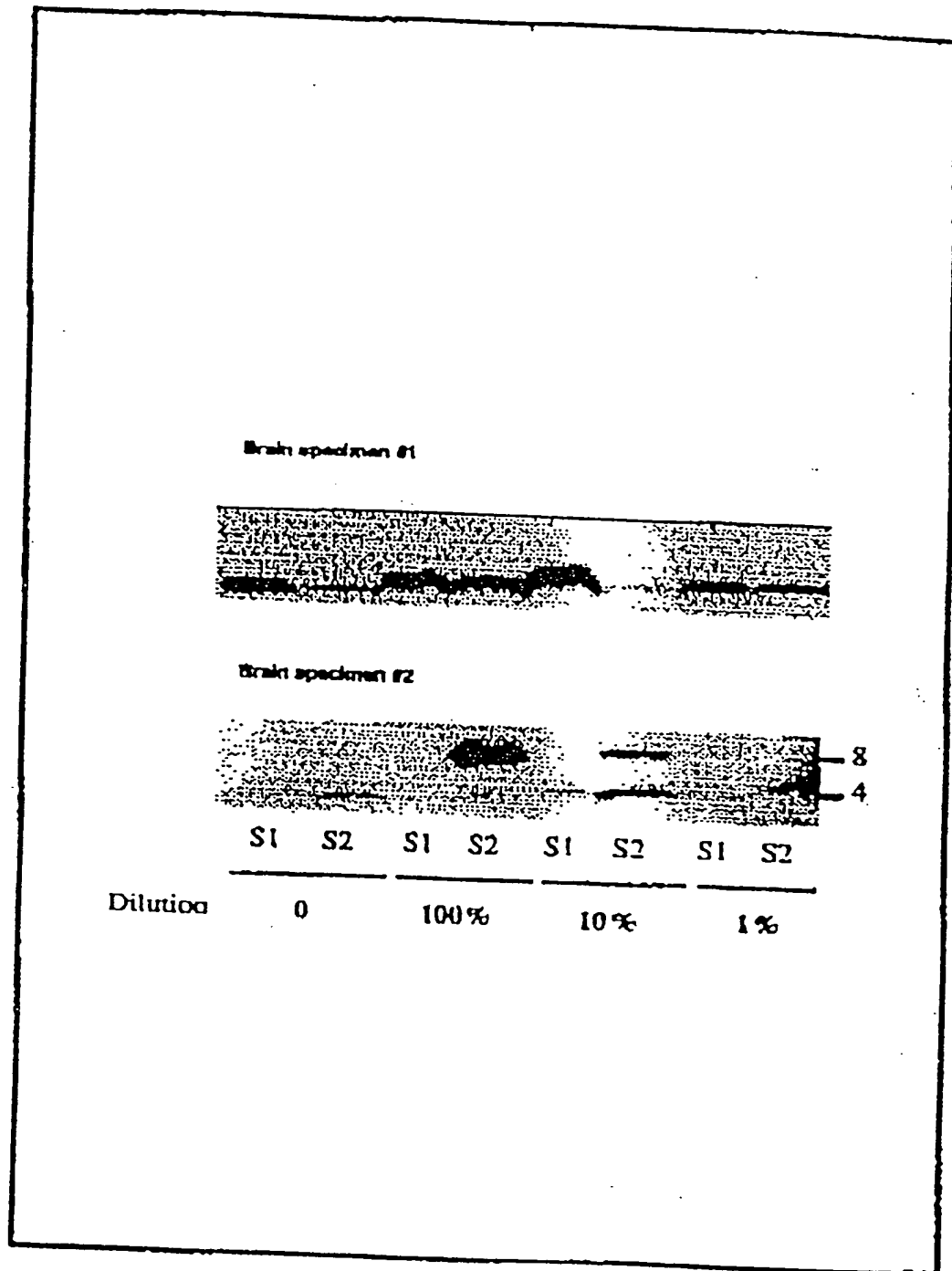


Fig. 24

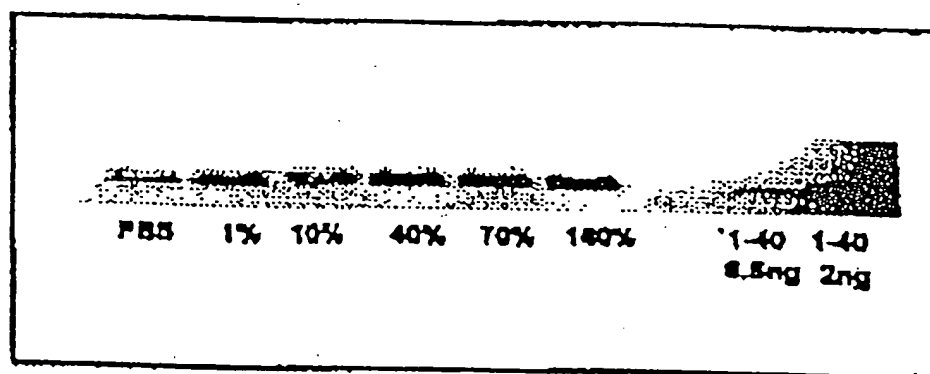


Fig. 25A

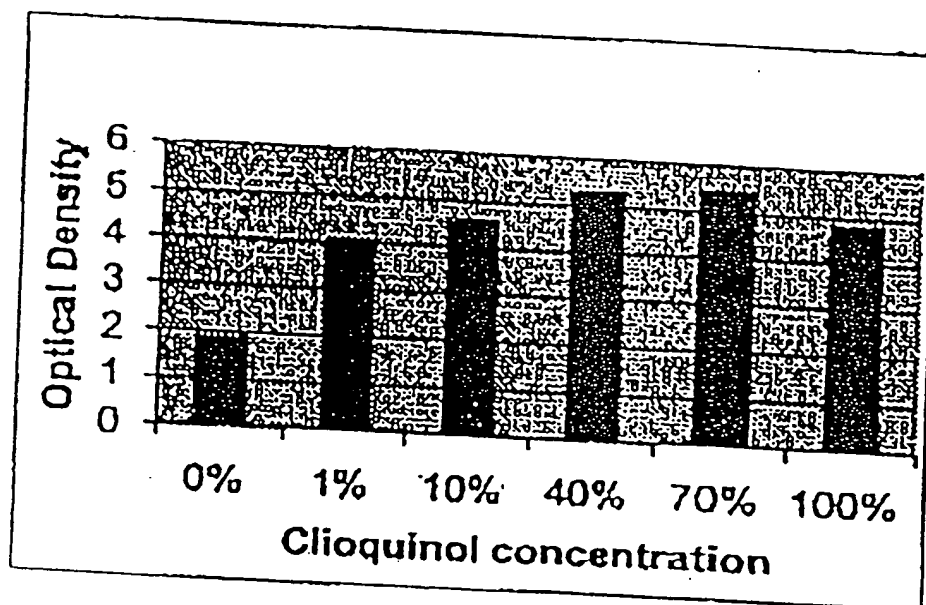


Fig. 25B

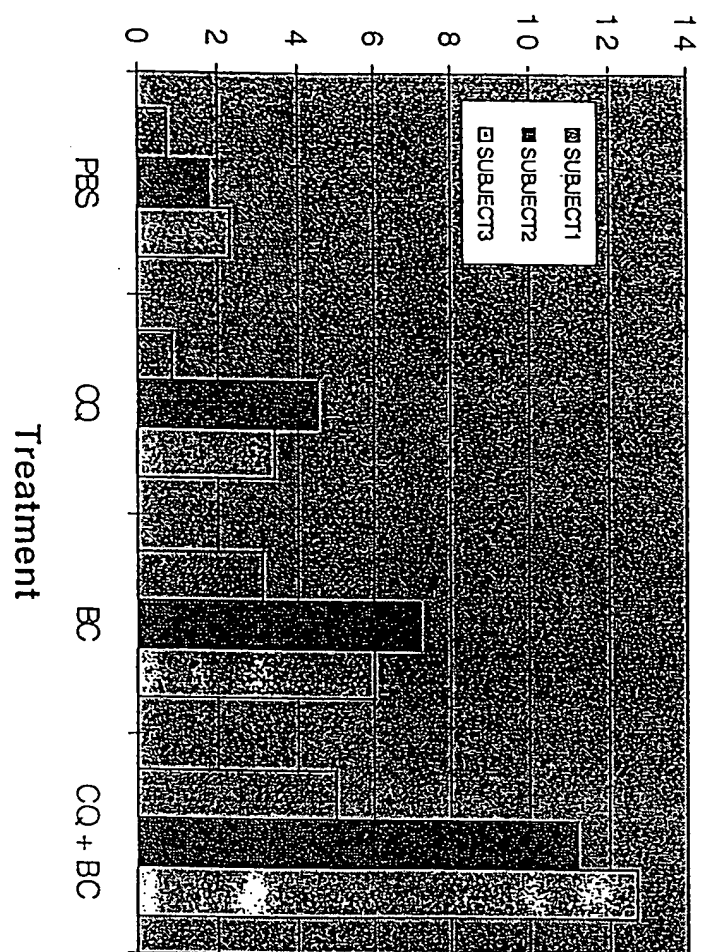


Fig. 26

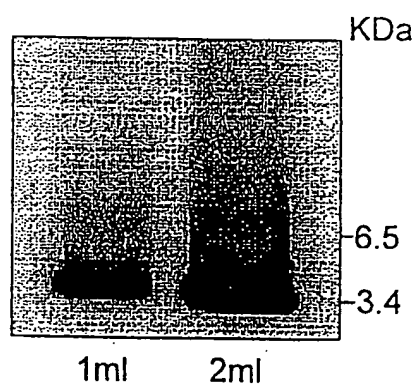


Fig. 27

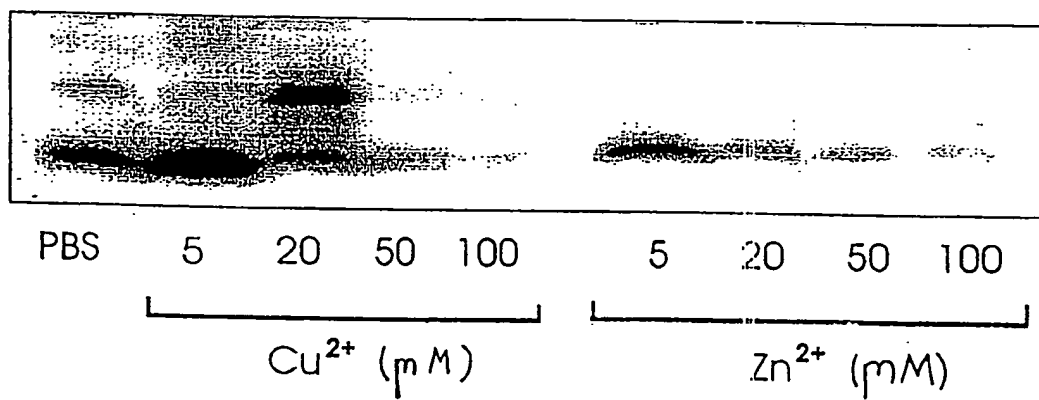


Fig. 28A



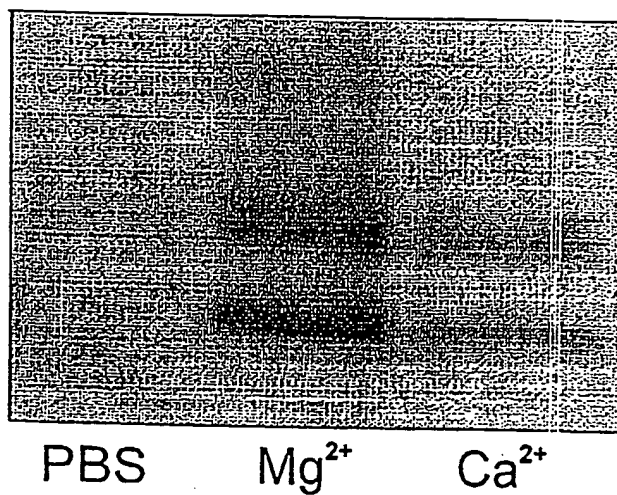


Fig. 28B

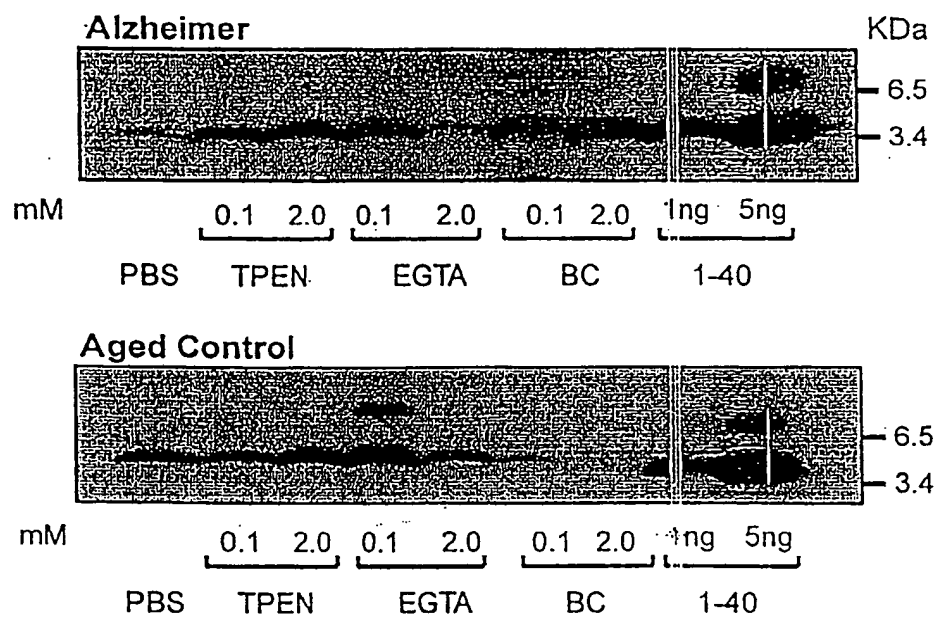


Fig. 29A

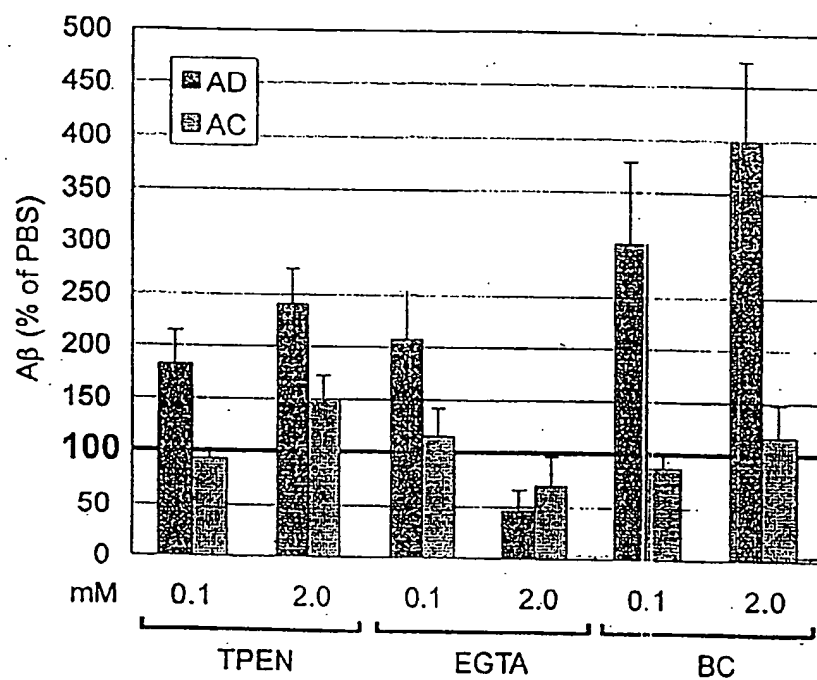


Fig. 29B

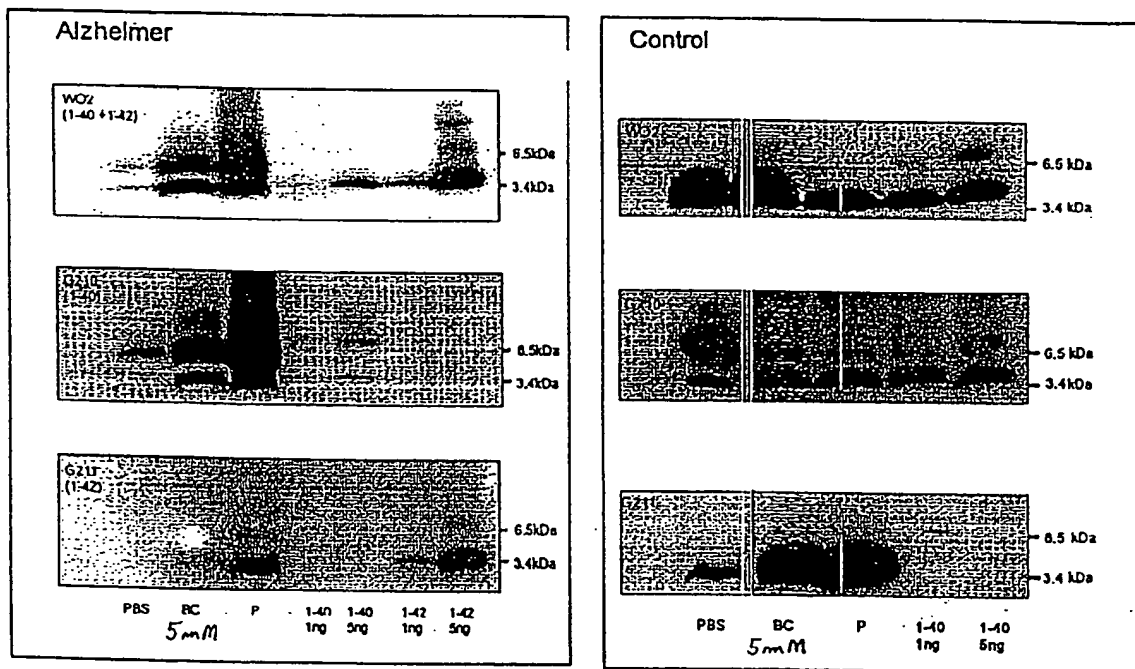


Fig. 30

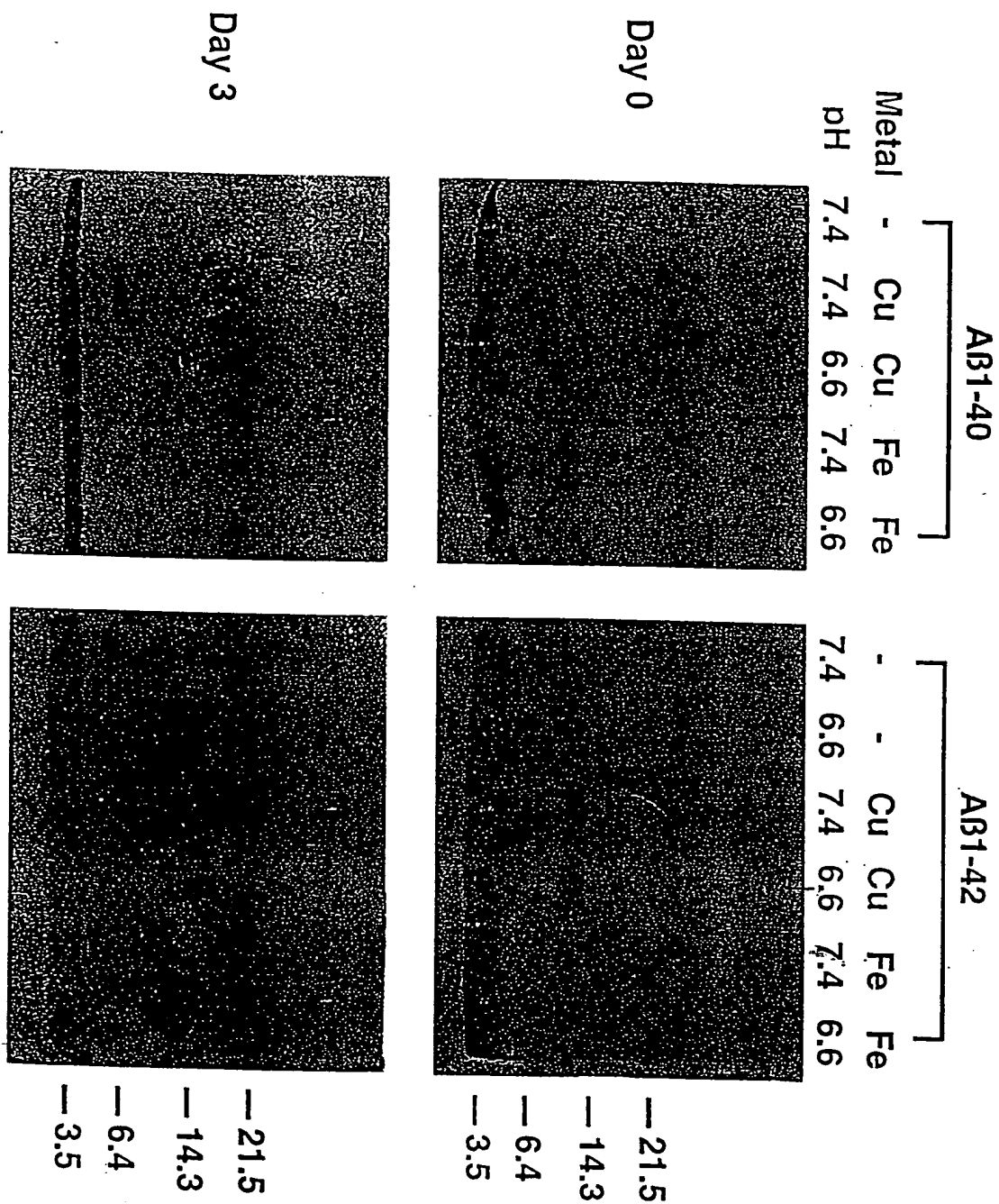


Fig. 31A

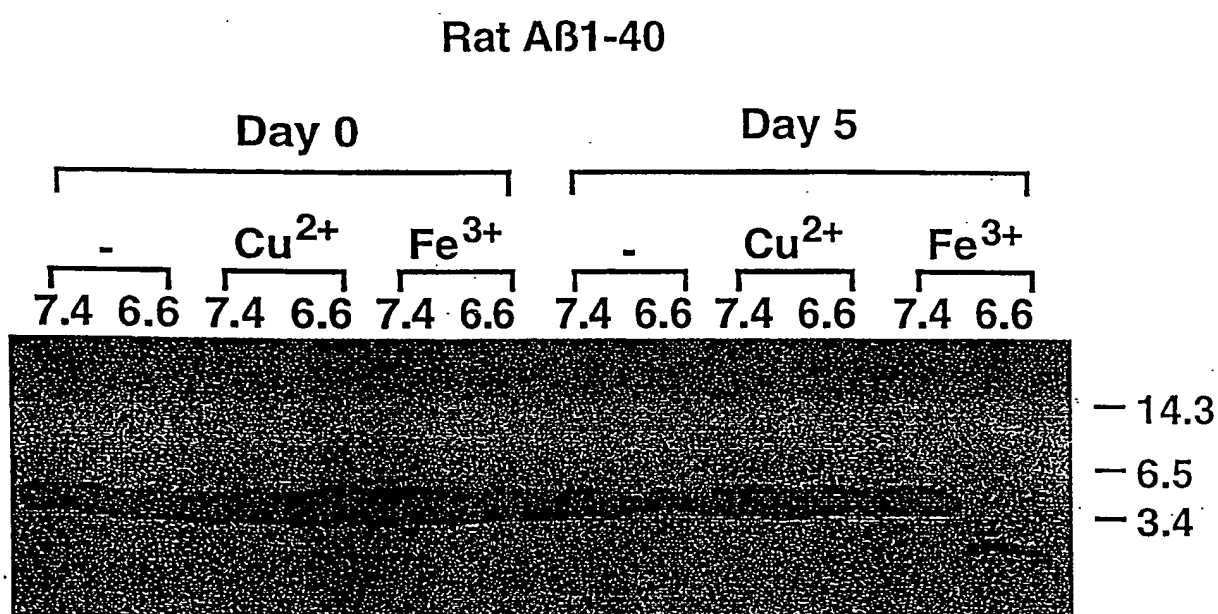


Fig. 31B

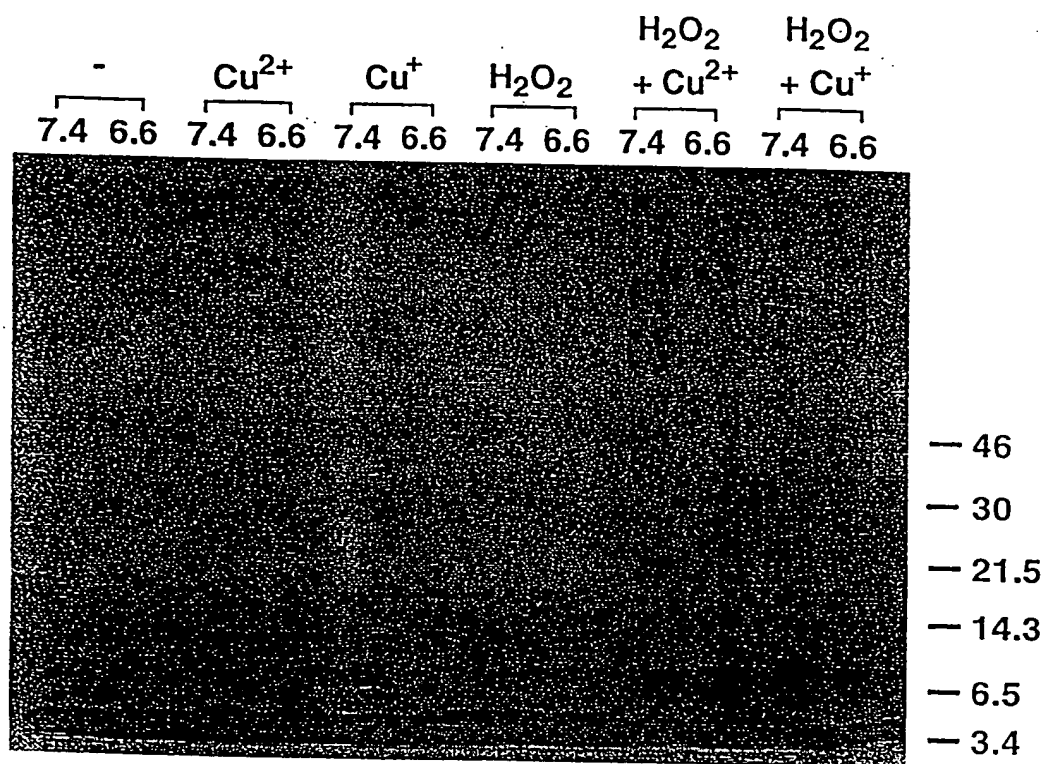


Fig. 32A

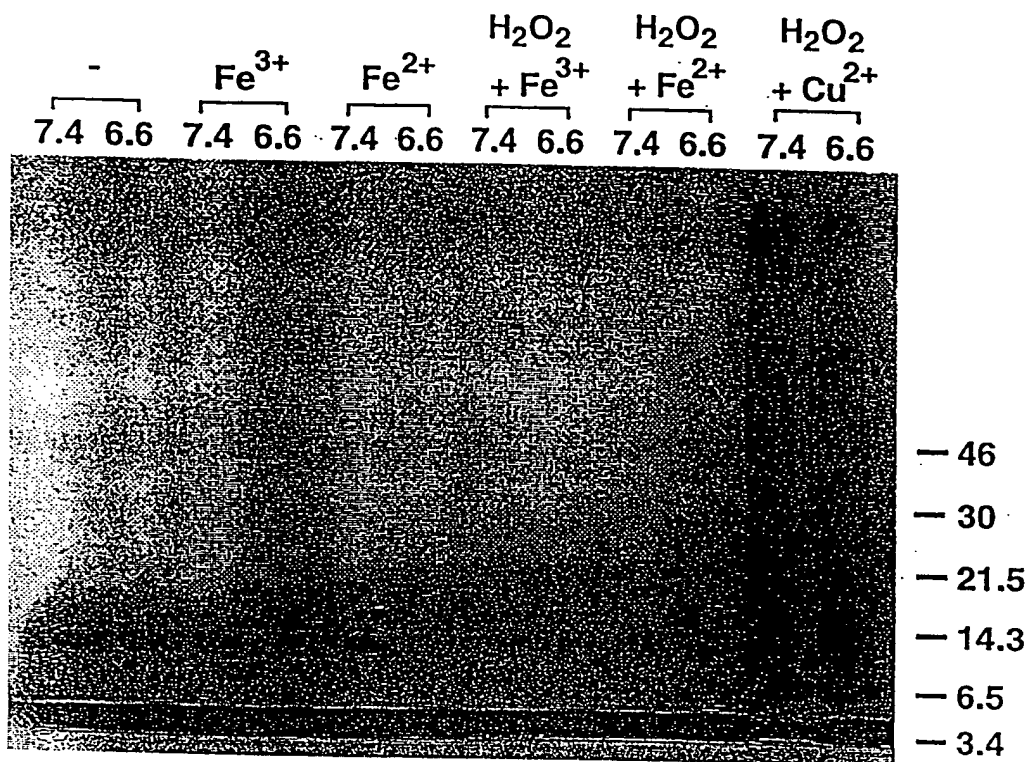


Fig. 32B



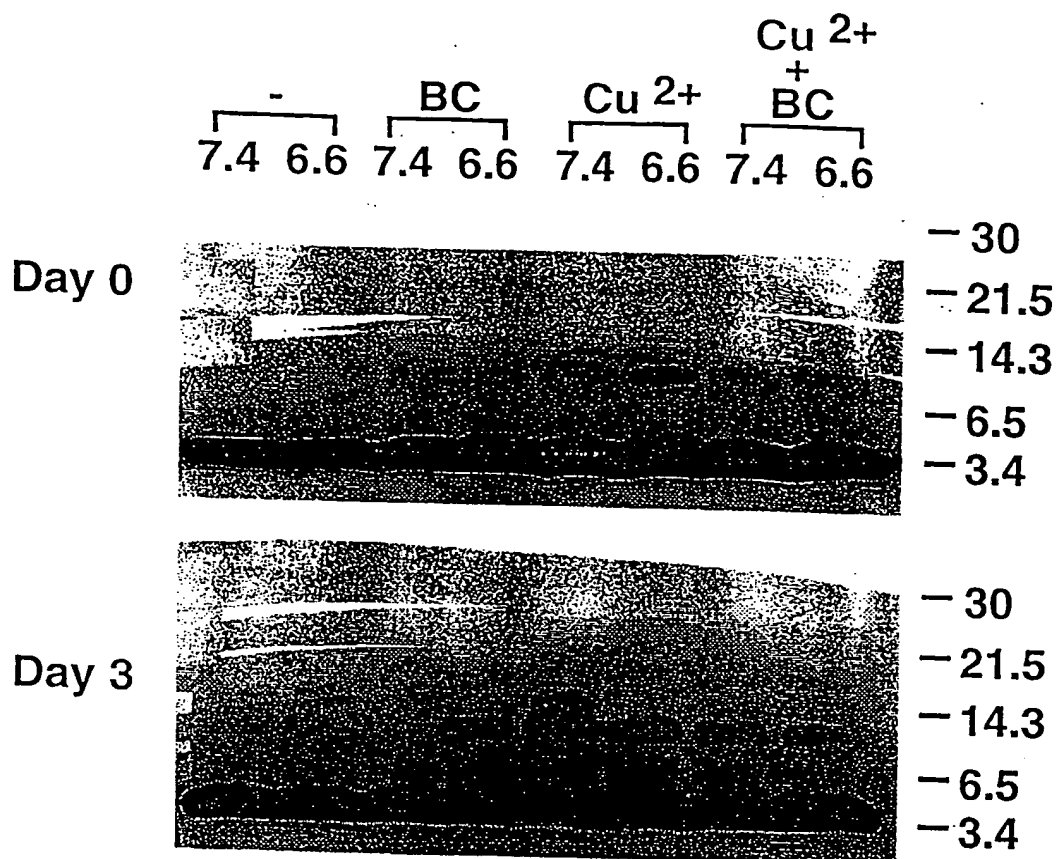


Fig. 32C

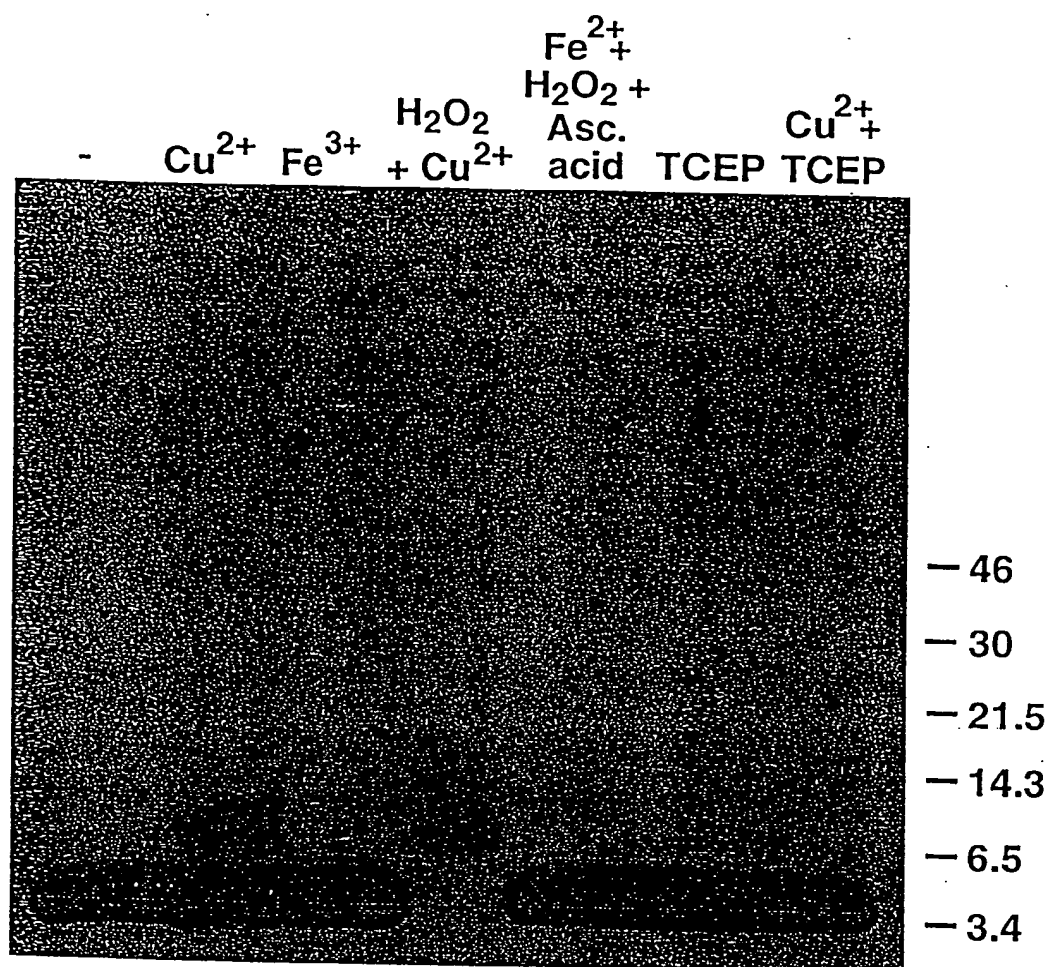


Fig. 33A

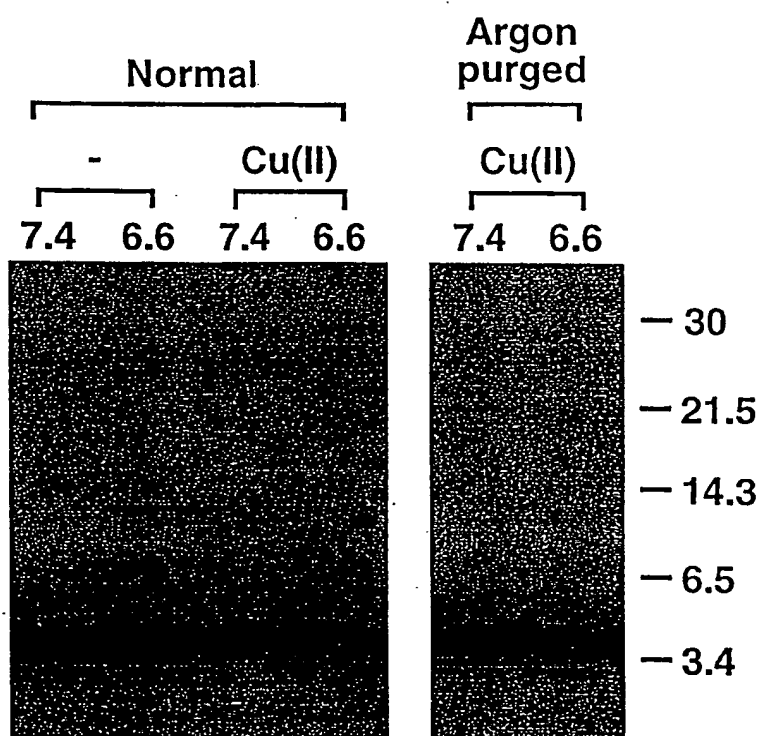


Fig. 33B

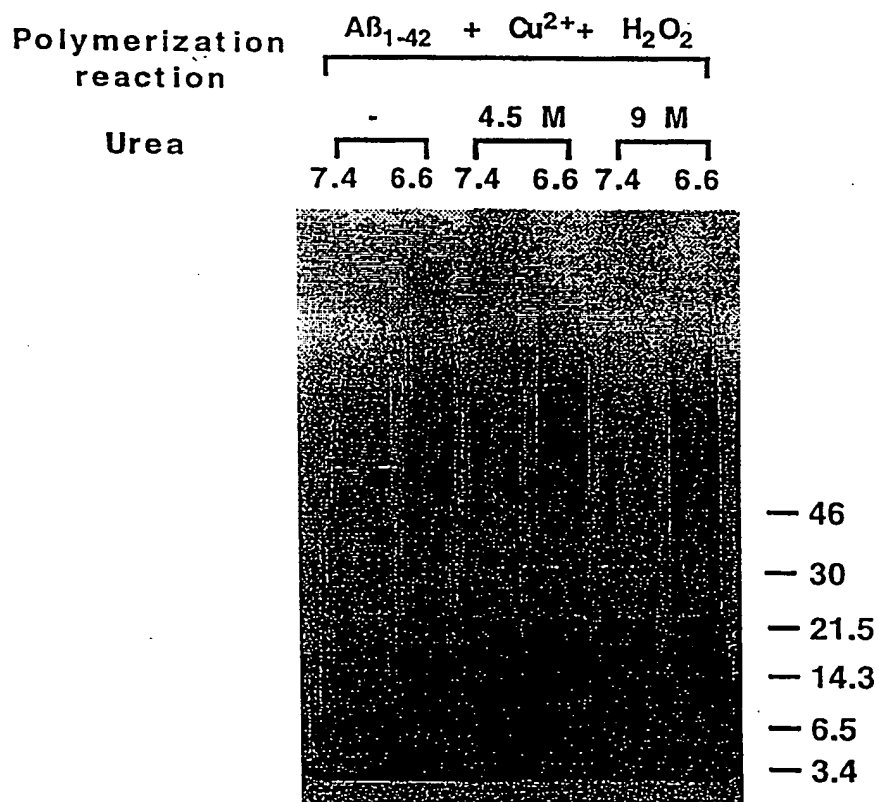
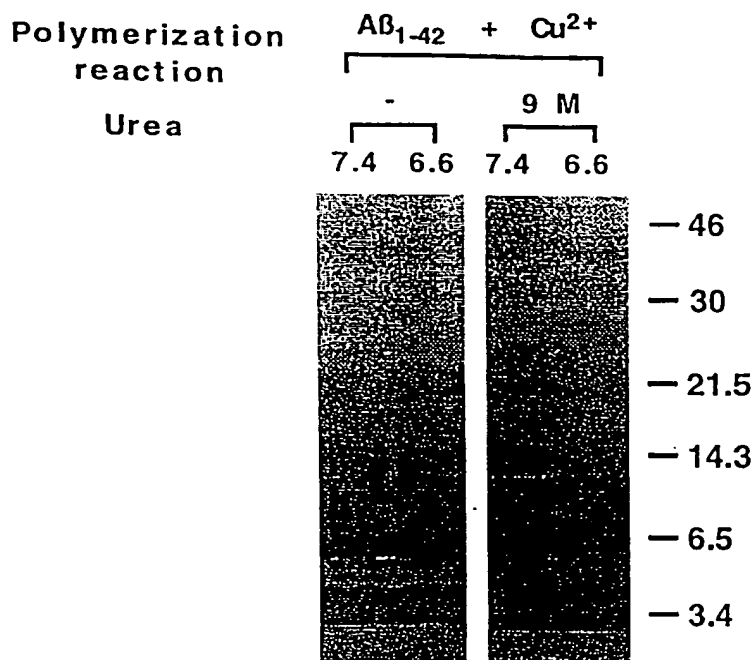


Fig. 34A

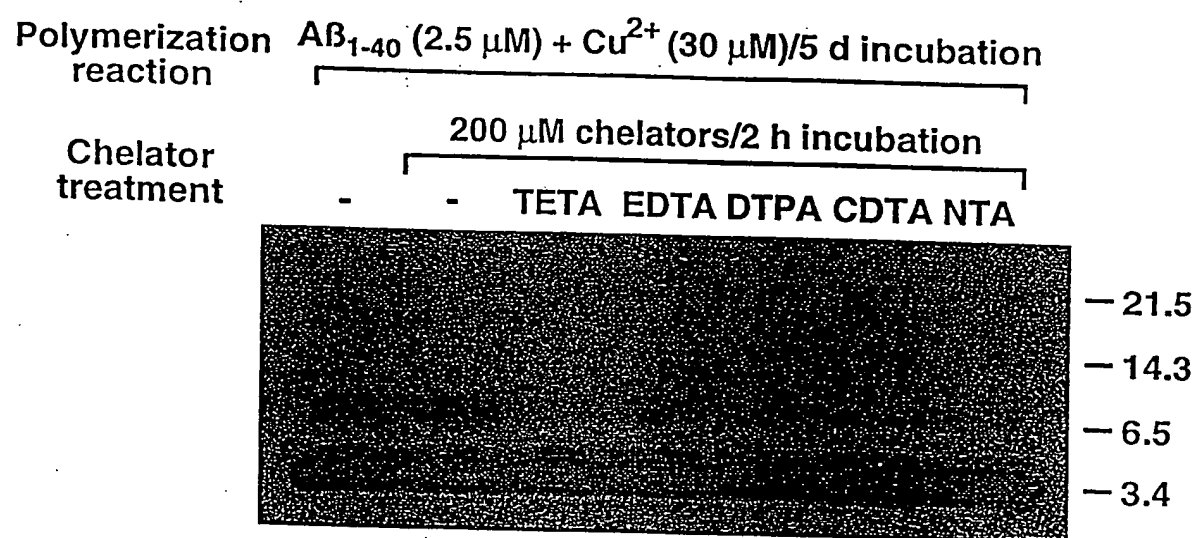


Fig. 34B

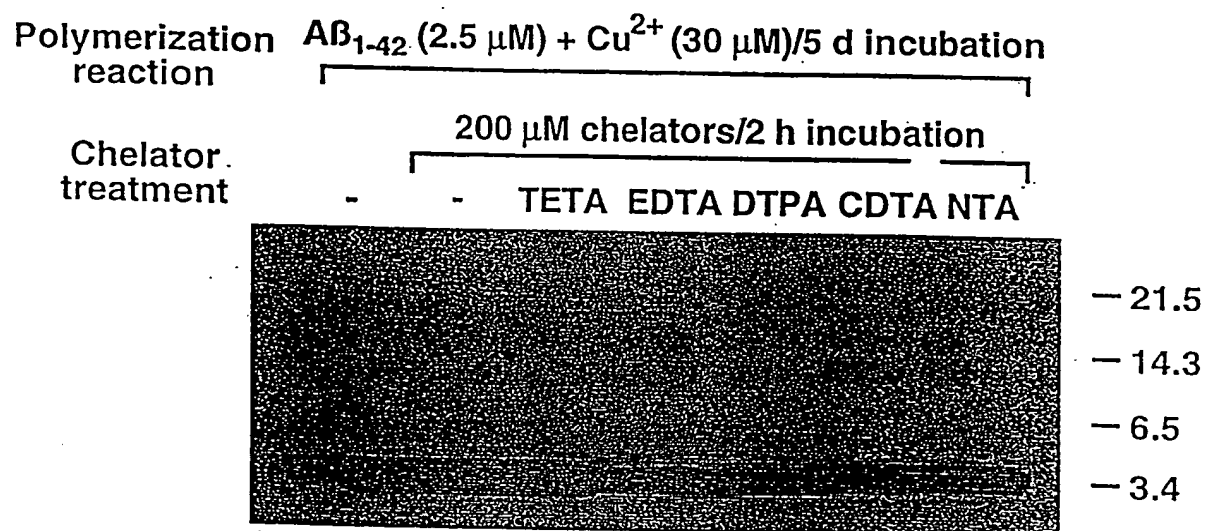


Fig. 34C

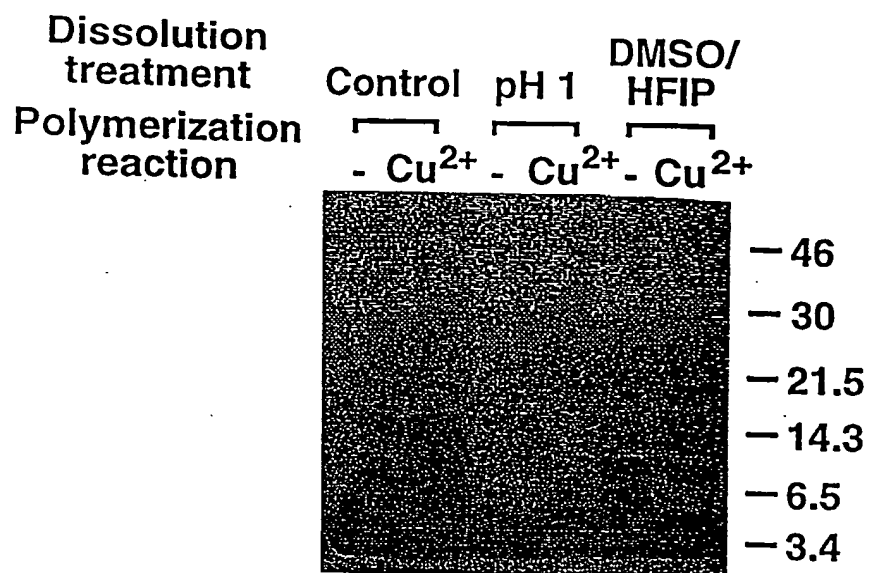


Fig. 34D

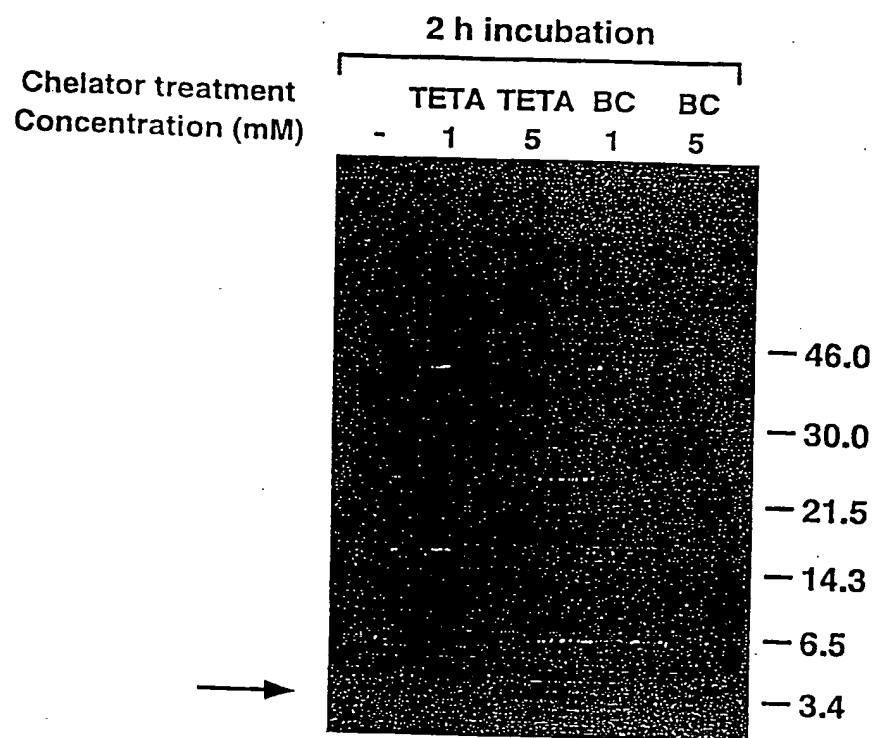


Fig. 34E



PCT

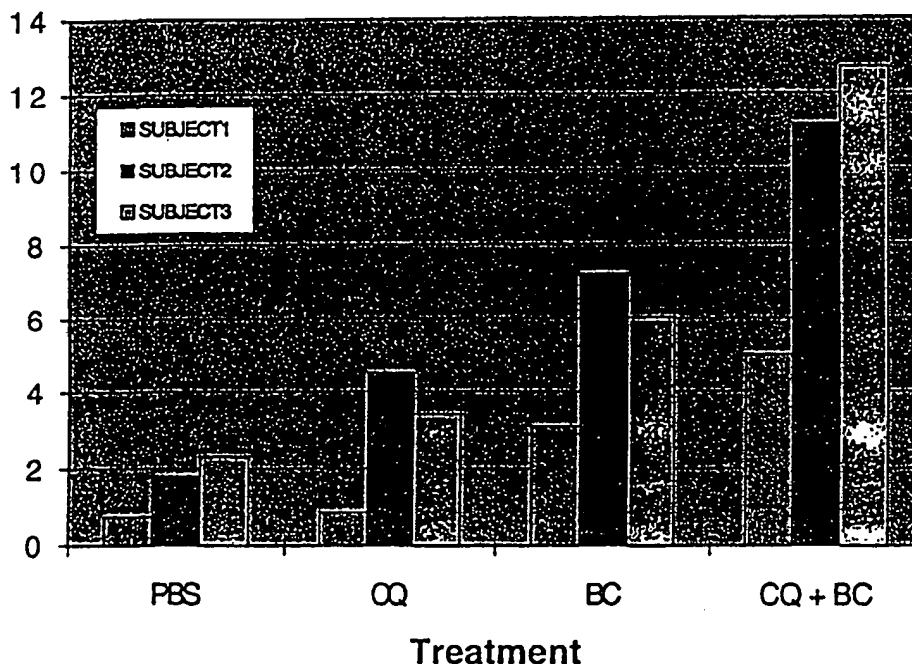
WORLD INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY ORGANIZATION  
International Bureau



INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

(51) International Patent Classification <sup>6</sup> : <b>A61K 31/47</b>		<b>A3</b>	(11) International Publication Number: <b>WO 99/45907</b>
			(43) International Publication Date: 16 September 1999 (16.09.99)
(21) International Application Number: PCT/US99/05291 (22) International Filing Date: 11 March 1999 (11.03.99) (30) Priority Data: 09/038,154          11 March 1998 (11.03.98)          US (71) Applicant: THE GENERAL HOSPITAL CORPORATION [US/US]; Fruit Street, Boston, MA 02114 (US). (72) Inventors: BUSH, Ashley, L.; 91 Summer Street #3, Somerville, MA 02143 (US). HUANG, Xudong; Apartment 10L, 402 Range Avenue, Cambridge, MA 02140 (US). ATWOOD, Craig, S.; 19 Aldersey Street, #3, Somerville, MA 02143 (US). TANZI, Rudolph, E.; 25 Strawberry Lane, Canton, MA 02021 (US). (74) Agents: GOLDSTEIN, Jorge, A. et al.; Sterne, Kessler, Goldstein & Fox P.L.L.C., Suite 600, 1100 New York Avenue, N.W., Washington, DC 20005-3934 (US).		(81) Designated States: AE, AL, AM, AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BR, BY, CA, CH, CN, CU, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, GB, GD, GE, GH, GM, HR, HU, ID, IL, IN, IS, JP, KE, KG, KP, KR, KZ, LC, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LV, MD, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, NO, NZ, PL, PT, RO, RU, SD, SE, SG, SI, SK, SL, TJ, TM, TR, TT, UA, UG, UZ, VN, YU, ZW, ARIPO patent (GH, GM, KE, LS, MW, SD, SL, SZ, UG, ZW), Eurasian patent (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European patent (AT, BE, CH, CY, DE, DK, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, GW, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).  Published <i>With international search report.</i> <i>Before the expiration of the time limit for amending the claims and to be republished in the event of the receipt of amendments.</i>	
		(88) Date of publication of the international search report: 6 April 2000 (06.04.00)	

(54) Title: METAL CHELATORS FOR USE IN THE TREATMENT OF ALZHEIMER'S DISEASE



(57) Abstract

The invention relates to the identification of pharmacological agents to be used in the treatment of Alzheimer's disease and related pathological conditions and compositions for treatment of conditions caused by amyloidosis, A $\beta$ -mediated formation of ROS, or both, such as Alzheimer's disease, are disclosed.

**FOR THE PURPOSES OF INFORMATION ONLY**

Codes used to identify States party to the PCT on the front pages of pamphlets publishing international applications under the PCT.

AL	Albania	ES	Spain	LS	Lesotho	SI	Slovenia
AM	Armenia	FI	Finland	LT	Lithuania	SK	Slovakia
AT	Austria	FR	France	LU	Luxembourg	SN	Senegal
AU	Australia	GA	Gabon	LV	Latvia	SZ	Swaziland
AZ	Azerbaijan	GB	United Kingdom	MC	Monaco	TD	Chad
BA	Bosnia and Herzegovina	GE	Georgia	MD	Republic of Moldova	TG	Togo
BB	Barbados	GH	Ghana	MG	Madagascar	TJ	Tajikistan
BE	Belgium	GN	Guinea	MK	The former Yugoslav Republic of Macedonia	TM	Turkmenistan
BF	Burkina Faso	GR	Greece	ML	Mali	TR	Turkey
BG	Bulgaria	HU	Hungary	MN	Mongolia	TT	Trinidad and Tobago
BJ	Benin	IE	Ireland	MR	Mauritania	UA	Ukraine
BR	Brazil	IL	Israel	MW	Malawi	UG	Uganda
BY	Belarus	IS	Iceland	MX	Mexico	US	United States of America
CA	Canada	IT	Italy	NE	Niger	UZ	Uzbekistan
CF	Central African Republic	JP	Japan	NL	Netherlands	VN	Viet Nam
CG	Congo	KE	Kenya	NO	Norway	YU	Yugoslavia
CH	Switzerland	KG	Kyrgyzstan	NZ	New Zealand	ZW	Zimbabwe
CI	Côte d'Ivoire	KP	Democratic People's Republic of Korea	PL	Poland		
CM	Cameroon	KR	Republic of Korea	PT	Portugal		
CN	China	KZ	Kazakhstan	RO	Romania		
CU	Cuba	LC	Saint Lucia	RU	Russian Federation		
CZ	Czech Republic	LI	Liechtenstein	SD	Sudan		
DE	Germany	LK	Sri Lanka	SE	Sweden		
DK	Denmark	LR	Liberia	SG	Singapore		
EE	Estonia						

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

1. National Application No  
PCT/US 99/05291

A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER  
IPC 6 A61K31/47

According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC

## B. FIELDS SEARCHED

Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols)  
IPC 6 A61K

Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched

Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practical, search terms used)

## C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
P, X	WO 99 09981 A (GEROLYMATOS P) 4 March 1999 (1999-03-04)  the whole document	1-12, 16-27, 31-42, 46-54
X	WO 98 06403 A (GEROLYMATOS P) 19 February 1998 (1998-02-19)  page 1-5; claims 1-4 page 6, line 31 -page 7, line 7	1, 3, 4, 16, 18, 19, 31, 33, 34, 40, 41
X	WO 93 10459 A (UNIV MELBOURNE) 27 May 1993 (1993-05-27) page 6, paragraph 2 -page 9, paragraph 1; claims 15-19	40, 41

-/--

☒ Further documents are listed in the continuation of box C.

☒ Patent family members are listed in annex.

### Special categories of cited documents:

- "A" document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance
- "E" earlier document but published on or after the international filing date
- "L" document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)
- "O" document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means
- "P" document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed

- "T" later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention
- "X" document of particular relevance: the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone
- "Y" document of particular relevance: the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art.
- "&" document member of the same patent family

Date of the actual completion of the international search

7 February 2000

Date of mailing of the international search report

21.02.00

Name and mailing address of the ISA

European Patent Office, P.B. 5818 Patentlaan 2  
NL - 2280 HV Rijswijk  
Tel. (+31-70) 340-2040, Tx 31 651 eoo nl  
Fax (+31-70) 340-3016

Authorized officer

Kanbier, D

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International Application No  
PCT/US 99/05291

## C.(Continuation) DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category *	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
X	WO 94 04167 A (US GOVERNMENT) 3 March 1994 (1994-03-03) page 16, line 6-9; claims 1-3,24 ---	40-42
X	US 5 688 516 A (RAAD ISAAM ET AL) 18 November 1997 (1997-11-18) claims ---	40,41
X	MULTHAUP ET AL: "The Amyloid Precursor Protein of Alzheimer's Disease in the Reduction of Copper(II) to Copper(I)" SCIENCE, vol. 271, 8 March 1996 (1996-03-08), pages 1406-1409, XP002117957 page 1407, left-hand column, paragraph 2; figure 1A ---	40-42
A	SAYRE: "Alzheimer's Precursor Protein and the Use of Bathocuproine for Determining Reduction of Copper(II)" SCIENCE, vol. 274, no. 5294, 1996, pages 1933-1934, XP002117958 the whole document ---	40-42
A	BACON ET AL: "Rheumatoid Disease, Amyloidosis and its Treatment with Penicillamine" EUR J RHEUM INFLAMM, vol. 2, 1979, page 70 XP002117959 page 72; table 3 ---	1,6
A	WO 97 09976 A (WASHINGTON UNIVERSITY) 20 March 1997 (1997-03-20)  page 2, line 23-26; claims 1-4 ---	1-12, 16-27, 31-42, 46-54
P,X	WO 98 40071 A (GEN HOSPITAL CORP) 17 September 1998 (1998-09-17) the whole document ---	40-42
X	US 5 357 636 A (DANGMAN KENNETH H ET AL) 25 October 1994 (1994-10-25) column 51, line 61 -column 52, line 19; claim 5; example 15 ---	43,45, 55,57
A	NAKADA T ET AL: "Guanidinoethane sulfate: brain pH alkaline shifter." NEUROREPORT, (1993 AUG) 4 (8) 1035-8. , XP000869849 page 1037, right-hand column -page 1038, right-hand column ---	13,28, 43,55
	-/--	

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Inte. onal Application No  
PCT/US 99/05291

## C.(Continuation) DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category *	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
A	<p>SCHRADER-FISCHER, GESINE ET AL: "Effect of alkalizing agents on the processing of the beta.- amyloid precursor protein" BRAIN RES. (1996), 716(1,2), 91-100 , XP000869889 the whole document -----</p>	<p>13,28, 43,55</p>

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.  
PCT/US 99/05291

## Box I Observations where certain claims were found unsearchable (Continuation of Item 1 of first sheet)

This International Search Report has not been established in respect of certain claims under Article 17(2)(a) for the following reasons:

1. ☒ Claims Nos.:  
because they relate to subject matter not required to be searched by this Authority, namely:  
  
Although claims 1-57 are directed to a method of treatment of the human/animal body, the search has been carried out and based on the alleged effects of the compound/composition.
2. ☒ Claims Nos.:  
because they relate to parts of the International Application that do not comply with the prescribed requirements to such an extent that no meaningful International Search can be carried out, specifically:  
  
see FURTHER INFORMATION sheet PCT/ISA/210
3. ☐ Claims Nos.:  
because they are dependent claims and are not drafted in accordance with the second and third sentences of Rule 6.4(a).

## Box II Observations where unity of invention is lacking (Continuation of Item 2 of first sheet)

This International Searching Authority found multiple inventions in this international application, as follows:

see additional sheet

1. ☒ As all required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant, this International Search Report covers all searchable claims.
2. ☐ As all searchable claims could be searched without effort justifying an additional fee, this Authority did not invite payment of any additional fee.
3. ☐ As only some of the required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant, this International Search Report covers only those claims for which fees were paid, specifically claims Nos.:
4. ☐ No required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant. Consequently, this International Search Report is restricted to the invention first mentioned in the claims; it is covered by claims Nos.:

### Remark on Protest

- ☐ The additional search fees were accompanied by the applicant's protest.
- ☒ No protest accompanied the payment of additional search fees.

## INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International Application No. PCT/US 99/05291

FURTHER INFORMATION CONTINUED FROM PCT/ISA/ 210

This International Searching Authority found multiple (groups of) inventions in this international application, as follows:

1. Claims: 1-12, 16-27, 31-42, 46-54

Compositions and treatment for amyloidosis, acting by interfering in the generation of free radicals, comprising clioquinol and a metal chelator selected from the group defined in claim 1; and compositions and treatment for amyloidosis, acting by interfering in the generation of free radicals, comprising a single copper-specific metal chelator.

2. Claims: 13-15, 28-30, 55-57, 43-45

Compositions and treatment for amyloidosis, acting by interfering in the generation of free radicals, comprising clioquinol and an alkalinizing agent.

## INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International Application No. PCT/US 99/05291

FURTHER INFORMATION CONTINUED FROM PCT/ISA/ 210

### Continuation of Box I.2

Present claims 31, 36, 40 and 43 lack clarity (Article 6 PCT): The expression "conditions caused by amyloidosis and/or A-Beta-mediated ROS formation" in these claims does not represent a clear and concise description of a therapeutic application, since it is not immediately and exhaustively apparent which conditions are comprised therein. This lack of clarity in the present case is such as to render a meaningful search over the whole of the claimed scope impossible. Consequently, the search has been carried out for those parts of the claims which appear to be clear, supported and disclosed, namely those parts relating to the methods and compositions for the treatment of conditions as defined in claims 1-30, 32-35, 37-39, 41, 42 and 44-57, as well as the examples.

The applicant's attention is drawn to the fact that claims, or parts of claims, relating to inventions in respect of which no international search report has been established need not be the subject of an international preliminary examination (Rule 66.1(e) PCT). The applicant is advised that the EPO policy when acting as an International Preliminary Examining Authority is normally not to carry out a preliminary examination on matter which has not been searched. This is the case irrespective of whether or not the claims are amended following receipt of the search report or during any Chapter II procedure.



# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Information on patent family members

International Application No

PCT/US 99/05291

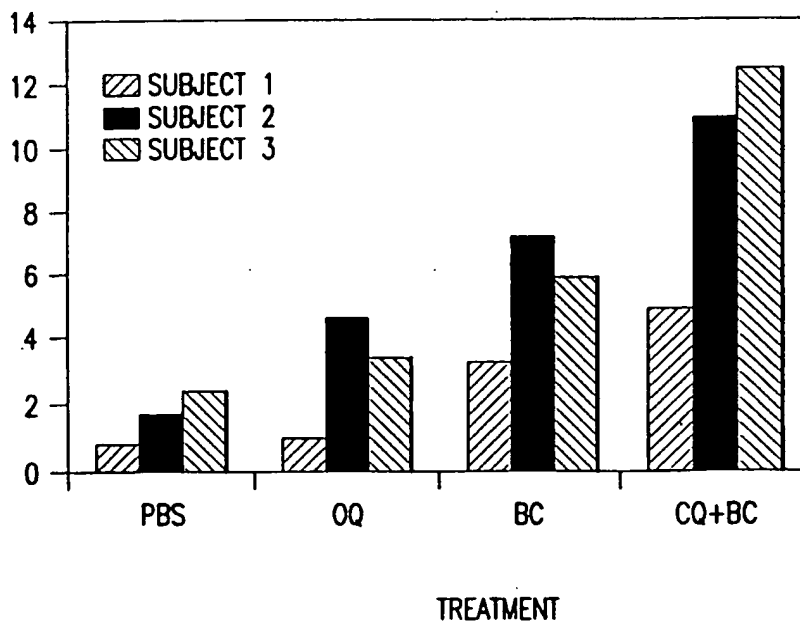
Patent document cited in search report	Publication date	Patent family member(s)	Publication date
WO 9909981 A	04-03-1999	AU 8124198 A AU 1502799 A WO 9934807 A US 5994323 A	16-03-1999 26-07-1999 15-07-1999 30-11-1999
WO 9806403 A	19-02-1998	AU 3632497 A CN 1230115 A CZ 9900484 A EP 0959888 A NO 990595 A PL 331822 A US 6001852 A	06-03-1998 29-09-1999 14-07-1999 01-12-1999 12-04-1999 02-08-1999 14-12-1999
WO 9310459 A	27-05-1993	AU 669493 B AU 2926392 A CA 2123211 A DE 69227380 D DE 69227380 T EP 0613560 A JP 7503316 T US 5705401 A	13-06-1996 15-06-1993 27-05-1993 26-11-1998 08-04-1999 07-09-1994 06-04-1995 06-01-1998
WO 9404167 A	03-03-1994	AU 2507992 A	15-03-1994
US 5688516 A	18-11-1997	US 5362754 A AU 673400 B AU 5600394 A CA 2148942 A EP 0668720 A JP 8503400 T WO 9410838 A	08-11-1994 07-11-1996 08-06-1994 26-05-1994 30-08-1995 16-04-1996 26-05-1994
WO 9709976 A	20-03-1997	AU 6887996 A	01-04-1997
WO 9840071 A	17-09-1998	AU 6548498 A	29-09-1998
US 5357636 A	25-10-1994	NONE	



## INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

(51) International Patent Classification <sup>6</sup> : <b>A61K 31/47</b>		<b>A3</b>	(11) International Publication Number: <b>WO 99/45907</b>
			(43) International Publication Date: 16 September 1999 (16.09.99)
(21) International Application Number: <b>PCT/US99/05291</b>		(81) Designated States: AE, AL, AM, AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BR, BY, CA, CH, CN, CU, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, GB, GD, GE, GH, GM, HR, HU, ID, IL, IN, IS, JP, KE, KG, KP, KR, KZ, LC, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LV, MD, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, NO, NZ, PL, PT, RO, RU, SD, SE, SG, SI, SK, SL, TJ, TM, TR, TT, UA, UG, UZ, VN, YU, ZW, ARIPO patent (GH, GM, KE, LS, MW, SD, SL, SZ, UG, ZW), Eurasian patent (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European patent (AT, BE, CH, CY, DE, DK, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, GW, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).	
(22) International Filing Date: 11 March 1999 (11.03.99)		<p><b>Published</b>  <i>With international search report.</i>  <i>Before the expiration of the time limit for amending the claims and to be republished in the event of the receipt of amendments.</i></p>	
(30) Priority Data: 09/038,154 11 March 1998 (11.03.98) US			
(71) Applicant: THE GENERAL HOSPITAL CORPORATION [US/US]; Fruit Street, Boston, MA 02114 (US).			
(72) Inventors: BUSH, Ashley, L.; 91 Summer Street #3, Somerville, MA 02143 (US). HUANG, Xudong; Apartment 10L, 402 Range Avenue, Cambridge, MA 02140 (US). ATWOOD, Craig, S.; 19 Aldersey Street, #3, Somerville, MA 02143 (US). TANZI, Rudolph, E.; 25 Strawberry Lane, Canton, MA 02021 (US).			
(74) Agents: GOLDSTEIN, Jorge, A. et al.; Sterne, Kessler, Goldstein & Fox P.L.L.C., Suite 600, 1100 New York Avenue, N.W., Washington, DC 20005-3934 (US).		(88) Date of publication of the international search report: 6 April 2000 (06.04.00)	

(54) Title: METAL CHELATORS FOR USE IN THE TREATMENT OF ALZHEIMER'S DISEASE



## (57) Abstract

The invention relates to the identification of pharmacological agents to be used in the treatment of Alzheimer's disease and related pathological conditions and compositions for treatment of conditions caused by amyloidosis, A $\beta$ -mediated formation of ROS, or both, such as Alzheimer's disease, are disclosed.

**FOR THE PURPOSES OF INFORMATION ONLY**

Codes used to identify States party to the PCT on the front pages of pamphlets publishing international applications under the PCT.

AL	Albania	ES	Spain	LS	Lesotho	SI	Slovenia
AM	Armenia	FI	Finland	LT	Lithuania	SK	Slovakia
AT	Austria	FR	France	LU	Luxembourg	SN	Senegal
AU	Australia	GA	Gabon	LV	Latvia	SZ	Swaziland
AZ	Azerbaijan	GB	United Kingdom	MC	Monaco	TD	Chad
BA	Bosnia and Herzegovina	GE	Georgia	MD	Republic of Moldova	TG	Togo
BB	Barbados	GH	Ghana	MG	Madagascar	TJ	Tajikistan
BE	Belgium	GN	Guinea	MK	The former Yugoslav Republic of Macedonia	TM	Turkmenistan
BF	Burkina Faso	GR	Greece			TR	Turkey
BG	Bulgaria	HU	Hungary	ML	Mali	TT	Trinidad and Tobago
BJ	Benin	IE	Ireland	MN	Mongolia	UA	Ukraine
BR	Brazil	IL	Israel	MR	Mauritania	UG	Uganda
BY	Belarus	IS	Iceland	MW	Malawi	US	United States of America
CA	Canada	IT	Italy	MX	Mexico	UZ	Uzbekistan
CF	Central African Republic	JP	Japan	NE	Niger	VN	Viet Nam
CG	Congo	KE	Kenya	NL	Netherlands	YU	Yugoslavia
CH	Switzerland	KG	Kyrgyzstan	NO	Norway	ZW	Zimbabwe
CI	Côte d'Ivoire	KP	Democratic People's Republic of Korea	NZ	New Zealand		
CM	Cameroon			PL	Poland		
CN	China	KR	Republic of Korea	PT	Portugal		
CU	Cuba	KZ	Kazakhstan	RO	Romania		
CZ	Czech Republic	LC	Saint Lucia	RU	Russian Federation		
DE	Germany	LI	Liechtenstein	SD	Sudan		
DK	Denmark	LK	Sri Lanka	SE	Sweden		
EE	Estonia	LR	Liberia	SG	Singapore		

## METAL CHELATORS FOR USE IN THE TREATMENT OF ALZHEIMER'S DISEASE

*Background of the Invention**Statement as to Rights to Inventions Made Under Federally-Sponsored Research and Development*

5           Part of the work performed during the development of this invention utilized U.S. Government Funds under Grant No. R29AG12686 from the National Institutes of Health. The government may have certain rights in this invention.

*Field of the Invention*

10           This invention is in the field of medicinal chemistry. In particular, the invention is related to compositions for treatment of Alzheimer's disease.

*Related Art*

15           Polymers of Abeta ( $A\beta$ ), the 4.3 kD, 39-43 amino acid peptide product of the transmembrane protein, amyloid protein precursor (APP), are the main components extracted from the neuritic and vascular amyloid of Alzheimer's disease (AD) brains.  $A\beta$  deposits are usually most concentrated in regions of high neuronal cell death, and may be present in various morphologies, including amorphous deposits, neurophil plaque amyloid, and amyloid congophilic angiopathy (Masters, C.L., *et al.*, *EMBO J.* 4:2757 (1985); Masters, C.L. *et al.*,  
20           *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 82: 4245 (1985)). Growing evidence suggests that amyloid deposits are intimately associated with the neuronal demise that leads to dementia in the disorder.

25           The presence of an enrichment of the 42 residue species of  $A\beta$  in these deposits suggests that this species is more pathogenic. The 42 residue form of  $A\beta$  ( $A\beta_{1-42}$ ), while a minor component of biological fluids, is highly enriched in

- 2 -

amyloid, and genetic studies strongly implicate this protein in the etiopathogenesis of AD. Amyloid deposits are decorated with inflammatory response proteins, but biochemical markers of severe oxidative stress such as peroxidation adducts, advanced glycation end-products, and protein cross-linking are seen in proximity to the lesions. To date, the cause of A $\beta$  deposits is unknown, although it is believed that preventing these deposits may be a means of treating the disorder.

When polymers of A $\beta$  are placed into culture with rat hippocampal neurons, they are neurotoxic (Kuo, Y-M., *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 271:4077-81 (1996); Roher, A.E., *et al.*, *Journal of Biological Chemistry* 271:20631-20635 (1996)). The mechanism underlying the formation of these neurotoxic polymeric A $\beta$  species remains unresolved. The overexpression of A $\beta$  alone cannot sufficiently explain amyloid formation, since the concentration of A $\beta$  required for precipitation is not physiologically plausible. That alterations in the neurochemical environment are required for amyloid formation is indicated by its solubility in neural phosphate buffer at concentrations of up to 16 mg/ml (Tomski, S. & Murphy, R.M., *Archives of Biochemistry and Biophysics* 294:630 (1992)), biological fluids such as cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) (Shoji, M., *et al.*, *Science* 258:126 (1992); Golde, T.E., *et al.* *Science*, 255(5045):728-730 (1992); Seubert, P., *et al.*, *Nature* 359:325 (1992); Haass, C., *et al.*, *Nature* 359:322 (1992)) and in the plaque-free brains of Down's syndrome patients (Teller, J.K., *et al.*, *Nature Medicine* 2:93-95 (1996)).

Studies into the neurochemical vulnerability of A $\beta$  to form amyloid have suggested altered zinc and [H<sup>+</sup>] homeostasis as the most likely explanations for amyloid deposition. A $\beta$  is rapidly precipitated under mildly acidic conditions *in vitro* (pH 3.5-6.5) (Barrow, C.J. & Zagorski, M.G., *Science* 253:179-182 (1991); Fraser, P.E., *et al.*, *Biophys. J.* 60:1190-1201 (1991); Barrow, C.J., *et al.*, *J. Mol. Biol.* 225:1075-1093 (1992); Burdick, D., *J. Biol. Chem.* 267:546-554 (1992); Zagorski, M.G. & Barrow, C.J., *Biochemistry* 31:5621-5631 (1992); Kirshenbaum, K. & Daggett, V., *Biochemistry* 34:7629-7639 (1995); Wood, S.J.,

- 3 -

*et al.*, *J. Mol. Biol.* 256:870-877 (1996)). Recently, it has been shown that the presence of certain biometals, in particular redox inactive  $Zn^{2+}$  and, to a lesser extent, redox active  $Cu^{2+}$  and  $Fe^{3+}$ , markedly increases the precipitation of soluble  $A\beta$  (Bush, A.I., *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 268:16109 (1993); Bush, A.I., *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 269:12152 (1994); Bush, A.I., *et al.*, *Science* 265:1464 (1994); Bush, A.I., *et al.*, *Science* 268:1921 (1995)). At physiological pH,  $A\beta_{1-40}$  specifically and saturably binds  $Zn^{2+}$ , manifesting high affinity binding ( $K_D = 107$  nM) with a 1:1 ( $Zn^{2+}:A\beta$ ) stoichiometry, and low affinity binding ( $K_D = 5.2$   $\mu$ M) with a 2:1 stoichiometry.

The reduction by APP of copper (II) to copper (I) may lead to irreversible  $A\beta$  aggregation and SDS-resistant polymerization. This reaction may promote an environment that would enhance the production of hydroxyl radicals, which may contribute to oxidative stress in AD (Multhaup, G., *et al.*, *Science* 271:1406-1409 (1996)). A precedence for abnormal Cu metabolism already exists in the neurodegenerative disorders of Wilson's disease, Menkes' syndrome and possibly familial amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (Tanzi, R.E. *et al.*, *Nature Genetics* 5:344 (1993); Bull, P.C., *et al.*, *Nature Genetics* 5:327 (1993); Vulpe, C., *et al.*, *Nature Genetics* 3:7 (1993); Yamaguchi, Y., *et al.*, *Biochem. Biophys. Res. Commun.* 197:271 (1993); Chelly, J., *et al.*, *Nature Genetics* 3:14 (1993); Wang, D. & Munoz, D.G., *J. Neuropathol. Exp. Neurol.* 54:548 (1995); Beckman, J.S., *et al.*, *Nature* 364:584 (1993); Hartmann, H.A. & Evenson, M.A., *Med. Hypotheses* 38:75 (1992)).

Although much fundamental pathology, genetic susceptibility and biology associated with AD is becoming clearer, a rational chemical and structural basis for developing effective drugs to prevent or cure the disease remains elusive. While the genetics of the disorder indicates that the metabolism of  $A\beta$  is intimately associated with the etiopathogenesis of the disease, drugs for the treatment of AD have so far focused on "cognition enhancers" which do not address the underlying disease processes.

### *Summary of the Invention*

An aspect of the present invention contemplates a method for treating Alzheimer's disease (AD) in a subject, said method comprising administering to said subject an effective amount of an agent which is capable of inhibiting or otherwise reducing metal-mediated production of free radicals.

The present invention provides a method for treating AD in a subject, said method comprising administering to said subject an effective amount of an agent comprising a metal chelator and/or a metal complexing compound for a time and under conditions sufficient to inhibit or otherwise reduce metal-mediated production of free radicals by A $\beta$ .

In one aspect, the free radicals are reactive oxygen species such as O $_2^{\cdot -}$  or OH $\cdot$ . In another aspect, the free radicals include forms of A $\beta$ .

The agent of this aspect of the present invention may contain one or more than one compound such as a metal chelator or metal complexing compound such as but not limited to DTPA, bathocuproine, bathophenanthroline, clioquinol, penicillamine, or derivatives, homologues or analogues thereof. Alternatively, or in addition, the agent may comprise an antioxidant or other molecule capable of interfering with A $\beta$  peptide-mediated radical formation.

One aspect of the present invention comprises an agent for use in treating AD in a subject comprising a metal chelator, metal complexing compound and/or a compound capable of inhibiting free radical formation by interaction of A $\beta$  peptides and biometals, said agent optionally further comprising one or more pharmaceutically acceptable carriers and/or diluents.

In one aspect, the invention relates to a method of treating amyloidosis in a subject, said method comprising administering to said subject a combination of (a) a metal chelator selected from the group consisting of: bathocuproine, bathophenanthroline, DTPA, EDTA, EGTA, penicillamine, TETA, and TPEN, or hydrophobic derivatives thereof; and (b) clioquinol, for a time and under conditions to bring about said treatment; wherein said combination reduces,

inhibits or otherwise interferes with A $\beta$ -mediated production of radical oxygen species.

In a preferred embodiment, the metal chelator is bathocuproine.

In another aspect, said method further comprises administering a  
5 supplement selected from the group consisting of: ammonium salt, calcium salt, magnesium salt, and sodium salt.

In a preferred embodiment, the supplement is magnesium salt.

In another aspect, said method further comprises administering to the  
10 subject an effective amount of a compound selected from the group consisting of: rifampicin, disulfiram, and indomethacin, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

In yet another aspect, the invention relates to a method of treating  
amyloidosis in a subject, said method comprising administering to said subject  
an effective amount of a combination of (a) a salt of a metal chelator, wherein  
15 said chelator is selected from the group consisting of: bathocuproine, bathophenanthroline, DTPA, EDTA, EGTA, penicillamine, TETA, and TPEN, or hydrophobic derivatives thereof, and (b) clioquinol; wherein said salt of the metal chelator is selected from the group consisting of: ammonium, calcium, magnesium, and sodium; and wherein said combination reduces, inhibits or  
20 otherwise interferes with A $\beta$ -mediated production of radical oxygen species.

In a preferred embodiment, the metal chelator is bathocuproine.

In another preferred embodiment, the salt of the metal chelator is a  
magnesium salt.

In another aspect, said method further comprises administering to the  
25 subject an effective amount of a compound selected from the group consisting of: rifampicin, disulfiram, and indomethacin, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

In yet another aspect, the invention relates to a method of treating  
amyloidosis in a subject, said method comprising administering to said subject  
30 an effective amount of a combination of (a) a chelator specific for copper, and (b)



- 6 -

clioquinol; wherein said combination reduces, inhibits or otherwise interferes with A $\beta$ -mediated production of radical oxygen species.

In a preferred embodiment, the chelator specific for copper is specific for the reduced form of copper. Most preferably, the chelator is bathocuproine or a hydrophobic derivative thereof.

In yet another aspect, the invention relates to a method of treating amyloidosis in a subject, said method comprising administering to said subject an effective amount of a combination of (a) an alkalinizing agent and (b) clioquinol; wherein said combination reduces, inhibits or otherwise interferes with A $\beta$ -mediated production of radical oxygen species.

In a preferred embodiment, the alkalinizing agent is magnesium citrate. In another preferred embodiment, the alkalinizing agent is calcium citrate.

Still another aspect of the present invention contemplates a method of treating AD in a subject comprising administering to said subject an agent capable of promoting, inducing or otherwise facilitating resolubilization of A $\beta$  deposits in the brain for a time and under conditions to effect said treatment.

In yet another aspect, the invention relates to a method of treating amyloidosis in a subject, said method comprising administering to said subject a combination of (a) a metal chelator selected from the group consisting of: bathocuproine, bathophenanthroline, DTPA, EDTA, EGTA, penicillamine, TETA, and TPEN, or hydrophobic derivatives thereof; and (b) clioquinol, for a time and under conditions to bring about said treatment; wherein said combination prevents formation of A $\beta$  amyloid, promotes, induces or otherwise facilitates resolubilization of A $\beta$  deposits, or both.

In a preferred embodiment, the metal chelator is bathocuproine.

In another aspect, said method further comprises administering a supplement selected from the group consisting of: ammonium salt, calcium salt, magnesium salt, and sodium salt.

In a preferred embodiment, the supplement is magnesium salt.

- 7 -

In another aspect, said method further comprises administering to the subject an effective amount of a compound selected from the group consisting of: rifampicin, disulfiram, and indomethacin, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

5           In yet another aspect, the invention relates to a method of treating amyloidosis in a subject, said method comprising administering to said subject an effective amount of a combination of (a) a salt of a metal chelator, wherein said chelator is selected from the group consisting of: bathocuproine, bathophenanthroline, DTPA, EDTA, EGTA, penicillamine, TETA, and TPEN,  
10           or hydrophobic derivatives thereof, and (b) clioquinol; wherein said salt of the metal chelator is selected from the group consisting of: ammonium, calcium, magnesium, and sodium; and wherein said combination prevents formation of A $\beta$  amyloid, promotes, induces or otherwise facilitates resolubilization of A $\beta$  deposits, or both.

15           In a preferred embodiment, the metal chelator is bathocuproine. In another preferred embodiment, the salt of the metal chelator is a magnesium salt.

          In another aspect, said method further comprises administering to the subject an effective amount of a compound selected from the group consisting of: rifampicin, disulfiram, and indomethacin, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt  
20           thereof.

          In yet another aspect, the invention relates to a method of treating amyloidosis in a subject, said method comprising administering to said subject an effective amount of a combination of (a) a chelator specific for copper, and (b) clioquinol; wherein said combination prevents formation of A $\beta$  amyloid,  
25           promotes, induces or otherwise facilitates resolubilization of A $\beta$  deposits, or both.

          In a preferred embodiment, the chelator specific for copper is specific for the reduced form of copper. Most preferably, the chelator is bathocuproine or a hydrophobic derivative thereof.

          In yet another aspect, the invention relates to a method of treating  
30           amyloidosis in a subject, said method comprising administering to said subject

- 8 -

an effective amount of a combination of (a) an alkalinizing agent and (b) clioquinol; wherein said combination prevents formation of A $\beta$  amyloid, promotes, induces or otherwise facilitates resolubilization of A $\beta$  deposits, or both.

In a preferred embodiment, the alkalinizing agent is magnesium citrate.

5 In another preferred embodiment, the alkalinizing agent is calcium citrate.

Still another aspect of the invention relates to a pharmaceutical composition for treatment of conditions caused by amyloidosis, A $\beta$ -mediated ROS formation, or both, comprising: (a) a metal chelator selected from the group consisting of: bathocuproine, bathophenanthroline, DTPA, EDTA, EGTA, penicillamine, TETA, and TPEN, or hydrophobic derivatives thereof; and (b) clioquinol, together with one or more pharmaceutically acceptable carriers or diluents.

In a preferred embodiment, the metal chelator is bathocuproine.

15 In another aspect, said method further comprises administering a supplement selected from the group consisting of: ammonium salt, calcium salt, magnesium salt, and sodium salt.

In a preferred embodiment, the supplement is magnesium salt.

20 In another aspect, said composition further comprises a compound selected from the group consisting of: rifampicin, disulfiram, and indomethacin, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

25 In yet another aspect, the invention relates to a pharmaceutical composition for treatment of conditions caused by amyloidosis, A $\beta$ -mediated ROS formation, or both, comprising a combination of (a) a salt of a metal chelator selected from the group consisting of: bathocuproine, bathophenanthroline, DTPA, EDTA, EGTA, penicillamine, TETA, and TPEN, or hydrophobic derivatives thereof; and (b) clioquinol; wherein said salt of the metal chelator is selected from the group consisting of: ammonium, calcium, magnesium, and sodium, together with one or more pharmaceutically acceptable carriers or diluents.

- 9 -

In a preferred embodiment, the metal chelator is bathocuproine. In another preferred embodiment, the salt of the metal chelator is a magnesium salt.

In another aspect, said composition further comprises a compound selected from the group consisting of: rifampicin, disulfiram, and indomethacin, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

In yet another aspect, the invention relates to a pharmaceutical composition for treatment of conditions caused by amyloidosis, A $\beta$ -mediated ROS formation, or both, comprising a chelator specific for copper, with one or more pharmaceutically acceptable carriers or diluents.

In a preferred embodiment, the chelator specific for copper is specific for the reduced form of copper. Most preferably, the chelator is bathocuproine or a hydrophobic derivative thereof.

In yet another aspect, the invention relates to a pharmaceutical composition for treatment of conditions caused by amyloidosis, A $\beta$ -mediated ROS formation, or both, comprising a combination of (a) an alkalinizing agent and (b) clioquinol; together with one or more pharmaceutically acceptable carriers or diluents.

In a preferred embodiment, the alkalinizing agent is magnesium citrate. In another preferred embodiment, the alkalinizing agent is calcium citrate.

Still another aspect of the invention relates to a composition of matter comprising: (a) a metal chelator selected from the group consisting of: bathocuproine, bathophenanthroline, DTPA, EDTA, EGTA, penicillamine, TETA, and TPEN, or hydrophobic derivatives thereof; and (b) clioquinol.

In a preferred embodiment, the metal chelator is bathocuproine.

In another aspect, said method further comprises administering a supplement selected from the group consisting of: ammonium salt, calcium salt, magnesium salt, and sodium salt.

In a preferred embodiment, the supplement is magnesium salt.

- 10 -

In another aspect, said composition further comprises an effective amount of a compound selected from the group consisting of: rifampicin, disulfiram, and indomethacin, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

In yet another aspect, the invention relates to a composition of matter comprising a combination of (a) a salt of a metal chelator selected from the group consisting of: bathocuproine, bathophenanthroline, DTPA, EDTA, EGTA, penicillamine, TETA, and TPEN, or hydrophobic derivatives thereof; and (b) clioquinol; wherein said salt of the metal chelator is selected from the group consisting of: ammonium, calcium, magnesium, and sodium.

In a preferred embodiment, the metal chelator is bathocuproine. In another preferred embodiment, the salt of said metal chelator is a magnesium salt.

In another aspect, said composition further comprises an effective amount of a compound selected from the group consisting of: rifampicin, disulfiram, and indomethacin, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

In yet another aspect, the invention relates to a composition of matter comprising a combination of (a) an alkalinizing agent and (b) clioquinol.

### *Brief Description of the Figures*

Figure 1 is a graph showing the proportion of soluble  $A\beta_{1-40}$  remaining following centrifugation of reaction mixtures.

Figures 2A-2C: Figure 2A is a graph showing the proportion of soluble  $A\beta_{1-40}$  remaining in the supernatant after incubation with various metal ions. Figure 2B is a graph showing a turbidometric analysis of pH effect on metal ion-induced  $A\beta_{1-40}$  aggregation. Figure 2C is a graph showing the proportion of soluble  $A\beta_{1-40}$  remaining in the supernatant after incubation with various metal ions, where high metal ion concentrations were used.

Figure 3 is a graph showing a competition analysis of  $A\beta_{1-40}$  binding to  $Cu^{2+}$ .

**Figures 4A-4C:** Figure 4A is a graph showing the proportion of soluble  $A\beta_{1-40}$  remaining in the supernatant following incubation at various pHs in PBS  $\pm Zn^{2+}$  or  $Cu^{2+}$ . Figure 4B is a graph showing the proportion of soluble  $A\beta_{1-40}$  remaining in the supernatant following incubation at various pHs with different  $Cu^{2+}$  concentrations. Figure 4C is a graph showing the relative aggregation of nM concentrations of  $A\beta_{1-40}$  at pH 7.4 and 6.6 with different  $Cu^{2+}$  concentrations.

**Figures 5A and 5B:** Figure 5A is a graph showing a turbidometric analysis of  $Cu^{2+}$ -induced  $A\beta_{1-40}$  aggregation at pH 7.4 reversed by successive cycles of chelator. Figure 5B is a graph showing a turbidometric analysis of the reversibility of  $Cu^{2+}$ -induced  $A\beta_{1-40}$  aggregation as the pH cycles between 7.4 and 6.6.

**Figure 6** shows the amino acid sequence of APP<sub>669-716</sub> near  $A\beta_{1-42}$ . Rat  $A\beta$  is mutated (R5G, Y10F, H13R; bold). Possible metal-binding residues are underlined.

**Figure 7** is a graph showing the effects of pH,  $Zn^{2+}$  or  $Cu^{2+}$  upon  $A\beta$  deposit formation.

**Figure 8** is a western blot showing the extraction of  $A\beta$  from post-mortem brain tissue.

**Figure 9** is a western blot showing  $A\beta$  SDS-resistant polymerization by copper.

**Figure 10** is a graph showing  $Cu^+$  generation by  $A\beta$ .

**Figure 11** is a graph showing  $H_2O_2$  production by  $A\beta$ .

**Figure 12** is a graphical representation showing a model for the generation of reduced metal ions,  $O_2^-$ ,  $H_2O_2$ , and  $OH^\bullet$  by  $A\beta$  peptides. Note that  $A\beta$  facilitates two consecutive steps in the pathway: the reduction of metal ions, and the reaction of  $O_2$  with reduced metal ions. The peptide does not appear to be consumed or modified in a one hour time frame by participation in these reactions.

**Figures 13A and 13B** are graphical representations showing  $Fe^{3+}$  or  $Cu^{2+}$  reduction by  $A\beta$  peptides. Figure 13A illustrates the reducing capacity of  $A\beta$

species (10  $\mu$ M), compared to Vitamin C and insulin (Sigma) (all 10  $\mu$ M) towards  $\text{Fe}^{3+}$  or  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$  (10  $\mu$ M) in PBS, pH 7.4, after 1 hour co-incubation, 37°C. Data indicate concentration of reduced metal ions generated. Figure 13B shows the effect of oxygen tension and chelation upon  $\text{A}\beta_{1-42}$  metal reduction.  $\text{A}\beta_{1-42}$  was incubated as in Figure 13A under various buffer gas conditions. "Ambient" = no efforts were made to adjust the gas tension in the bench preparations of the buffer vehicle, " $\text{O}_2$ " = 100%  $\text{O}_2$  was continuously bubbled through the PBS vehicle for 2 hours (at 20°C), before the remainder of the incubation components were added, "Ar" = 100% Ar was continuously bubbled through the PBS vehicle for 2 hours (at 20°C), before the remainder of the incubation components were added. "+DFO or TETA" = Desferrioxamine (DFO, Sigma, 200  $\mu$ M) was added to the  $\text{A}\beta_{1-42}$  incubation in the presence of  $\text{Fe}^{3+}$  10  $\mu$ M, or triethylenetetramine dihydrochloride (TETA, Sigma, 200  $\mu$ M) was added to the  $\text{A}\beta_{1-42}$  incubation in the presence of  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$  10  $\mu$ M, under ambient oxygen conditions. All data points are means  $\pm$ SD, n = 3.

Figures 14A-14E are graphical representations showing production of  $\text{H}_2\text{O}_2$  from the incubation of  $\text{A}\beta$  in the presence of substoichiometric amounts of  $\text{Fe}^{3+}$  or  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$ . Figure 14A shows  $\text{H}_2\text{O}_2$  produced by  $\text{A}\beta_{1-42}$  (in PBS, pH 7.4, under ambient gas conditions, 1 hour, 37°C) following co-incubation with various concentrations of catalase in the presence of 1  $\mu$ M  $\text{Fe}^{3+}$ . Figure 14B shows a comparison of  $\text{H}_2\text{O}_2$  generation by variant  $\text{A}\beta$  species:  $\text{A}\beta_{1-42}$ ,  $\text{A}\beta_{1-40}$ , rat  $\text{A}\beta_{1-40}$ ,  $\text{A}\beta_{40-1}$ , and  $\text{A}\beta_{1-28}$  (vehicle conditions as in Figure 14A). Figure 14C shows the effect of metal chelators (200  $\mu$ M) on  $\text{H}_2\text{O}_2$  production from  $\text{A}\beta_{1-42}$  when incubated in the presence of  $\text{Fe}^{3+}$  or  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$  (1  $\mu$ M) (vehicle conditions as in Figure 14A). BC = Bathocuproinedisulfonate, BP = Bathophenanthroline-disulfonate. The effects of DFO were assessed in the presence of  $\text{Fe}^{3+}$ , and TETA was assessed in the presence of  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$ , as indicated. Figure 14D shows  $\text{H}_2\text{O}_2$  produced by  $\text{A}\beta_{1-42}$ ,  $\text{A}\beta_{1-40}$ , and Vitamin C in the presence of  $\text{Fe}^{3+}$  (1  $\mu$ M) (in PBS, pH 7.4 buffer, 1 hr, 37°C) under various dissolved gas conditions (described in Figure 13B): ambient air,  $\text{O}_2$  enrichment, and anaerobic (Ar) conditions, as

indicated. Figure 14E shows  $\text{H}_2\text{O}_2$  produced by  $\text{A}\beta_{1-42}$ ,  $\text{A}\beta_{1-40}$ , and Vitamin C in the presence of  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$  ( $1\text{ }\mu\text{M}$ ) (in PBS, pH 7.4 buffer, 1 hr,  $37^\circ\text{C}$ ) under various dissolved gas conditions (as in Figure 14D). All data points are means  $\pm\text{SD}$ ,  $n = 3$ .

5                **Figure 15A and 15B** are graphical representations showing superoxide anion detection. Figure 15A shows the spectrophotometric absorbance at 250 nm (after subtracting buffer blanks) for  $\text{A}\beta_{1-42}$  ( $10\text{ }\mu\text{M}$ , in PBS, pH 7.4, with  $1\text{ }\mu\text{M}$   $\text{Fe}^{3+}$ , incubated 1 hr,  $37^\circ\text{C}$ ) under ambient air (+100 U/mL superoxide dismutase, SOD),  $\text{O}_2$  enrichment, and anaerobic (Ar) buffer gas conditions (described in  
10                Figure 13B). Figure 15B shows the spectrophotometric absorbance at 250 nm (after subtracting buffer blanks) for variant  $\text{A}\beta$  peptides:  $\text{A}\beta_{1-42}$ ,  $\text{A}\beta_{1-40}$ , rat  $\text{A}\beta_{1-40}$ ,  $\text{A}\beta_{40-1}$ , and  $\text{A}\beta_{1-28}$  ( $10\text{ }\mu\text{M}$  in PBS, pH 7.4, with  $1\text{ }\mu\text{M}$   $\text{Fe}^{3+}$ , incubated 1 hr,  $37^\circ\text{C}$ , under ambient buffer gas conditions). All data points are means  $\pm\text{SD}$ ,  $n = 3$ .

**Figure 16A and 16B** are graphical representations showing production  
15                of the hydroxyl radical ( $\text{OH}\cdot$ ) from the incubation of  $\text{A}\beta$  in the presence of substoichiometric amounts of  $\text{Fe}^{3+}$  or  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$ . Figure 16A shows the signal from the TBARS assay of  $\text{OH}\cdot$  produced from Vitamin C ( $100\text{ }\mu\text{M}$ ) and variant  $\text{A}\beta$  species ( $10\text{ }\mu\text{M}$ ):  $\text{A}\beta_{1-42}$ ,  $\text{A}\beta_{1-40}$ , rat  $\text{A}\beta_{1-40}$ ,  $\text{A}\beta_{40-1}$ , and  $\text{A}\beta_{1-28}$  (in PBS, pH 7.4, with  $1\text{ }\mu\text{M}$   $\text{Fe}^{3+}$  or  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$  as indicated, incubated 1 hr,  $37^\circ\text{C}$ , under ambient buffer gas  
20                conditions). Figure 16B illustrates the effect of  $\text{OH}\cdot$ -specific scavengers upon  $\text{OH}\cdot$  generation by Vitamin C and  $\text{A}\beta_{1-42}$ . Mannitol ( $5\text{ mM}$ , Sigma) or dimethyl sulfoxide (DMSO,  $5\text{ mM}$ , Sigma), was co-incubated with Vitamin C ( $10\text{ }\mu\text{M}$  +  $500\text{ }\mu\text{M}$   $\text{H}_2\text{O}_2$ ) or  $\text{A}\beta_{1-42}$  ( $10\text{ }\mu\text{M}$ ) (conditions as for Figure 16A). All data points are means  $\pm\text{SD}$ ,  $n = 3$ .

25                **Figure 17** shows the reversibility of zinc-induced  $\text{A}\beta_{1-40}$  aggregation with EDTA. Aggregation induced by pH 5.5 was not reversible in the same manner.

**Figure 18** shows the reversibility of zinc-induced aggregation of  $\text{A}\beta_{1-40}$  mixed with 5%  $\text{A}\beta_{1-42}$ .

**Figures 19A-19C** show dilution curves for TPEN, EGTA, and  
30                bathocuproine, respectively, used in extracting a representative AD brain sample.



- 14 -

Figures 19A-19C show that metal chelators promote the solubilization of A $\beta$  from human brain sample homogenates.

Figures 20A and 20B - Figure 20A shows a western blot of chelation response in a typical AD brain. Figure 20B shows a western blot comparing extracted A $\beta$  from an AD brain (AD) to that of sedimentable deposits from healthy brain tissue (young control - C). In the experiments of Figure 20B, TBS buffer was used rather than PBS.

Figure 21 shows an indicative blot from AD brain extract. The blot shows that chelation treatment results in disproportionate solubilization of A $\beta$  dimers, while PBS alone does not.

Figure 22 shows that recovery of total soluble protein is not affected by the presence of chelators in the homogenization step.

Figure 23 is a graphical representation of resolubilization of Zn, Cu, or pH induced aggregates *in vitro*. Values are expressed as a percentage of A $\beta$  signal after washing with TBS alone.

Figure 24 shows extraction of A $\beta$  from brain tissue with clioquinol. Undiluted (100%) clioquinol is 1.6  $\mu$ M. S1 and S2 represent two sequential extractions from AD-affected tissue.

Figures 25A and 25B: Figure 24A shows a western blot of A $\beta$  extracted from brain tissue by various concentrations of clioquinol. Figure 24B is a graphic representation of solubilization of A $\beta$  by clioquinol.

Figure 26 is a graph showing the proportion of total A $\beta$  extracted utilizing PBS buffer alone, clioquinol (CQ), bathocuproine (BC), or clioquinol together with bathocuproine (CQ + BC).

Figure 27 shows that extraction volume affects A $\beta$  solubilisation.

Figures 28A and 28B - Figure 28A shows the effect of metals upon the solubility of brain-derived A $\beta$ : copper and zinc can inhibit the solubilization of A $\beta$ . Figure 28B shows that A $\beta$  solubility in metal-depleted tissue is restored by supplementing with magnesium.

- 15 -

Figures 29A and 29B - Figure 29A shows that patterns of chelator-promoted solubilisation of A $\beta$  differ in AD and aged-matched, non-AD tissue.

Upper panel: representative blot from AD specimen.

Lower panel: representative blot from aged non-AD tissue bearing a similar total A $\beta$  load.

Figure 29B shows soluble A $\beta$  resulting from chelation treatment for AD and aged-matched, non-AD tissue, expressed as a percentage of the PBS-only treatment group.

Figure 30 shows that chelation promotes the solubilization of A $\beta_{1-40}$  and A $\beta_{1-42}$  from AD and non-AD tissue. Representative AD (left panels) and aged-matched control specimens (right panels) were prepared as described in PBS or 5 mM BC. Identical gels were run and Western blots were probed with mAbs WO2 (raised against residues 5-16, recognizes A $\beta_{1-40}$  and A $\beta_{1-42}$ ) G210 (raised against residues 35-40, recognizes A $\beta_{1-40}$ ) or G211 (raised against residues 35-42, recognizes A $\beta_{1-42}$ ) (See Ida, N., *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.*, 271:22908 (1996)).

Figure 31A and 31B - Figure 31A shows SDS-resistant polymerization of human A $\beta_{1-40}$  versus human A $\beta_{1-42}$  with Zn<sup>2+</sup> or Cu<sup>2+</sup>. Figure 31B shows SDS-resistant polymerization of rat A $\beta_{1-40}$  with Cu<sup>2+</sup> or Fe<sup>3+</sup>.

Figures 32A - 32C - Figure 32A shows H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub>/Cu induced SDS-resistant polymerization of A $\beta_{1-42}$  (2.5  $\mu$ M). Figure 32B shows H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub>/Fe induced SDS-resistant polymerization of A $\beta_{1-42}$  (2.5  $\mu$ M). Figure 32C shows that BC attenuates SDS-resistant polymerization of A $\beta_{1-42}$  (2.5  $\mu$ M).

Figures 33A and 33B show that H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> generation is required for SDS-resistant polymerization of human A $\beta_{1-42}$ . Solution concentrations of metal ion and H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> were 30  $\mu$ M and 100  $\mu$ M, respectively. Figure 33A shows that TCEP (Tris(2-Carboxyethyl)-Phosphine Hydrochloride) attenuates SDS-resistant A $\beta_{1-42}$  polymerization. A $\beta_{1-42}$  (2.5  $\mu$ M), H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> (100  $\mu$ M), ascorbic acid (100  $\mu$ M), TCEP (100  $\mu$ M). Figure 33B shows that anoxic conditions prevent SDS-resistant A $\beta$  polymerization. A $\beta_{1-42}$  (2.5  $\mu$ M) was incubated with no metal or Cu<sup>2+</sup> at either pH 7.4 or 6.6 and incubated for 60 min. at 25°C under normal or argon purged

- 16 -

conditions. Argon was continuously bubbled through the buffer for 2 h (at 20°C) before the remainder of the incubation components were added.

Figures 34A-34E show dissolution of SDS-resistant A $\beta$  polymers. Figure 34A shows that chaotropic agents are unable to disrupt polymerization. Figure 34B shows that metal ion chelators disrupt SDS-resistant A $\beta_{1-40}$  polymers. Figure 34C shows that metal ion chelators disrupt SDS-resistant A $\beta_{1-42}$  polymers. The chelators, their log stability constant, and their molecular weight, respectively, are as follows: TETA (tetraethylenediamine), 20.4, 146; EDTA (ethylenediaminetetra acetic acid), 18.1, 292; DTPA (diethylenetriaminopenta acetic acid), 21.1, 393; CDTA (*trans*-1,2-diaminocyclohexanetetra acetic acid), 22.0, 346; and NTA (nitrilotriacetic acid), 13.1, 191. Figure 34D shows that  $\alpha$ -helical promoting solvents and low pH disrupt polymers. Aliquots of A $\beta_{1-42}$  were incubated at pH 1 or with DMSO/HFIP (75%:25%) for 2 h (30 min., 37°C). Figure 34E shows that metal ion chelators disrupt SDS-resistant A $\beta$  polymers extracted from AD brains. Aliquots of SDS-resistant A $\beta$  polymers extracted from AD brains were incubated with no chelator, TETA (1 mM or 5 mM) or BC (1 mM or 5 mM) for 2 h (30 min., 37°C) and aliquots collected for analysis. Monomer A $\beta_{1-40}$  is indicated.

### *Detailed Description of the Preferred Embodiments*

#### *Definitions*

In the description that follows, a number of terms are utilized extensively. In order to provide a clear and consistent understanding of the specification and claims, including the scope to be given such terms, the following definitions are provided.

A $\beta$  peptide is also known in the art as A $\beta$ ,  $\beta$  protein,  $\beta$ -A4 and A4. In the present invention, the A $\beta$  peptide may be comprised of peptides A $\beta_{1-39}$ , A $\beta_{1-40}$ , A $\beta_{1-41}$ , A $\beta_{1-42}$ , and A $\beta_{1-43}$ . The most preferred embodiment of the invention makes use of A $\beta_{1-40}$ . However, any of the A $\beta$  peptides may be employed according to

the present invention. A $\beta$  peptides of the invention include A $\beta_{X-39}$ , A $\beta_{X-40}$ , A $\beta_{X-42}$ , and A $\beta_{X-43}$ , where X is less than or equal to 17; and A $\beta_{Y-17}$ , where Y is less than or equal to 5. The sequence of A $\beta$  peptide is found in Hilbich, C., *et al.*, *J. Mol. Biol.* 228:460-473 (1992).

5           **Amyloid** as is commonly known in the art, and as is intended in the present specification, is a form of aggregated protein.

**Amyloidosis** is any disease characterized by the extracellular accumulation of amyloid in various organs and tissues of the body.

10           **A $\beta$  Amyloid** is an aggregated A $\beta$  peptide. It is found in the brains of patients afflicted with AD and DS and may accumulate following head injuries.

**Biological fluid** means fluid obtained from a person or animal which is produced by said person or animal. Examples of biological fluids include but are not limited to cerebrospinal fluid (CSF), blood, serum, and plasma. In the present invention, biological fluid includes whole or any fraction of such fluids derived  
15 by purification by any means, *e.g.*, by ultrafiltration or chromatography.

**Copper(II)**, unless otherwise indicated, means salts of Cu<sup>2+</sup>, *i.e.*, Cu<sup>2+</sup> in any form, soluble or insoluble.

**Copper(I)**, unless otherwise indicated, means salts of Cu<sup>+</sup>, *i.e.*, Cu<sup>+</sup> in any form, soluble or insoluble.

20           **Metal chelators** include metal-binding molecules characterized by two or more polar groups which participate in forming a complex with a metal ion, and are generally well-known in the art for their ability to bind metals competitively.

**Physiological solution** as used in the present specification means a  
25 solution which comprises compounds at physiological pH, about 7.4, which closely represents a bodily or biological fluid, such as CSF, blood, plasma, et cetera.

**Treatment:** delay or prevention of onset, slowing down or stopping the progression, aggravation, or deterioration of the symptoms and signs of

- 18 -

Alzheimer's disease, as well as amelioration of the symptoms and signs, or curing the disease by reversing the physiological and anatomical damage.

**Zinc**, unless otherwise indicated, means salts of zinc, i.e.,  $Zn^{2+}$  in any form, soluble or insoluble.

5 *Methods for Identifying Agents Useful in the Treatment of AD*

The aim of the present invention is to clarify both the factors which contribute to the neurotoxicity of  $A\beta$  polymers and the mechanism which underlies their formation. These findings can then be used to (i) identify agents that can be used to decrease the neurotoxicity of  $A\beta$ , as well as the formation of  
10  $A\beta$  polymers, and (ii) utilize such agents to develop methods of preventing, treating or alleviating the symptoms of AD and related disorders.

The present invention relates to the unexpected discovery that  $A\beta$  peptides directly produce oxidative stress through the generation of abundant reactive oxygen species (ROS), which include hydroxyl radical ( $OH^\bullet$ ) and hydrogen  
15 peroxide ( $H_2O_2$ ). The production of ROS occurs by a metal (Cu, Fe) dependant, pH mediated mechanism, wherein the reduction of  $Cu^{2+}$  to  $Cu^+$ , or  $Fe^{3+}$  to  $Fe^{2+}$ , is catalyzed by  $A\beta$ .  $A\beta$  is highly efficient at reducing  $Cu^{2+}$  and  $Fe^{3+}$ .

All the redox properties of  $A\beta_{1-40}$  (the most abundant form of soluble  $A\beta$ ) are exaggerated in  $A\beta_{1-42}$ . Additionally,  $A\beta_{1-42}$ , but not  $A\beta_{1-40}$ , recruits  $O_2$  into  
20 spontaneous generation of another ROS,  $O_2^\bullet$ , which also occurs in a metal-dependent manner. The exaggerated redox activity of  $A\beta_{1-42}$  and its enhanced ability to generate ROS are likely to be the explanation for its neurotoxic properties. Interestingly, the rat homologue of  $A\beta$ , which has 3 substitutions that have been shown to attenuate zinc binding and zinc-mediated precipitation, also  
25 exhibits less redox activity than its human counterpart. This may explain why the rat is exceptional in that it is the only mammal that does not exhibit amyloid pathology with age. All other mammals analyzed to date possess the human  $A\beta$  sequence.

The sequence of ROS generation by A $\beta$  follows the pathway of superoxide-dismutation, which leads to hydrogen peroxide production in a Cu/Fe-dependent manner. After forming H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub>, the hydroxyl radical (OH•) is rapidly formed by a Fenton reaction with the Fe or Cu that is present, even when these metals are only at trace concentrations. The OH• radical is very reactive and rapidly attacks the A $\beta$  peptide, causing it to polymerize. This is very likely to be the chemical mechanism that causes the SDS-resistant polymerization that is seen in mature plaque amyloid. Importantly, the redox activity of A $\beta$  is not attenuated by precipitation of the peptide, suggesting that, *in vivo*, amyloid deposits could be capable of generating ROS *in situ* on an enduring basis. This suggests that the major source of the oxidative stress in an AD-affected brain are amyloid deposits.

A model for free radical and amyloid formation in AD is shown in Figure 12. The proposed mechanism is explained as follows.

(1) Soluble and precipitated A $\beta$  species possess superoxide dismutase (SOD)-like activity. Superoxide (O<sub>2</sub><sup>-</sup>), the substrate for the dismutation, is generated both by spillover from mitochondrial respiratory metabolism, and by A $\beta$ <sub>1-42</sub> itself. A $\beta$ -mediated dismutation produces hydrogen peroxide (H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub>) (see Figure 11), requiring Cu<sup>2+</sup> or Fe<sup>3+</sup>, which are reduced during the reaction. Since H<sup>+</sup> is required for H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> production, an acidotic environment will increase the reaction.

(2) H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> is relatively stable, and freely permeable across cell membranes. Normally, it will be broken down by intercellular catalase or glutathione peroxidase.

(3) In aging and AD, levels of H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> are high, and catalase and peroxidase activities are low. If H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> is not completely catalyzed, it will react with reduced Cu<sup>+</sup> and Fe<sup>2+</sup> in the vicinity of A $\beta$  to generate the highly reactive hydroxyl radical (OH•) by Fenton chemistry.

(4) OH• engenders a non-specific stress and inflammatory response in local tissue. Among the neurochemicals that are released from microglia and possibly neurons in the response are Zn<sup>2+</sup>, Cu<sup>2+</sup> and soluble A $\beta$ . Familial AD

increases the likelihood that  $A\beta_{1-42}$  will be released at this point. Local acidosis is also part of the stress/inflammatory response. These factors combine to make  $A\beta$  precipitate and accumulate, presumably so that it may function *in situ* as an SOD, since these factors induce reversible aggregation. Hence, more soluble  $A\beta$  species decorate the perimeter of the accumulating plaque deposits.

(5) If  $A\beta$  encounters  $OH^\bullet$ , it will cause covalently cross-linking during the oligomerization process, making it a more difficult accumulation to resolubilize, and leading to the formation of SDS-resistant oligomers characteristic of plaque amyloid.

(6) If  $A\beta_{1-42}$  accumulates, it has the property of recruiting  $O_2$  as a substrate for the abundant production of  $O_2^\bullet$  by a process that is still not understood. Since  $O_2$  is abundant in the brain,  $A\beta_{1-42}$  is responsible for setting off a vicious cycle in which the accumulation of covalently linked  $A\beta$  is a product of the unusual ability of  $A\beta$  to reduce  $O_2$ , and feed an abundant substrate ( $O_2^\bullet$ ) to itself for dismutation, leading to  $OH^\bullet$  formation. The production of abundant free radicals by the accumulating amyloid may further damage many systems including metal regulatory proteins, thus compounding the problem. This suggests that the major source of the oxidative stress in an AD-affected brain are amyloid deposits.

The metal-dependent chemistry of  $A\beta$ -mediated superoxide dismutation is reminiscent of the activity of superoxide dismutase (SOD). Interestingly, mutations of SOD cause amyotrophic lateral sclerosis, another neurodegenerative disorder. SOD is predominantly intracellular, whereas  $A\beta$  is constitutively found in the extracellular spaces where it accumulates. Investigation of  $A\beta$  by laser flash photolysis confirmed the peptide's SOD-like activity, suggesting that  $A\beta$  may be an anti-oxidant under physiological circumstances. Since  $H_2O_2$  has been shown to induce the production of  $A\beta$ , the accumulation of  $A\beta$  in AD may reflect a response to an oxidant stress paradoxically caused by  $A\beta$  excess. This may cause and, in turn, be compounded by, damage to the biometal homeostatic mechanisms in the brain environment.

- 21 -

Thus, it has recently been discovered (i) that much of the A $\beta$  aggregate in AD-affected brain is held together by zinc and copper, (ii) that A $\beta$  peptides exhibit Fe/Cu-dependent redox activity similar to that of SOD, (iii) that A $\beta_{1-42}$  is especially redox reactive and has the unusual property of reducing O<sub>2</sub> to O<sub>2</sub><sup>-</sup> and (iv) that deregulation of A $\beta$  redox reactivity causes the peptide to conveniently polymerize. Since these reactions must be strongly implicated in the pathogenetic events of AD, they offer promising targets for therapeutic drug design.

The discovery that A $\beta$  can generate H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> and Cu<sup>+</sup>, both of which are associated with neurotoxic effects, offers an explanation for the neurotoxicity of A $\beta$  polymers. These findings suggest that it may be possible to lessen the neurotoxicity of A $\beta$  by controlling factors which alter the concentrations of Cu<sup>+</sup> and ROS, including hydrogen peroxide, being generated by accumulated and soluble A $\beta$ . It has been discovered that manipulation of factors such as zinc, copper, and pH can result in altered Cu<sup>+</sup> and H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> production by A $\beta$ . Therefore, agents identified as being useful for the adjustment of the pH and levels of zinc and copper of the brain interstitium can be used to adjust the concentration of Cu<sup>+</sup> and H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub>, and can therefore be used to reduce the neurotoxic burden. Such agents will thus be a means of treating Alzheimer's disease.

#### *Agents Useful in the Treatment of AD*

A further aspect of the present invention is predicted in part on the elucidation of mechanisms of neurotoxicity in the brain in AD subjects. One mechanism involves a novel O<sub>2</sub><sup>-</sup> and biometal-dependent pathway of free radical generation by A $\beta$  peptides. The radicals of this aspect of the present invention may comprise reactive oxygen species (ROS) such as but not limited to O<sub>2</sub><sup>-</sup> and OH as well as radicalized A $\beta$  peptides. It is proposed, according to the present invention, that by interfering in the radical generating pathway, the neurotoxicity of the A $\beta$  peptides is reduced.

Accordingly, one aspect of the present invention contemplates a method for treating Alzheimer's disease (AD) in a subject, said method comprising



administering to said subject an effective amount of an agent which is capable of inhibiting or otherwise reducing metal-mediated production of free radicals.

The preferred agents according to this aspect are metal chelators, metal complexing compounds, antioxidants and compounds capable of reducing radical formation of A $\beta$  peptides or mediated by A $\beta$  peptides. Particularly preferred metal chelators and metal complexors are capable of interacting with metals (M) having either a reduced charge state M<sup>n+</sup> or an oxidized state of M<sup>(n+1)+</sup>. Even more particularly, M is Fe and/or Cu.

It is proposed that interactions of A $\beta$  with Fe and Cu are of significance to the genesis of the oxidation insults that are observed in the AD-affected brain. This is due to redox-active metal ions being concentrated in brain neurons and participating in the generation of ROS or other radicals by transferring electrons in their reduced state and described in the following reactions:

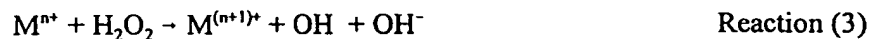
Reduced Fe/Cu reacts with molecular oxygen to generate the superoxide anion.



The O<sub>2</sub><sup>-</sup> generated undergoes dismutation to H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> either catalyzed by SOD or spontaneously.

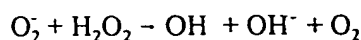


The reaction of reduced metals with H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> generates the highly reactive hydroxyl radical by the Fenton reaction.



Additionally, the Haber-Weiss reaction can form OH in a reaction catalyzed by M<sup>(n+1)+</sup>/M<sup>n+</sup> (Miller *et al.*, 1990).

- 23 -



Reaction (4)

Still more preferably, the agent comprises one or more of bathocuproine and/or bathophenanthroline or compounds related thereto at the structural and/or functional levels. Reference to compounds such as bathocuproine and bathophenanthroline include functional derivatives, homologues and analogues thereof.

Accordingly, another aspect of the present invention provides a method for treating AD in a subject said method comprising administering to said subject an effective amount of an agent comprising at least one metal chelator and/or metal complexing compound for a time and under conditions sufficient to inhibit or otherwise reduce metal-mediated production of free radicals.

In one aspect, the free radicals are reactive oxygen species such as  $\text{O}_2^\bullet$  or  $\text{OH}^\bullet$ . In another aspect, the free radicals include forms of  $\text{A}\beta$ . However, in a broader sense, it has been found that the metal-mediated  $\text{A}\beta$  reactions in the brain of AD patients results in the generation of reduced metals and hydrogen peroxide, as well as superoxide and hydroxyl radicals. Furthermore, formation of any other radical or reactive oxygen species by interaction of any of these products with any other metabolic substrate (*e.g.*, superoxide + nitric acid = peroxynitrite) contributes to the pathology observed in AD and Down's syndrome patients.  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$  reaction with  $\text{A}\beta$  generates  $\text{Cu}^+$ ,  $\text{A}\beta^\bullet$ ,  $\text{O}_2^\bullet$ ,  $\text{H}_2\text{O}_2$ , and  $\text{OH}^\bullet$ , all of which not only directly damage the cells, but also react with biochemical substrates like nitric oxide.

Yet a further aspect of the present invention is directed to a method for treating AD in a subject, said method comprising administering to said subject an effective amount of an agent, said agent comprising a metal chelator, metal complexing compound or a compound capable of interfering with metal mediated free radical formation mediated by  $\text{A}\beta$  peptides for a time and under conditions sufficient to inhibit or otherwise reduce production of radicals.

- 24 -

The preferred metals according to these aspects of the present invention include Cu and Fe and their various oxidation states. Most preferred are reduced forms of copper ( $\text{Cu}^+$ ) and iron ( $\text{Fe}^{2+}$ ).

Another mechanism elucidated in accordance with the present invention concerns the formation of aggregates of  $\text{A}\beta$ , as in conditions involving amyloidosis. In a preferred embodiment, the aggregates are those of amyloid plaques occurring in the brains of AD-affected subjects.

The aggregates according to this aspect of the present invention are non-fibrillary and fibrillary aggregates and are held together by the presence of a metal such as zinc and copper. A method of treatment involves resolubilizing these  $\text{A}\beta$  aggregates.

The data indicate that Zn-induced  $\text{A}\beta_{1-40}$  aggregation is completely reversible in the presence of divalent metal ion chelating agents. This suggests that zinc binding may be a reversible, normal function of  $\text{A}\beta$  and implicates other neurochemical mechanisms in the formation of amyloid. A process involving irreversible  $\text{A}\beta$  aggregation, such as the polymerization of  $\text{A}\beta$  monomers, in the formation of polymeric species of  $\text{A}\beta$  that are present in amyloid plaques is thus a more plausible explanation for the formation of neurotoxic polymeric  $\text{A}\beta$  species.

According to this aspect of the present invention, there is provided a method of treating AD in a subject comprising administering to said subject an agent capable of promoting, inducing or otherwise facilitating resolubilization of amyloid deposits for a time and under conditions to effect said treatment.

With respect to this aspect of the present invention, it is proposed that a metal chelator or metal complexing agent be administered.  $\text{A}\beta$  deposits which are composed of fibrillary and non-fibrillary aggregates may be resolubilized by the metal chelating or metal complexing agents, according to this aspect. While fibrile aggregations *per se*, may not be fully disassociated by administration of such agents, overall deposit resolubilization approaches 70%.

In addition, the agent of this aspect of the present invention may comprise a metal chelator or metal complexing agent alone or in combination with another active ingredient such as but not limited to rifampicin, disulfiram, indomethacin or related compounds. Preferred metal chelators are DTPA, bathocuproine,  
5 bathophenanthroline, and penicillamine or related compounds.

A "related" compound according to these and other aspects of the present invention are compounds related to the levels of structure or function and include derivatives, homologues and analogues thereof.

Accordingly, the present invention contemplates compositions such as  
10 pharmaceutical compositions comprising an active agent and one or more pharmaceutically, acceptable carriers and/or diluents. The active agent may be a single compound such as a metal chelator or metal complexing agent or may be a combination of compounds such as a metal chelating or complexing compound and another compound. Preferred active agents include, for reducing radical  
15 formation, bathocuproine and/or bathophenanthroline; and for promoting resolubilization, DTPA, bathocuproine, bathophenanthroline, and penicillamine or derivatives, homologues or analogues thereof, or any combination thereof.

Further, it has been found that the agents of the present invention may be administered along with the compound clioquinol. Clioquinol has been shown  
20 to be particularly effective in resolubilizing A $\beta$  aggregates in combination with other chelators. Most preferably clioquinol is administered in combination with bathocuproine.

It has also been found that there is a clioquinol concentration "window" within which the A $\beta$  aggregates are dissolved. Increasing the concentration of  
25 clioquinol above the optimal window concentration not only is toxic to the patient but also sharply drops the dissolution effect of clioquinol on the A $\beta$  amyloid. Similarly, amounts below that of the window are too small to result in any dissolution.

Therefore, for each given patient, the attending physician need be mindful  
30 of the window effect and attend to varying the dosages of clioquinol so that

during the course of administration, clioquinol concentrations would be varied frequently to randomly allow achieving the most effective concentration for dissolving A $\beta$  amyloid deposits in the given patient.

It is, therefore, desired that the plasma levels of clioquinol not be steady state, but be kept fluctuating between 0.01  $\mu$ M, but not greater than 2  $\mu$ M. Since the drug is absorbed to reach peak plasma levels within 30 minutes of oral ingestion, and since the excretion half life is about 1-3 hours, the best way to dose the patient is with oral doses no more often than every three hours, preferably every six hours or eight hours, but as infrequently as once every day or once every two days are expected to be therapeutic.

An oral dose of 200 mg/kg achieves 5  $\mu$ M plasma levels in rats, and 10-30  $\mu$ M in dogs. An oral dose of 500 mg/kg achieves 20-70  $\mu$ M in monkeys. The drug is freely permeable into the brain and is rapidly excreted.

Therefore, in humans, it is expected that a plasma level of 0.5  $\mu$ M would be achieved within 30 minutes of ingesting 10 mg/kg body weight. In a 70 kg person this is 700 mg of clioquinol. Therefore, a dose of 700 mg four times a day (2800 mg/day) would be therapeutic.

However, sustained treatment with doses of clioquinol at a dose as low as 10 mg/kg/day causes the neurological side effect, subacute myelo-optic neuritis. Therefore, dosage that high is undesirable. This is equivalent to 700 mg/day. The side effect is believed to be due to loss of vitamin B12. Therefore, co-therapy with vitamin B12 100  $\mu$ M/day orally or, preferably, 1000  $\mu$ M/month intramuscularly, is to be administered with clioquinol treatment to abolish this side effect.

To minimize the chances of this side effect, a lower dose of clioquinol can also be used - 100 mg, three or four times a day would achieve peak plasma levels of about 0.1  $\mu$ M, and is likely to be therapeutic without putting the patient at risk for neurological side effects. Nevertheless, co-administration of Vitamin B12 should be mandatory.

For the treatment of moderately affected or severely affected patients, where risking the neurological side effects is less of a concern since the quality of their life is very poor, the patient may be put on a program of treatment (after informed consent) consisting of high dose clioquinol for 1 to 21 days, but preferably no more than 14 days, followed by a period of low dose therapy for seven days to three months. A convenient schedule would be two weeks of high dose therapy followed by two weeks of low dose therapy, oscillating between high and low dose periods for up to 12 months. If after 12 months the patient has made no clinical gains on high/low clioquinol therapy, the treatment should be discontinued. All regimens would be accompanied by Vitamin B12 co-therapy.

Another typical case would be the treatment of a mildly affected individual. Such a patient would be treated with low dose clioquinol for up to 12 months. If after 6 months no clinical gains have been made, the patient could then be placed on the high/low alternation regimen for up to another 12 months.

Particular concentrations and modes of therapy will vary depending on the particular clioquinol-containing combination administered.

Accordingly, the present invention contemplates compositions such as pharmaceutical compositions comprising an active agent and one or more pharmaceutically acceptable carriers and/or diluents. The active agent may be clioquinol or a combination of clioquinol and another metal chelating compound.

The pharmaceutical forms containing the active agents may be administered in any convenient manner either orally or parenterally such as by intravenous, intraperitoneal, subcutaneous, rectal, implant, transdermal, slow release, intrabuccal, intracerebral or intranasal administration. Generally, the active agents need to pass the blood brain barrier and may have to be chemically modified, *e.g.* made hydrophobic, to facilitate this or be administered directly to the brain or *via* other suitable routes. For injectable use, sterile aqueous solutions (where water soluble) are generally used or alternatively sterile powders for the extemporaneous preparation of sterile injectable solutions may be used. It must be stable under the conditions of manufacture and storage and must be preserved

against the contaminating action of microorganisms such as bacteria and fungi. The carrier can be a solvent or dispersion medium containing, for example, water, ethanol, polyol (for example, glycerol, propylene glycol and liquid polyethylene glycol, and the like), suitable mixtures thereof, and vegetable oils. The  
5 preventions of the action of microorganisms can be brought about by various antibacterial and antifungal agents, for example, parabens, chlorobutanol, phenol, sorbic acid, thimerosal and the like. In many cases, it will be preferable to include isotonic agents, for example, sugars or sodium chloride. Prolonged absorption of the injectable compositions can be brought about by the use in the  
10 compositions of agents delaying absorption, for example, aluminum monostearate and gelatin.

Sterile injectable solutions are prepared by incorporating the active agents in the required amount in the appropriate solvent with various of the other ingredients enumerated above, as required, followed by sterilization by, for  
15 example, filtration or irradiation. In the case of sterile powders for the preparation of sterile injectable solutions, the preferred methods of preparation are vacuum drying and the freeze-drying technique which yield a powder of the active ingredient plus any additional desired ingredient from previously sterile-filtered solution thereof. Preferred compositions or preparations according  
20 to the present invention are prepared so that an injectable dosage unit contains between about 0.25  $\mu$ g and 500 mg of active compound.

When the active agents are suitably protected they may be orally administered, for example, with an inert diluent or with an assimilable edible carrier, or it may be enclosed in hard or soft shell gelatin capsule, or it may be  
25 compressed into tablets, or it may be incorporated directly with the food of the diet. For oral therapeutic administration, the active compound may be incorporated with excipients and used in the form of ingestible tablets, buccal tablets, troches, capsules, elixirs, suspensions, syrups, wafers, and the like. Such compositions and preparations should contain at least 1% by weight of active  
30 compound. The percentage of the compositions and preparations may, of course,

be varied and may conveniently be between about 5 to about 80% of the weight of the unit. The amount of active compound in such therapeutically useful compositions is such that a suitable dosage will be obtained. Preferred compositions or preparations according to the present invention are prepared so that an oral dosage unit form contains between about 1.0  $\mu$ g and 2000 mg of active compound.

The tablets, troches, pills, capsules and the like may also contain other components such as listed hereafter: A binder such as gum, acacia, corn starch or gelatin; excipients such as dicalcium phosphate; a disintegrating agent such as corn starch, potato starch, alginic acid and the like; a lubricant such as magnesium stearate; and a sweetening agent such a sucrose, lactose or saccharin may be added or a flavoring agent such as peppermint, oil of wintergreen, or cherry flavoring. When the dosage unit form is a capsule, it may contain, in addition to materials of the above type, a liquid carrier. Various other materials may be present as coatings or to otherwise modify the physical form of the dosage unit. For instance, tablets, pills, or capsules may be coated with shellac, sugar or both. A syrup or elixir may contain the active compound, sucrose as a sweetening agent, methyl and propylparabens as preservatives, a dye and flavoring such as cherry or orange flavor. Of course, any material used in preparing any dosage unit form should be pharmaceutically pure and substantially non-toxic in the amounts employed. In addition, the active compound(s) may be incorporated into sustained-release preparations and formulations.

Pharmaceutically acceptable carriers and/or diluents include any and all solvents, dispersion media, coatings, antibacterial and antifungal agents, isotonic and absorption delaying agents and the like. The use of such media and agents for pharmaceutical active substances is well known in the art. Except insofar as any conventional media or agent is incompatible with the active ingredient, use thereof in the therapeutic compositions is contemplated. Supplementary active ingredients can also be incorporated into the compositions.



- 30 -

It is especially advantageous to formulate parenteral compositions in dosage unit form for ease of administration and uniformity of dosage. Dosage unit form as used herein refers to physically discrete units suited as unitary dosages for the mammalian subjects to be treated; each unit containing a predetermined quantity of active material calculated to produce the desired therapeutic effect in association with the required pharmaceutical carrier. The specification for the novel dosage unit forms of the invention are dictated by and directly dependent on (a) the unique characteristics of the active material and the particular therapeutic effect to be achieved, and (b) the limitations inherent in the art of compounding such an active material for the treatment of disease in living subjects having a diseased condition in which bodily health is impaired as herein disclosed in detail.

The principal active ingredient is compounded for convenient and effective administration in effective amounts with a suitable pharmaceutically acceptable carrier in dosage unit form as hereinbefore disclosed. A unit dosage form can, for example, contain the principal active compound in amounts ranging from 0.5  $\mu$ g to about 2000 mg. Alternatively, amounts ranging from 200 ng/kg/body weight to above 10 mg/kg/body weight may be administered. The amounts may be for individual active agents or for the combined total of active agents.

Compositions of the present invention include all compositions wherein the compounds of the present invention are contained in an amount which is effective to achieve their intended purpose. They may be administered by any means that achieve their intended purpose. The dosage administered will depend on the age, health, and weight of the recipient, kind of concurrent treatment, if any, frequency of the treatment, and the nature of the effect desired. The dosage of the various compositions can be modified by comparing the relative *in vivo* potencies of the drugs and the bioavailability using no more than routine experimentation.

- 31 -

The pharmaceutical compositions of the invention may be administered to any animal which may experience the beneficial effects of the compounds of the invention. Foremost among such animals are mammals, *e.g.*, humans, although the invention is not intended to be so limited.

5           The following examples are provided by way of illustration to further describe certain preferred embodiments of the invention, and are not intended to be limiting of the present invention, unless specified.

### *Examples*

#### *Example 1*

##### *Copper-Induced, pH Dependent Aggregation of A $\beta$*

##### *Materials and Methods*

##### *a) Preparation of A $\beta$ Stock*

Human A $\beta$  peptide was synthesized, purified and characterized by HPLC analysis, amino acid analysis and mass spectroscopy by W.M. Keck Foundation  
15           Biotechnology Resource Laboratory (Yale University, New Haven, CT). Synthetic A $\beta$  peptide solutions were dissolved in trifluoroethanol (30 % in Milli-Q water (Millipore Corporation, Milford, MA)) or 20 mM HEPES (pH 8.5) at a concentration of 0.5-1.0 g/ml, centrifuged for 20 min. at 10,000g and the supernatant (stock A $\beta$ ) used for subsequent aggregation assays on the day of the  
20           experiment. The concentration of stock A $\beta$  was determined by UV spectroscopy at 214 nm or by Micro BCA protein assay (Pierce, Rockford, IL). The Micro BCA assay was performed by adding 10 $\mu$ l of stock A $\beta$  (or bovine serum albumin standard) to 140  $\mu$ l of distilled water, and then adding an equal volume of supernatant (150 $\mu$ l) to a 96-well plate and measuring the absorbance at 562 nm.  
25           The concentration of A $\beta$  was determined from the BSA standard curve. Prior to use all buffers and stock solutions of metal ions were filtered through a 0.22  $\mu$ m

filter (Gelan Sciences, Ann Arbor, MI) to remove any particulate matter. All metal ions were the chloride salt, except lead nitrate.

*b) Aggregation Assays*

A $\beta$  stock was diluted to 2.5  $\mu$ M in 150 mM NaCl and 20 mM glycine (pH 3-4.5), MES (pH 5-6.2) or HEPES (pH 6.4-8.8), with or without metal ions, incubated (30 min., 37 °C), centrifuged (20 min., 10 000g). The amount of protein in the supernatant was determined by the Micro BCA protein assay as described above.

*c) Turbidometric Assays*

Turbidity measurements were performed as described by Huang, X., *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 272:26464-26470 (1997), except A $\beta$  stock was brought to 10  $\mu$ M (300  $\mu$ l) in 20 mM HEPES buffer, 150 mM NaCl (pH 6.6, 6.8 or 7.4) with or without metal ions prior to incubation (30 min., 37°C). To investigate the pH reversibility of Cu<sup>2+</sup>-induced A $\beta$  aggregation, 25  $\mu$ M A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> and 25  $\mu$ M Cu<sup>2+</sup> were mixed in 67 mM phosphate buffer, 150 mM NaCl (pH 7.4) and turbidity measurements were taken at four 1 min. intervals. Subsequently, 20  $\mu$ l aliquots of 10 mM EDTA or 10 mM Cu<sup>2+</sup> were added into the wells alternatively, and, following a 2 min. delay, a further four readings were taken at 1 min. intervals. After the final EDTA addition and turbidity reading, the mixtures were incubated for an additional 30 min. before taking final readings. To investigate the reversibility of pH mediated Cu<sup>2+</sup>-induced A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> aggregation, 10  $\mu$ M A $\beta$  and 30  $\mu$ M Cu<sup>2+</sup> were mixed in 67 mM phosphate buffer, 150 mM NaCl (pH 7.4) and an initial turbidity measurement taken. Subsequently, the pH of the solution was successively decreased to 6.6 and then increased back to 7.5. The pH of the reaction was monitored with a microprobe (Lazar Research Laboratories Inc., Los Angeles, CA) and the turbidity read at 5 min. intervals for up to 30 min. This cycle was repeated three times.

d) *Immunofiltration Detection of Low Concentrations of A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> Aggregate*

Physiological concentrations of A $\beta$  (8 nM) were brought to 150 mM NaCl, 20 mM HEPES (pH 6.6 or 7.4), 100 nM BSA with CuCl<sub>2</sub> (0, 0.1, 0.2, 0.5 and 2  $\mu$ M) and incubated (30 min., 37°C). The reaction mixtures (200  $\mu$ l) were then placed into the 96-well Easy-Titer ELIFA system (Pierce, Rockford, IL) and filtered through a 0.22  $\mu$ m cellulose acetate filter (MSI, Westboro, MA). Aggregated particles were fixed to the membrane (0.1% glutaraldehyde, 15 min.), washed thoroughly and then probed with the anti-A $\beta$  mAB 6E10 (Senetek, Maryland Heights, MI). Blots were washed and exposed to film in the presence of ECL chemiluminescence reagents (Amersham, Buckinghamshire, England). Immunoreactivity was quantified by transmittance analysis of ECL film from the immunoblots.

e) *A $\beta$  Metal-capture ELISA*

A $\beta$  (1.5 ng/well) was incubated (37°C, 2 hr) in the wells of Cu<sup>2+</sup> coated microtiter plates (Xenopore, Hawthorne, NJ) with increasing concentrations of Cu<sup>2+</sup> (1-100 nM). Remaining ligand binding sites on well surfaces were blocked with 2% gelatin in tris-buffered saline (TBS) (3 hr at 37°C) prior to overnight incubation at room temperature with the anti-A $\beta$  mAb 6E10 (Senetek, Maryland Heights, MI). Anti-mouse IgG coupled to horseradish peroxidase was then added to each well and incubated for 3 hr at 37°C. Bound antibodies were detected by a 30 minute incubation with stable peroxidase substrate buffer/3,3',5,5'-Tetramethyl benzidine (SPSB/TMB) buffer, followed by the addition of 2 M sulfuric acid and measurement of the increase in absorbance at 450 nm.

f) *Extraction of A $\beta$  from Post-mortem Brain Tissue*

Identical regions of frontal cortex (0.5g) from post-mortem brains of individuals with AD, as well as non-AD conditions, were homogenized in TBS, pH 4.7  $\pm$  metal chelators. The homogenate was centrifuged and samples of the soluble supernatant as well as the pellet were extracted into SDS sample buffer.

- 34 -

and assayed for A $\beta$  content by western blotting using monoclonal antibody (mAb) WO2. The data shows a typical (of n=12 comparisons) result comparing the amount of A $\beta$  extracted into the supernatant phase in AD compared to control (young adult) samples. N,N,N',N'-tetrakis [2-pyridyl-methyl] ethylenediamine (TPEN) (5  $\mu$ M) allows the visualization of a population of pelletable A $\beta$  that had not previously been recognized in unaffected brain samples ( Figure 8).

*g) A $\beta$  Polymerization by Copper*

Cu<sup>2+</sup>-induced SDS-resistant oligomerization of A $\beta$ : A $\beta$  (2.5  $\mu$ M), 150 mM NaCl, 20 mM hepes (pH 6.6, 7.4, 9) with or without ZnCl<sub>2</sub> or CuCl<sub>2</sub>. Following incubation (37°C), aliquots of each reaction (2 ng peptide) were collected at 0 d, 1 d, 3 d and 5 d and western blotted using anti-A $\beta$  monoclonal antibody 8E10 ( Figure 9). Migration of the molecular size markers are indicated (kDa). The dimer formed under these conditions has been found to be SDS-resistant. Cu<sup>2+</sup> (2-30  $\mu$ M) induced SDS-resistant polymerization of peptide. Co-incubation with similar concentrations of Zn<sup>2+</sup> accelerates the polymerization, but zinc alone has no effect. The antioxidant sodium metabisulfite moderately attenuates the reaction, while ascorbic acid dramatically accelerates A $\beta$  polymerization. This suggests reduction of Cu<sup>2+</sup> to Cu<sup>+</sup> with the latter mediating SDS-resistant polymerization of A $\beta$ . Mannitol also abolishes the polymerization, suggesting that the polymerization is mediated by the generation of the hydroxyl radical by a Fenton reaction that recruits Cu<sup>+</sup>. It should be noted that other means of visualizing and/or determining the presence or absence of polymerization other than western blot analysis may be used. Such other means include but are not limited to density sedimentation by centrifugation of the samples.

## Results

It has previously been reported that  $Zn^{2+}$  induces rapid precipitation of A $\beta$  *in vitro* (Bush, A.I., *et al.*, *Science* 265:1464 (1994)). This metal has an abnormal metabolism in AD and is highly concentrated in brain regions where A $\beta$  precipitates. The present data indicate that under very slightly acidic conditions, such as in the lactic acidotic AD brain,  $Cu^{2+}$  strikingly induces the precipitation of A $\beta$  through an unknown conformational shift. pH alone dramatically affects A $\beta$  solubility, inducing precipitation when the pH of the incubation approaches the pI of the peptide (pH 5-6). Zinc induces 40-50% of the peptide to precipitate at pH > 6.2, below pH 6.2 the precipitating effects of  $Zn^{2+}$  and acid are not summative. At pH  $\leq$  5,  $Zn^{2+}$  has little effect upon A $\beta$  solubility.  $Cu^{2+}$  is more effective than  $Zn^{2+}$  in precipitating A $\beta$  and even induces precipitation at the physiologically relevant pH 6-7. Copper-induced precipitation of A $\beta$  occurs as the pH falls below 7.0, comparable with conditions of acidosis (Yates, C.M., *et al.*, *J. Neurochem.* 55:1624 (1990)) in the AD brain. Investigation of the precipitating effects of a host or other metal ions in this system indicated that metal ion precipitation of A $\beta$  was limited to copper and zinc, as illustrated, although  $Fe^{2+}$  possesses a partial capacity to induce precipitation (Bush, A.I., *et al.*, *Science* 268:1921 (1995)).

On the basis these *in vitro* findings, the possibility that A $\beta$  deposits in the AD-affected brain may be held in assembly by zinc and copper ions was investigated. Roher and colleagues have recently shown that much of the A $\beta$  that deposits in AD-affected cortex can be solubilized in water (Roher, A.E., *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 271:20631 (1996)). Supporting the clinical relevance of *in vitro* findings, it has recently been demonstrated that metal chelators increase the amount of A $\beta$  extracted by Roher's technique (in neutral saline buffer), and that the extraction of A $\beta$  is increased as the chelator employed has a higher affinity for zinc or copper. Hence TPEN is highly efficient in extracting A $\beta$ , as are TETA, and bathocuproine, EGTA and EDTA are less efficient, requiring higher

- 36 -

concentrations 91 mM) to achieve the same level of recovery as say, TPEN (5  $\mu$ M). Zinc and copper ions (5-50  $\mu$ M) added back to the extracting solution abolish the recovery of A $\beta$  (which is subsequently extracted by the SDS sample buffer in the pellet fraction of the centrifuged brain homogenate suspension), but  
5 Ca<sup>2+</sup> and Mg<sup>2+</sup> added back to the chelator-mediated extracts of A $\beta$  cannot abolish A $\beta$  resolubilization from AD-affected tissue even when these metal ions are present in millimolar concentrations.

Importantly, atomic absorption spectrophotometry assays of the metal content of the chelator-mediated extracts confirms that Cu and Zn are co-released  
10 with A $\beta$  by the chelators, along with lower concentrations of Fe. These data strongly indicate that A $\beta$  deposits (probably of the amorphous type) are held together by Cu and Zn and may also contain Fe. Interestingly, A $\beta$  is not extractable from control brain without the use of chelators. This suggests that metal-assembled A $\beta$  deposits may be the earliest step in the evolution of A $\beta$   
15 plaque pathology.

These findings propelled further inquiries into chemistry of metal ion- A $\beta$  interaction. The precipitating effects upon A $\beta$  of Zn<sup>2+</sup> and Cu<sup>2+</sup> were found to be qualitatively different. Zn-mediated aggregation is reversible with chelation and is not associated with neurotoxicity in primary neuronal cell cultures, whereas  
20 Cu-mediated aggregation is accompanied by the slow formation of covalently-bonded SDS-resistant dimers and induction of neurotoxicity. These neurotoxic SDS-resistant dimers are similar to those described by Roher (Roher, A.E, *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 271:20631 (1996)).

To accurately quantitate the effects of different metals and pH on A $\beta$  solubility, synthetic human A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> (2.5  $\mu$ M) was incubated (37°C) in the presence  
25 of metal ions at various pH for 30 min. The resultant aggregated particles were sedimented by centrifugation to permit determination of soluble A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> in the supernatant. To determine the centrifugation time required to completely sediment the aggregated particles generated under these conditions, A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> was  
30 incubated for 30 min at 37°C with no metal, Zn<sup>2+</sup> (100  $\mu$ M), Cu<sup>2+</sup> (100  $\mu$ M) and

pH (5.5). Reaction mixtures were centrifuged at 10 000g for different times, or ultracentrifuged at 100 000g for 1 h. ( Figure 1). Figure 1 shows the proportion of soluble A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> remaining following centrifugation of reaction mixtures. A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> was incubated (30 min., 37°C) with no metal, under acidic conditions (pH 5.5), Zn<sup>2+</sup> (100  $\mu$ M) or Cu<sup>2+</sup> (100  $\mu$ M), and centrifuged at 10 000g for different time intervals, or at 100,000g (ultracentrifuged) for 1 h for comparison. All data points are means  $\pm$  SD, n = 3.

Given that conformational changes within the N-terminal domain of A $\beta$  are induced by modulating [H<sup>+</sup>] (Soto, C., *et al.*, *J. Neurochem.* 63:1191-1198 (1994)), and that there is a metal (Zn<sup>2+</sup>) binding domain in the same region, experiments were designed to determine whether there was a synergistic effect of pH on metal ion-induced A $\beta$  aggregation. A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> was incubated with different bioessential metal ions at pH 6.6, 6.8 and 7.4. The results are shown in Figure 2A, where "all metals" indicates incubation with a combination containing each metal ion at the nominated concentrations, concurrently. Figure 2A shows the proportion of soluble A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> remaining in the supernatant after incubation (30 min., 37°C) with various metal ions at pH 6.6, 6.8 or 7.4 after centrifugation (10,000g, 20 min.).

The [H<sup>+</sup>] chosen represented the most extreme, yet physiologically plausible [H<sup>+</sup>] that A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> would be likely to encounter *in vivo*. The ability of different bioessential metal ions to aggregate A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> at increasing H<sup>+</sup> concentrations fell into two groups; Mg<sup>2+</sup>, Ca<sup>2+</sup>, Al<sup>3+</sup>, Co<sup>2+</sup>, Hg<sup>2+</sup>, Fe<sup>3+</sup>, Pb<sup>2+</sup> and Cu<sup>2+</sup> showed increasing sensitivity to induce A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> aggregation, while Fe<sup>2+</sup>, Mn<sup>2+</sup>, Ni<sup>2+</sup>, and Zn<sup>2+</sup> were insensitive to alterations in [H<sup>+</sup>] in their ability to aggregate A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub>. Cu<sup>2+</sup> and Hg<sup>2+</sup> induced most aggregation as the [H<sup>+</sup>] increased, although the [H<sup>+</sup>] insensitive Zn<sup>2+</sup>-induced aggregation produced a similar amount of aggregation. Fe<sup>2+</sup>, but not Fe<sup>3+</sup>, also induced considerable aggregation as the [H<sup>+</sup>] increased, possibly reflecting increased aggregation as a result of increased crosslinking of the peptide.



Similar results were obtained when these experiments were repeated using turbidometry as an index of aggregation (Figure 2B). The data indicate the absorbance changes between reaction mixtures with and without metal ions at pH 6.6, 6.8 or 7.4. Thus, A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> has both a pH insensitive and a pH sensitive metal binding site. At higher concentrations of metal ions this pattern was repeated, except Co<sup>2+</sup> and Al<sup>3+</sup>-induced A $\beta$  aggregation became pH insensitive, and Mn became sensitive (Figure 2C).

Since <sup>64</sup>Cu is impractically short-lived (t<sub>1/2</sub> = 13 h), a novel metal-capture ELISA assay was used to perform competition analysis of A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> binding to a microtiter plate impregnated with Cu<sup>2+</sup>, as described in Materials and Methods. Results are shown in Figure 3. All assays were performed in triplicate and are means  $\pm$  SD, n=3. Competition analysis revealed that A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> has at least one high affinity, saturable Cu<sup>2+</sup> binding site with a K<sub>d</sub> = 900 pM at pH 7.4 (Figure 3). The affinity of A $\beta$  for Cu<sup>2+</sup> is higher than that for Zn<sup>2+</sup> (Bush, A.I., *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 269:12152 (1994)). Since Cu<sup>2+</sup> does not decrease Zn<sup>2+</sup>-induced aggregation (Bush, A.I., *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 269:12152 (1994)), indicating Cu<sup>2+</sup> does not displace bound Zn<sup>2+</sup>, there are likely to be two separate metal binding sites. This is supported by the fact that there is both a pH sensitive and insensitive interaction with different metal ions.

Since the conformational state and solubility of A $\beta$  is altered at different pH (Soto, C., *et al.*, *J. Neurochem.* 63:1191-1198 (1994)), the effects of [H<sup>+</sup>] on Zn<sup>2+</sup>- and Cu<sup>2+</sup>-induced A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> aggregation were studied. Results are shown in Figures 4A, 4B and 4C. Figure 4A shows the proportion of soluble A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> remaining in the supernatant following incubation (30 min., 37°C) at pH 3.0-8.8 in buffered saline  $\pm$  Zn<sup>2+</sup> (30  $\mu$ M) or Cu<sup>2+</sup> (30  $\mu$ M) and centrifugation (10 000g, 20 min.), expressed as a percentage of starting peptide. All data points are means  $\pm$  SD, n=3. [H<sup>+</sup>] alone precipitates A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> (2.5  $\mu$ M) as the solution is lowered below pH 7.4, and dramatically once the pH falls below 6.3 (Figure 4A). At pH 5.0, 80% of the peptide is precipitated, but the peptide is not aggregated by acidic environments below pH 5, confirming and extending earlier reports on the effect

of pH on A $\beta$  solubility (Burdick, D., *J. Biol. Chem.* 267:546-554 (1992)). Zn<sup>2+</sup> (30  $\mu$ M) induced a constant level (~50%) of aggregation between pH 6.2-8.5, while below pH 6.0, aggregation could be explained solely by the effect of [H<sup>+</sup>].

In the presence of Cu<sup>2+</sup> (30  $\mu$ M), a decrease in pH from 8.8 to 7.4 induced a marked drop in A $\beta_{1-40}$  solubility, while a slight decrease below pH 7.4 strikingly potentiated the effect of Cu<sup>2+</sup> on the peptide's aggregation. Surprisingly, Cu<sup>2+</sup> caused >85 % of the available peptide to aggregate by pH 6.8, a pH which plausibly represents a mildly acidotic environment. Thus, conformational changes in A $\beta$  brought about by small increases in [H<sup>+</sup>] result in the unmasking of a second metal binding site that leads to its rapid self-aggregation. Below pH 5.0, the ability of both Zn<sup>2+</sup> and Cu<sup>2+</sup> to aggregate A $\beta$  was diminished, consistent with the fact that Zn binding to A $\beta$  is abolished below pH 6.0 (Bush, A.I., *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 269:12152 (1994)), probably due to protonation of histidine residues.

The relationship between pH and Cu<sup>2+</sup> on A $\beta_{1-40}$  solubility was then further defined by the following experiments (Figure 4B). The proportion of soluble A $\beta_{1-40}$  remaining in the supernatant after incubation (30 min., 37°C) at pH 5.4-7.8 with different Cu<sup>2+</sup> concentrations (0, 5, 10, 20, 30  $\mu$ M), and centrifugation (10,000g, 20 min.), was measured and expressed as a percentage of starting peptide. All data points are means  $\pm$  SD, n=3. At pH 7.4, Cu<sup>2+</sup>-induced A $\beta$  aggregation was 50% less than that induced by Zn<sup>2+</sup> over the same concentration range, consistent with earlier reports (Bush, A.I., *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 269:12152 (1994)). There was a potentiating relationship between [H<sup>+</sup>] and [Cu<sup>2+</sup>] in producing A $\beta$  aggregation; as the pH fell, less Cu<sup>2+</sup> was required to induce the same level of aggregation, suggesting that [H<sup>+</sup>] is controlling Cu<sup>2+</sup> induced A $\beta_{1-40}$  aggregation.

To confirm that this reaction occurs at physiological concentrations of A $\beta_{1-40}$  and Cu<sup>2+</sup>, a novel filtration immunodetection system was employed. This technique enabled the determination of the relative amount of A $\beta_{1-40}$  aggregation in the presence of different concentrations of H<sup>+</sup> and Cu<sup>2+</sup> (Figure 4C). The

- 40 -

relative aggregation of nM concentrations of A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> at pH 7.4 and pH 6.6 in the presence of different Cu<sup>2+</sup> concentrations (0, 0.1, 0.2, 0.5  $\mu$ M) were determined by this method. Data represent mean reflectance values of immunoblot densitometry expressed as a ratio of the signal obtained when the peptide is treated in the absence of Cu<sup>2+</sup>. All data points are means  $\pm$  SD, n = 2.

This sensitive technique confirmed that physiological concentrations of A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> are aggregated under mildly acidic conditions and that aggregation was greatly enhanced by the presence of Cu<sup>2+</sup> at concentrations as low as 200 nM. Furthermore, as previously observed at higher A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> concentrations, a decrease in pH from 7.4 to 6.6 potentiated the effect of Cu<sup>2+</sup> on aggregation of physiological concentrations of A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub>. Thus, A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> aggregation is concentration independent down to 8 nM where Cu<sup>2+</sup> is available.

It has recently been shown that Zn<sup>2+</sup> mediated A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> aggregation is reversible whereas A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> aggregation induced by pH 5.5 was irreversible. Therefore, experiments were performed to determine whether Cu<sup>2+</sup>/pH-mediated A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> aggregation was reversible. Cu<sup>2+</sup>-induced A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> aggregation at pH 7.4 was reversible following EDTA chelation, although for each new aggregation cycle, complete resolubilization of the aggregates required a longer incubation. This result suggested that a more complex aggregate is formed during each subsequent aggregation cycle, preventing the chelator access to remove Cu<sup>2+</sup> from the peptide. This is supported by the fact that complete resolubilization occurs with time, and indicates that the peptide is not adopting a structural conformation that is insensitive to Cu<sup>2+</sup>-induced aggregation/EDTA-resolubilization.

The reversibility of pH potentiated Cu<sup>2+</sup>-induced A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> aggregation was studied by turbidometry between pH 7.5 to 6.6, representing H<sup>+</sup> concentration extremes that might be found *in vivo* (Figures 5A and 5B). Unlike the irreversible aggregation of A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> observed at pH 5.5. Cu<sup>2+</sup>-induced A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> aggregation was fully reversible as the pH oscillated between pH 7.4 and 6.6. Figure 5A shows the turbidometric analysis of Cu<sup>2+</sup>-induced A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> aggregation at pH 7.4 reversed by successive cycles of chelator (EDTA), as indicated. Figure

5B shows turbidometric analysis of the reversibility of  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$ -induced  $\text{A}\beta_{1-40}$  as the pH cycles between 7.4 and 6.6. Thus, subtle conformational changes within the peptide induced by changing  $[\text{H}^+]$  within a narrow pH window, that corresponds to physiologically plausible  $[\text{H}^+]$ , allows the aggregation or resolubilization of the peptide in the presence of  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$ .

### Discussion

These results suggest that subtle conformational changes in  $\text{A}\beta$  induced by  $[\text{H}^+]$  promote the interaction of  $\text{A}\beta_{1-40}$  with metal ions, in particular  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$  and  $\text{Hg}^{2+}$  allowing self-aggregate or resolubilize depending on the  $[\text{H}^+]$  (Figures 2A-2C, 4A-4C). A decrease in pH below 7.0 increases the  $\beta$ -sheet conformation (Soto, C., *et al.*, *J. Neurochem.* 63:1191-1198 (1994)), and this may allow the binding of  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$  to soluble  $\text{A}\beta$  that could further alter the conformation of the peptide allowing for self aggregation, or simply help coordinate adjacent  $\text{A}\beta$  molecules in the assembly of the peptides into aggregates. Conversely, increasing pH above 7.0 promotes the  $\alpha$ -helical conformation (Soto, C., *et al.*, *J. Neurochem.* 63:1191-1198 (1994)), which may alter the conformational state of the dimeric aggregated peptide, releasing Cu and thereby destabilizing the aggregate with the resultant release of  $\text{A}\beta$  into solution. Thus, in the presence of  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$ ,  $\text{A}\beta_{1-40}$  oscillates between an aggregated and soluble state dependent upon the  $[\text{H}^+]$ .

$\text{A}\beta_{1-40}$  aggregation by  $\text{Co}^{2+}$ , like  $\text{Zn}^{2+}$ , was pH insensitive and per mole induced a similar level of aggregation. Unlike  $\text{Zn}^{2+}$ ,  $\text{A}\beta_{1-40}$  binding of  $\text{Co}^{2+}$  may be employed for the structural determination of the pH insensitive binding site given its nuclear magnetic capabilities (See Figure 2C).

The biphasic relationship of  $\text{A}\beta$  solubility with pH mirrors the conformational changes previously observed by CD spectra within the N-terminal fragment (residues 1-28) of  $\text{A}\beta$  (reviewed in (Soto, C., *et al.*, *J. Neurochem.* 63:1191-1198 (1994));  $\alpha$ -helical between pH 1-4 and >7, but  $\beta$ -sheet between pH

4-7. The irreversible aggregates of A $\beta$  formed at pH 5.5 supports the hypothesis that the  $\beta$ -sheet conformation is a pathway for A $\beta$  aggregation into amyloid fibrils. Since aggregates produced by Zn<sup>2+</sup> and Cu<sup>2+</sup> under mildly acidic conditions (Figures 5A and 5B) are chelator/pH reversible, their conformation may be the higher energy  $\alpha$ -helical conformation.

These results now indicate that there are three physiologically plausible conditions which could aggregate A $\beta$ : pH (Figures 1, 4A-4C; Fraser, P.E., *et al.*, *Biophys. J.* 60:1190-1201 (1991); Barrow, C.J. and Zagorski, M.G., *Science* 253:179-182 (1991); Burdick, D., *J. Biol. Chem.* 267:546-554 (1992); Barrow, C.J., *et al.*, *J. Mol. Biol.* 225:1075-1093 (1992); Zagorski, M.G. and Barrow, C.J., *Biochemistry* 31:5621-5631 (1992); Kirshenbaum, K. and Daggett, V., *Biochemistry* 34:7629-7639 (1995); Wood, S.J., *et al.*, *J. Mol. Biol.* 256:870-877 (1996), [Zn<sup>2+</sup>] (Figures 1, 2A and 2B, 4A-4C; Bush, A.I., *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 269:12152 (1994); Bush, A.I., *et al.*, *Science* 265:1464 (1994); Bush, A.I., *et al.*, *Science* 268:1921 (1995); Wood, S.J., *et al.*, *J. Mol. Biol.* 256:870-877 (1996)) and under mildly acidic conditions, [Cu<sup>2+</sup>] (Figures 2A, 4A-4C, 5B). Interestingly, changes in metal ion concentrations and pH are common features of the inflammatory response to injury. Therefore, the binding of Cu<sup>2+</sup> and Zn<sup>2+</sup> to A $\beta$  may be of particular importance during inflammatory processes, since local sites of inflammation can become acidic (Trehaut, P.S. & McCarty, D.J., *Arthr. Rheum.* 14:475-484 (1971); Menkin, V., *Am. J. Pathol.* 10:193-210 (1934)) and both Zn<sup>2+</sup> and Cu<sup>2+</sup> are rapidly mobilized in response to inflammation (Lindeman, R.D., *et al.*, *J. Lab. Clin. Med.* 81:194-204 (1973); Terhune, M.W. & Sandstead, H.H., *Science* 177:68-69 (1972); Hsu, J.M., *et al.*, *J. Nutrition* 99:425-432 (1969); Haley, J.V., *J. Surg. Res.* 27:168-174 (1979); Milaninio, R., *et al.*, *Advances in Inflammation Research* 1:281-291 (1979); Frieden, E., in *Inflammatory Diseases and Copper*, Sorenson, J.R.J., ed, Humana Press, New Jersey (1980), pp. 159-169).

Serum copper levels increase during inflammation, associated with increases in ceruloplasmin, a Cu<sup>2+</sup> transporting protein that may donate Cu<sup>2+</sup> to

enzymes active in processes of basic metabolism and wound healing such as cytochrome oxidase and lysyl oxidase (Giampaolo, V., *et al.*, in *Inflammatory Diseases and Copper*, Sorenson, J.R.J., ed, Humana Press, New Jersey (1980), pp. 329-345; Peacock, E.E. and van Winkle, W., in *Wound Repair*, W.B. Saunders Co., Philadelphia, pp. 145-155) (1976)). Since the release of  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$  from ceruloplasmin is greatly facilitated by acidic environments where the cupric ion is reduced to its cuprous form (Owen, C.A., Jr., *Proc. Soc. Exp. Biol. Med.* 149:681-682 (1975)), periods of mild acidosis may promote an environment of increased free  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$ . Similarly, aggregation of another amyloid protein, the acute phase reactant serum amyloid P component (SAP) to the cell wall polysaccharide, zymosan, has been observed with  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$  at acidic pH (Potempa, L.A., *et al.*, *Journal of Biological Chemistry* 260:12142-12147 (1985)). Thus, exchange of  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$  to  $\text{A}\beta_{1-40}$  during times of decreased pH may provide a mechanism for altering the biochemical reactivity of the protein required by the cell under mildly acidic conditions. Such a function may involve alterations in the aggregation/adhesive properties (Figures 1-5B) or oxidative functions of  $\text{A}\beta$  at local sites of inflammation.

While the pathogenic nature of  $\text{A}\beta_{1-42}$  in AD is well described (Maury, C.P.J., *Lab. Investig.* 72:4-16 (1995); Multhaup, G., *et al.*, *Nature* 325:733-736 (1987)), the function of the smaller  $\text{A}\beta_{1-40}$  remains unclear. The present data suggest that  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$ -binding and aggregation of  $\text{A}\beta$  will occur when the pH of the microenvironment rises. This conclusion can be based on the finding that the reaction is  $[\text{H}^+]$  and  $[\text{Cu}^{2+}]$  dependent and reversible within a narrow, physiologically plausible, pH window. This is further supported by the specificity and high affinity of  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$  binding under mildly acidic conditions compared to the constant  $\text{Zn}^{2+}$ -induced aggregation (and binding) of  $\text{A}\beta_{1-40}$  over a wide pH range (6.2-8.5). The brain contains high levels of both  $\text{Zn}^{2+}$  (~150  $\mu\text{M}$ ; Frederickson, C.J. *International Review of Neurobiology* 31:145-237 (1989)) and  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$  (~100  $\mu\text{M}$ ; Warren, P.J., *et al.*, *Brain* 83:709-717 (1960); Owen, C.A., *Physiological Aspects of Copper*, Noyes Publications, Park Ridge, New Jersey (1982), pp160-

191). Intracellular concentrations are approximately 1000 and 100 fold higher than extracellular concentrations. This large gradient between intracellular and extracellular compartments suggests a highly energy dependent mechanism is required in order to sequester these metals within neurons. Therefore, any alterations in energy metabolism, or injury, may affect the reuptake of these metal ions and promote their release into the extracellular space, and together with the synergistic affects of decreased pH (see above) induce membrane bound  $A\beta_{1-40}$  to aggregate. Since increased concentrations of  $Zn^{2+}$  and  $Cu^{2+}$ , and decreased pH, are common features of all forms of cellular insult, the initiation of  $A\beta_{1-40}$  function likely occurs in a coordinated fashion to alter adhesive and/or oxidative properties of this membrane protein essential for maintaining cell integrity and viability. That  $A\beta_{1-40}$  has such a high affinity for these metal ions, indicates a protein that has evolved to respond to slight changes in the concentration of extracellular metal ions. This is supported by the fact that aggregation in the presence of Cu is approx. 30% at pH 7.1, the pH of the brain (Yates, C.M., *et al.*, *J. Neurochem.* 55:1624-1630 (1990)), but 85% at pH 6.8. Taken together, our present results indicate that  $A\beta_{1-40}$  may have evolved to respond to biochemical changes associated with neuronal damage as part of the locally mediated response to inflammation or cell injury. Thus, it is possible that  $Cu^{2+}$  mediated  $A\beta_{1-40}$  binding and aggregation might be a purposive cellular response to an environment of mild acidosis.

The deposition of amyloid systemically is usually associated with an inflammatory response (Pepys, M.B. & Baltz, M.L., *Adv. Immunol.* 34:141-212 (1983); Cohen, A.S., in *Arthritis and Allied Conditions*, D.J. McCarty, ed., Lea and Febiger, Philadelphia, pp. 1273-1293 (1989); Kisilevsky, R., *Lab. Investig.* 49:381-390 (1983)). For example, serum amyloid A, one of the major acute phase reactant proteins that is elevated during inflammation, is the precursor of amyloid A protein that is deposited in various tissues during chronic inflammation, leading to secondary amyloidosis (Gorevic, P.D., *et al.*, *Ann. NY Acad. Sci.* 380:393 (1982)). An involvement of inflammatory mechanisms has

been suggested as contributing to plaque formation in AD (Kisilevsky, R., *Mol. Neurobiol.* 49:65-66 (1994)). Acute-phase proteins such as alpha 1-antichymotrypsin and c-reactive protein, elements of the complement system and activated microglial and astroglial cells are consistently found in AD brains.

5           The rapid appearance, within days of A $\beta$  deposits and APP immunoreactivity following head injury (Roberts, G.W., *et al.*, *Lancet.* 338:1422-1423 (1991); Pierce, J.E.S., *et al.*, *Journal of Neuroscience* 16:1083-1090 (1996)), rather than the more gradual accumulation of A $\beta$  into more dense core amyloid plaques over months or years in AD may be compatible with the release  
10 of Zn<sup>2+</sup>, Cu<sup>2+</sup> and mild acidosis in this time frame. Thus, pH/metal ion mediated aggregation may form the basis for the amorphous A $\beta$  deposits observed in the aging brain and following head injury, allowing the maintenance of endothelial and neuronal integrity while limiting the oxidative stress associated with injury that may lead to a diminishment of structural function.

15           Since decreased cerebral pH is a complication of aging (Yates, C.M., *et al.*, *J. Neurochem.* 55:1624-1630 (1990)), these data indicate that Cu and Zn mediated A $\beta$  aggregation may be a normal cellular response to an environment of mild acidosis. However, prolonged exposure of A $\beta$  to an environment of lowered cerebral pH may promote increased concentrations of free metal ions and  
20 reactive oxygen species, and the inappropriate interaction of A $\beta$ <sub>1-42</sub> over time promoting the formation of irreversible A $\beta$  oligomers and its subsequent deposition as amyloid in AD. The reversibility of this pH mediated Cu<sup>2+</sup> aggregation does however present the potential for therapeutic intervention. Thus, cerebral alkalization may be explored as a therapeutic modality for the  
25 reversibility of amyloid deposition *in vivo*.



## Example 2

### *Free Radical Formation and SOD-like activity of Alzheimer's A $\beta$ Peptides*

#### *Materials and Methods*

##### *a) Determination of Cu<sup>+</sup> and Fe<sup>2+</sup>*

This method is modified from a protocol assaying serum copper and iron (Landers, J.W., *et al.*, *Amer. Clin. Path.* 29:590 (1958)). It is based on the fact that there are optimal visible absorption wavelengths of 483 nm and 535 nm for Cu<sup>+</sup> complexed with bathocuproinedisulfonic (BC) anion and Fe<sup>2+</sup> coordinated by bathophenanthrolinedisulfonic (BP) anion, respectively.

Determination of molar absorption of these two complexes was accomplished essentially as follows. An aliquot of 500  $\mu$ l of each complex (500  $\mu$ M, in PBS pH 7.4, with ligands in excess) was pipetted into 1 cm-pathlength quartz cuvette, and their absorbances were measured. Their molar absorptivity was determined based on Beer-Lambert's Law. Cu<sup>+</sup>-BC has a molar absorptivity of 2762 M<sup>-1</sup> cm<sup>-1</sup>, while Fe<sup>2+</sup>-BP has a molar absorptivity of 7124 M<sup>-1</sup> cm<sup>-1</sup>.

Determination of the equivalent vertical pathlength for Cu<sup>+</sup>-BC and Fe<sup>2+</sup>-BP in a 96-well plate was carried out essentially as follows. Absorbances of the two complexes with a 500  $\mu$ M, 100  $\mu$ M, 50  $\mu$ M, and 10  $\mu$ M concentration of relevant metal ions (Cu<sup>+</sup>, Fe<sup>2+</sup>) were determined both by 96-well plate readers (300  $\mu$ L) and UV-vis spectrometer (500  $\mu$ L), with PBS, pH 7.4, as the control blank. The resulting absorbances from the plate reader regress against absorbances by a UV-vis spectrometer. The slope k from the linear regression line is equivalent to the vertical pathlength if the measurement is carried out on a plate. The results are:

	k(cm)	r <sup>2</sup>
Cu <sup>+</sup> -BC	1.049	0.998
Fe <sup>2+</sup> -BP	0.856	0.999

With molar absorbancy and equivalent vertical pathlength in hand, the concentrations ( $\mu\text{M}$ ) of  $\text{Cu}^+$  or  $\text{Fe}^{2+}$  can be deduced based on Beer-Lambert's Law, using proper buffers as controls.

$$\text{for } \text{Fe}^{2+}: [\text{Fe}^{2+}] (\mu\text{M}) = \frac{\Delta A (535\text{nm})}{(7124 \times 0.856)} \times 10^6$$

$$\text{for } \text{Cu}^+: [\text{Cu}^+] (\mu\text{M}) = \frac{\Delta A(483\text{nm})}{(2762 \times 1.049)} \times 10^6$$

where  $\Delta A$  is absorbancy difference between sample and control blank.

#### 5      b)      *Determination of $\text{H}_2\text{O}_2$*

This method is modified from a  $\text{H}_2\text{O}_2$  assay reported recently (Han, J.C., *et al.*, *Anal. Biochem.* 234:107 (1996)). The advantages of this modified  $\text{H}_2\text{O}_2$  assay on 96-well plate include high throughput, excellent sensitivity ( $\sim 1 \mu\text{M}$ ), and the elimination of the need for a standard curve of  $\text{H}_2\text{O}_2$ , which is problematic due to the labile chemical property of  $\text{H}_2\text{O}_2$ .

10       $\text{A}\beta$  peptides were co-incubated with a  $\text{H}_2\text{O}_2$ -trapping reagent (Tris(2-carboxyethyl)-phosphine hydrochloride, TCEP,  $100 \mu\text{M}$ ) in PBS (pH 7.4 or 7.0) at  $37^\circ\text{C}$  for 30 mins. Then 5,5'-dithio-bis(2-nitrobenzoic acid) (DBTNB,  $100 \mu\text{M}$ ) was added to react with remaining TCEP. The product of this reaction has a characteristic absorbance maximum of 412 nm [18]. The assay was adapted to a 96-well format using a standard absorbance range (see Figure 11).

15      The chemical scheme for this novel method is:

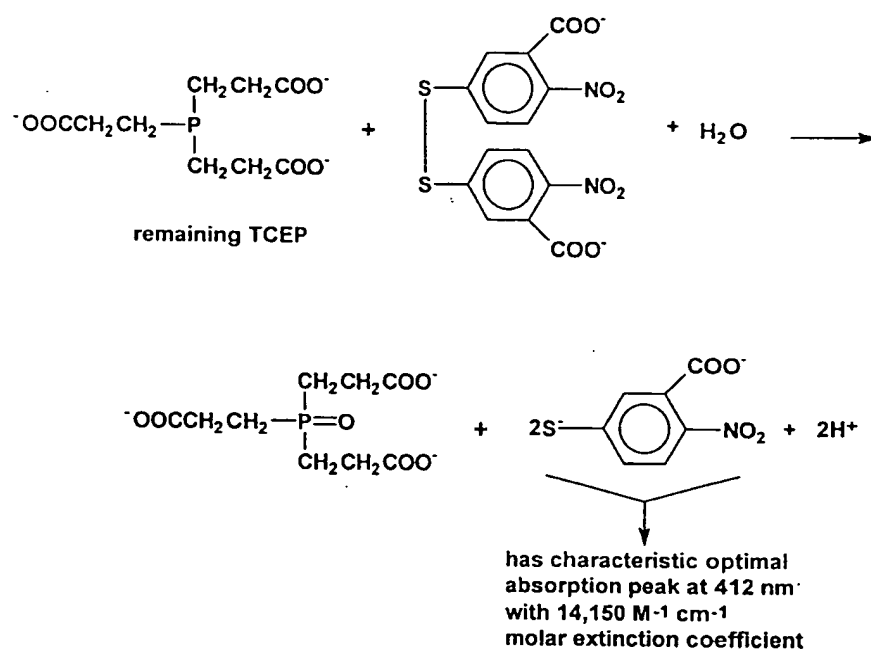
- 48 -

Scheme I:

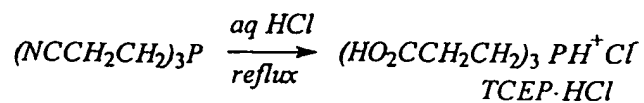


(TCEP) [Tris (2-carboxethyl) phosphine]

Scheme II:



TCEP·HCl was synthesized by hydrolyzing tris (2-cyno-ethyl) phosphine (purchased from Johnson-Mathey (Waydhill, MA)), in refluxing aqueous HCl (Burns, J.A.. *et al.*, *J. Org. Chem.* 56:2648 (1991)) as shown below.



- 49 -

In order to carry out the above-described assay in a 96-well plate, it was necessary to calculate the equivalent vertical pathlength of 2-nitro-5-thiobenzoic acid (TMB) in a 96-well plate. This determination was carried out essentially as described for Cu<sup>+</sup>-BC and Fe<sup>2+</sup>-BP in Example 5. The resulting absorbancies from the plate reader regress against absorbancies by a UV-vis spectrometer. The slope k from the linear regression line is equivalent to the vertical pathlength if the measurement is carried out on a plate. The results are:

k	r <sup>2</sup>
0.875	1.00

The concentration of H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> can then be deduced from the difference in absorbance between the sample and the control (sample plus 1000 U/μl catalase)

$$[H_2O_2] (\mu M) = \frac{\Delta A (412nm)}{(2 \times 0.875 \times 14150)}$$

c) **Determination of OH•**

Determination of OH• was performed as described in Gutteridge *et al.* *Biochim. Biophys. Acta* 759: 38-41 (1983).

d) **Cu<sup>+</sup> Generation by Aβ: Influence of Zn<sup>2+</sup> and pH**

Aβ (10 μM in PBS, pH 7.4 or 6.8, as shown) was incubated for 30 minutes (37°C) in the presence of Cu<sup>2+</sup> 10 μM ± Zn<sup>2+</sup> 10 μM). Cu<sup>+</sup> levels (n=3, ±SD) were assayed against a standard curve. These data indicate that the presence of Zn<sup>2+</sup> can mediate the reduction of Cu<sup>2+</sup> in a mildly acidic environment. The effects of zinc upon these reactions are strongly in evidence but complex. Since the presence of 10 μM zinc will precipitate the peptide, it is clear that the peptide possesses redox activity even when it is not in the soluble

phase, suggesting that cortical A $\beta$  deposits will not be inert in terms of generating these highly reactive products. Cerebral zinc metabolism is deregulated in AD, and therefore levels of interstitial zinc may play an important role in adjusting the Cu<sup>+</sup> and H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> production generated by A $\beta$ . The rat homologue of A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> does not  
5 manifest the redox reactivity of the human equivalent. Insulin, a histidine-containing peptide that can bind copper and zinc, exhibits no Cu<sup>2+</sup> reduction.

*e) Hydrogen Peroxide Production by A $\beta$  species*

A $\beta$ <sub>1-42</sub> (10  $\mu$ M) was incubated for 1 hr at 37°C, pH 7.4 in ambient air (first bar), continuous argon purging (Ar), continuous oxygen enrichment (O<sub>2</sub>) at pH  
10 7.0 (7.0), or in the presence of the iron chelator desferioxamine (220  $\mu$ M; DFO). Variant A $\beta$  species (10  $\mu$ M) were tested: A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> (A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub>), rat A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> (rA $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub>), and scrambled A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> (sA $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub>) were incubated for 1 hr at 37°C, pH 7.4 in ambient air. Values (mean  $\pm$ SD, n=3) represent triplicate samples minus values derived from control samples run under identical conditions in the presence of catalase (10  
15 U/ml). The details of the experiment are as follows: A $\beta$  peptides were co-incubated with a H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub>-trapping reagent (Tris(2-carboxyethyl)-phosphine hydrochloride, TCEP, 100  $\mu$ M) in PBS (pH 7.4 or 7.0) at 37°C for 30 mins. Then 5,5'-dithio-bis(2-nitrobenzoic acid) (DTNB, 100  $\mu$ M) was added to react with remaining TCEP, the product has a characteristic absorbance maximum of  
20 412 nm. The assay was adapted to a 96-well format using a standard absorbance range.

*Results and Discussion*

*A $\beta$  exhibits metal-dependent and independent redox activity*

Because A $\beta$  was observed to be covalently linked by Cu, the ability of the  
25 peptide to reduce metals and generate hydroxyl radicals was studied. The bathocuproine and bathophenanthroline reduced metal assay technique employed by Multhaup *et al.* was used in order to determine that APP itself possesses a Cu<sup>2+</sup> reducing site on its ectodomain (Multhaup, G., *et al.*, *Science* 271:1406 (1996)).

It has been discovered that A $\beta$  possesses a striking ability to reduce both Fe<sup>3+</sup> to Fe<sup>2+</sup>, and Cu<sup>2+</sup> to Cu<sup>+</sup>, modulated by Zn<sup>2+</sup> and pH (6.6-7.4) (See Figure 10). It is of great interest that the relative redox activity of the peptides studied correlates so well with their relative pathogenicity viz A $\beta$ <sub>1-42</sub> > A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> > ratA $\beta$  in all redox assays studied. Since one of the caveats in using the reduced metals assay is that the detection agents can exaggerate the oxidation potential of Cu<sup>2+</sup> or Fe (III), other redox products were explored by assays where no metal ion indicators were necessary. It was discovered that hydrogen peroxide was rapidly formed by A $\beta$  species (Figure 11). Thus, A $\beta$  produces both H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> and reduced metals whilst also binding zinc. Structurally, this is difficult to envisage for a small peptide, but we have recently shown that A $\beta$  is dimeric in physiological buffers. Since H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> and reduced metal species are produced in the same vicinity, these reaction products are liable to produce the highly toxic hydroxyl radical by Fenton chemistry, and the formation of hydroxyl radicals from these peptides has now been shown with the thiobarbituric acid assay. The formation of hydroxyl radicals correlates with the covalent polymerization of the peptide (Figure 9) and can be blocked by hydroxyl scavengers. Thus the concentrations of Fe, Cu, Zn & H<sup>+</sup> in the brain interstitial milieu could be important in facilitating precipitation and neurotoxicity for A $\beta$  by direct (dimer formation) and indirect (Fe<sup>2+</sup>/Cu<sup>+</sup> and H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> formation) mechanisms.

H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> production by A $\beta$  explains the mechanism by which H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> has been described to mediate neurotoxicity (Behl, C. *et al.*, *Cell* 77:827 (1994)), previously thought to be the product of cellular overproduction alone. Interestingly, the scrambled A $\beta$  peptide (same size and residue content as Figure 6) produces appreciable H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> but no hydroxyl radicals. This is because the scrambled A $\beta$  peptide is unable to reduce metal ions. This leads to the conclusion that what makes A $\beta$  such a potent neurotoxin is its capacity to produce both reduced metals and H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> at the same time. This "double whammy" can then produce hydroxyl radicals by the Fenton reaction, especially if the H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> is not rapidly removed from the vicinity of the peptide. Catalase and glutathione

- 52 -

peroxidase are the principal means of catabolizing  $H_2O_2$ , and their levels are low in the brain, especially in AD, perhaps explaining the propensity of  $A\beta$  to accumulate in brain tissue.

Figure 11 shows that the production of  $H_2O_2$  is oxygen dependent, and further investigation has indicated that  $A\beta$  can spontaneously produce the superoxide radical ( $O_2^-$ ) in the absence of metal ions. This property of  $A\beta$  is particularly exaggerated in the case of  $A\beta_{1-42}$ , probably explaining why this peptide is more neurotoxic and more enriched than  $A\beta_{1-40}$  in amyloid.  $O_2^-$  generation will be subject to spontaneous dismutation to generate  $H_2O_2$ , however, this is a relatively slow reaction, although it may account for the majority of the  $H_2O_2$  detected in our  $A\beta$  assays.  $O_2^-$  is reactive, and the function of superoxide dismutase (SOD) is to accelerate the dismutation to produce  $H_2O_2$  which is then catabolized by catalase and peroxidases into oxygen and water. The most abundant form of SOD is Cu/Zn SOD, mutations of which cause another neurodegenerative disease, amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (Rosen, D., *et al.*, *Nature* 364:362 (1993)). Since  $A\beta$ , like Cu/Zn SOD, is a dimeric protein that binds Cu and Zn and reduces  $Cu^{2+}$  and  $Fe^{3+}$ , we studied the  $O_2^-$  dismutation behavior of  $A\beta$  in the  $\mu$ sec time-scale using laser pulse photolysis. These experiments have shown that  $A\beta$  exhibits Fe/Cu-dependent SOD-like activity with rate constants of dismutation at  $\approx 10^8 M^{-1} sec^{-1}$ , which are strikingly similar to SOD. Hence,  $A\beta$  appears to be a good candidate to possess the same function as SOD, and therefore may function as an antioxidant. This may explain why oxidative stresses cause it to be released by cells (Frederikse, P.H., *et al.*, *Journal of Biological Chemistry* 271: 10169 (1996)). However, if  $A\beta_{1-42}$  is involved in the reaction to oxidative stress, or if the  $H_2O_2$  clearance is compromised at the cellular level,  $A\beta$  will accumulate, recruiting more  $O_2$  and producing more  $O_2^-$  leading to a vicious cycle and localizing tissue peroxidation damage and protein cross-linking.

### *Example 3*

#### *Therapeutic Agents for Inhibition of Metal-Mediated Production of Reactive Oxygen Species*

##### *Materials and Methods*

###### *a) Synthesis of Peptides*

Synthetic A $\beta$  peptides A $\beta_{1-40}$  and A $\beta_{1-42}$  were synthesized by the W. Keck Laboratory, Yale, CT. In order to verify the reproducibility of the data obtained with these peptides, confirmatory data were obtained by reproducing experiments with these A $\beta$  peptides synthesized and obtained from other sources: Glabe laboratory, University of California, Irvine, CA, Multhaup Laboratory, University of Heidelberg, U.S. Peptides, Bachem, and Sigma. Rat A $\beta$  was synthesized and characterized by the Multhaup Laboratory, University of Heidelberg. A $\beta_{1-28}$  was purchased from U.S. Peptides, Bachem, and Sigma. A $\beta$  peptide stock solutions were prepared in chelex-100 resin (BioRad) treated water and quantified.

###### *b) Metal Reduction Assay*

The metal reduction assay was performed using a 96-well microtiter plate (Costar) based upon a modification of established protocols (Landers, J.W., *et al.*, *Amer. Clin. Path.* 29:590 (1958); Landers, J.W., *et al.*, *Clinica Chimica Acta* 3:329 (1958)). Polypeptides (10  $\mu$ M) or Vitamin C (100  $\mu$ M), metal ions (10  $\mu$ M, Fe(NO<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub> or Cu(NO<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>), and reduced metal ion indicators, bathophenanthrolinedisulfonic acid (BP, for Fe<sup>2+</sup>, Sigma, 200 $\mu$ M) or bathocuproinedisulfonic acid (BC, for Cu<sup>+</sup>, Sigma, 200 RM), were coincubated in phosphate buffered saline (PBS), pH 7.4, for 1 hr at 37°C. The metal ion solutions were prepared by direct dilution in the buffer from their aqueous stocks purchased from National Institute of Standards and



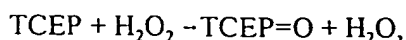
Technology (NIST). Absorbances were then measured at 536 nm ( $\text{Fe}^{2+}$ -BP complex) and 483 nm ( $\text{Cu}^+$ -BC complex), respectively, using a 96-well plate reader (SPECTRAmax 250, Molecular Devices, CA). In control samples, both metal ion and indicator were present to determine the background buffer signal. As a further control, both metal ion and peptide were present in the absence of indicator to estimate the contribution of light scattering due to turbidity to the absorbance reading at these wavelengths. The net absorbances ( $\Delta A$ ) at 536 nm or 483 nm were obtained by deducting the absorbances from these controls from the absorbances generated by the peptide and metal in the presence of the respective indicator.

The concentrations of reduced metal ions ( $\text{Fe}^{2+}$  or  $\text{Cu}^+$ ) were quantified based on the formula:  $\text{Fe}^{2+}$  or  $\text{Cu}^+$  ( $\sim M$ ) =  $A * 10^6 / (L * M)$ , where L is the measured equivalent vertical pathlength for a well of 300  $\mu\text{L}$  volume as described in the instrument's specifications manual (0.856 cm for  $\text{Fe}^{2+}$ ; 1.049 cm for  $\text{Cu}^+$ ); M is the known molecular absorbance ( $M^{-1} \text{ cm}^{-1}$ ) which is 7124 (for  $\text{Fe}^{2+}$ -BP complex) or 2762 (for  $\text{Cu}^+$ -BC complex).

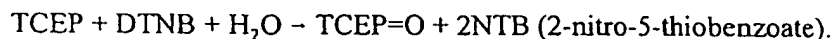
c) *H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> Assay*

The  $\text{H}_2\text{O}_2$  assay was performed in a UV-transparent 96-well microtiter plate (Molecular Devices, CA), according to a modification of an existing protocol (Han, J.C., *et al.*, *Anal. Biochem.* 234:107 (1996); Han *et al.*, *Anal. Biochem.* 220: 5-10 (1994)). Polypeptides (10  $\mu\text{M}$ ) or Vitamin C (10  $\mu\text{M}$ ),  $\text{Fe}^{3+}$  or  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$  (1  $\mu\text{M}$ ) and a  $\text{H}_2\text{O}_2$  trapping agent- Tris(2-Carboxyethyl)Phosphine Hydrochloride (TCEP, Pierce, 50  $\mu\text{LM}$ )- were co-incubated in PBS buffer (300  $\mu\text{L}$ ), pH 7.4, for 1 hour at 37°C. Under identical conditions, catalase (Sigma, 100 U/mL) was substituted for the polypeptides, to serve as a control signal representing 0  $\mu\text{M}$   $\text{H}_2\text{O}_2$ . Following incubation, the unreacted TCEP was detected by 5,5-Dithio-bis(2-Nitrobenzoic acid) (DTNB, Sigma, 50 KLM) which generates 2 moles of the coloured product. The reactions are:

- 55 -



then the remaining TCEP is reacted with DTNB:



The amount of  $\text{H}_2\text{O}_2$  produced was quantified based on the formula:

5  $\text{H}_2\text{O}_2$  ( $\mu\text{M}$ ) =  $\text{hA} * 106 / (2 * \text{L} * \text{M})$ , where hA is the absolute absorbance difference between a sample and catalase-only control at 412 nm wavelength; L = 0.875 cm, the equivalent vertical pathlength obtained from the platereader manufacturer's specifications; M is the molecular absorbance for NTB (14150  $\text{M}^{-1} \text{cm}^{-1}$  at 412 nm).

10 TCEP is a strong reducing agent, and, hence, will artifactually react with polypeptides that contain disulfide bonds. This was determined not to be a source of artifact for the measurement of  $\text{H}_2\text{O}_2$  generation from  $\text{A}\beta$ , which does not possess a disulfide bond.

d) *Estimation of  $\text{O}_2^-$*

15 The spectrophotometric absorption peak for  $\text{O}_2^-$  is 250 nm where its extinction coefficient is much greater than that of  $\text{H}_2\text{O}_2$  (Bielski *et al.*, *Philos Trans R Soc Lond B Biol Sci.* 311: 473-482 (1985)). The production of  $\text{O}_2^-$  was estimated by measuring the spectrophotometric absorption of polypeptides (10  $\mu\text{M}$ , 300  $\mu\text{L}$ ) after incubation for one hour in PBS, pH 7.4, at 37°C, using a  
20 96-well plate reader. The corresponding blank was the signal from PBS alone. An absolute baseline for the signal generated by the peptide was not achievable in this assay since the absorption peak for tyrosine (residue 10 of  $\text{A}\beta$ ) is close (254 nm) to the absorption peak for  $\text{O}_2^-$ . However, attenuation of the absorbance by co-incubation with superoxide dismutase (100 U/mL)  
25 indicated that the majority of the absorbance signal was due to the presence of  $\text{O}_2^-$ .

- 56 -

e) **Thiobarbituric Acid Reaction Substance (TBARS) Assay -  $\text{OH}^\bullet$**

The Thiobarbituric Acid-Reactive Substance (TBARS) assay for incubation mixtures with  $\text{Fe}^{3+}$  or  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$  was performed in a 96-well microtiter format modified from established protocols (Gutteridge *et al. Biochim. Biophys. Acta* 759: 38-41 (1983)).  $\text{A}\beta$  peptide species (10  $\mu\text{M}$ ) or Vitamin C (100  $\mu\text{M}$ ), were incubated with  $\text{Fe}^{3+}$  or  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$  (1  $\mu\text{M}$ ) and deoxyribose (7.5 mM, Sigma) in PBS, pH 7.4. Following incubation (37°C, 1 hour), glacial (17 M) acetic acid and 2-thiobarburic acid (1%, w/v in 0.05 M NaOH, Sigma) were added and heated (100°C, 10 min). The final mixtures were placed on ice for 1-3 minutes before absorbances at 532 nm were measured. The net absorbance change for each sample were obtained by deducting the absorbance from a control sample consisting of identical chemical components except for the Vitamin C or  $\text{A}\beta$  peptides.

**Results and Discussion**

Oxygen radical involvement in human aging, the predominant risk factor for Alzheimer's disease (AD), was first proposed by Harman in 1956 (Harman, D., *J. Gerontol.* 11:298 (1956)) and increasing evidence has implicated oxidative stress in the pathogenesis of AD. Apart from metabolic signs of oxidative stress in AD-affected neocortex such as increased glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase activity (Martins, R.N., *et al., J. Neurochem.* 46:1042-1045 (1986)) and increased heme oxygenase-1 levels (Smith, M.A., *et al., Am. J. Pathol.* 145:42 (1994)), there are also numerous signs of oxygen radical-mediated chemical attack such as increased protein and free carbonyls (Smith, C.D., *et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 88:10540 (1991); Hensley, K., *et al., J. Neurochem.* 65:2146 (1995); Smith, M.A., *et al., Nature* 382:120 (1996)), lipid peroxidation adducts (Palmer, A.M. & Burns, M.A., *Brain Res.* 645:338 (1994); Sayre, L.M. *et al., J. Neurochem.* 68:2092 (1997)), peroxynitrite-mediated protein nitration (Good, P.F., *et al., Am. J. Pathol.* 149:21 (1996)); Smith, M.A., *et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 94:9866

(1997)), and mitochondrial and nuclear DNA oxidation adducts (Mecocci, P., *et al.*, *Ann. Neurol.*, 34:609-616 (1993); Mecocci, P., *et al.*, *Ann. Neurol.*, 36:747-751 (1994)). Recently, treatment of individuals with the antioxidant vitamin E has been reported to delay the progression of clinical AD (Sano, M. *et al.*, *N.Engl. J. Med.* 336:1216 (1997)).

A relationship seems likely to exist between the signs of oxidative stress and the characteristic A $\beta$  collections (Glennner, G.G. & Wong, C., *Biochem. Biophys. Res. Commun.* 120:885 (1984)) found in the cortical interstitium and cerebrovascular intima media in AD. The brain regional variation of oxidation biomarkers corresponds with amyloid plaque density (Hensley, K., *et al.*, *J. Neurochem.* 65:2146 (1995)). Indeed, neurons cultured from subjects with Down's syndrome, a condition complicated by the invariable premature deposition of cerebral A $\beta$  (Rumble, B., *et al.*, *N. Engl. J. Med.* 320:1446 (1989)) and the overexpression of soluble A $\beta$ 1-42 in early life (Teller, J.K., *et al.*, *Nature Medicine* 2:93 (1996)), exhibit lipid peroxidation and apoptotic cell death caused by increased generation of hydrogen peroxide (Busciglio, J. & Yankner, B.A., *Nature* 378:776 (1995)). Synthetic A $\beta$  peptides have been shown to induce lipid peroxidation of synaptosomes (Butterfield, D.A., *et al.*, *Biochem. Biophys. Res. Commun.* 200:710 (1994)), and to exert neurotoxicity (Behl, C., *et al.*, *Cell* 77:817 (1994); Mattson, M.P., *et al.*, *J. Neurochem.* 65:1740 (1995)) or vascular endothelial toxicity through a mechanism that involves the generation of cellular superoxide/hydrogen peroxide ( $O_2^-/H_2O_2$ ) and is abolished by the presence of SOD (Thomas, T., *et al.*, *Nature* 380:168 (1996) or catalytic synthetic  $O_2^-/H_2O_2$  scavengers (Bruce, A.J., *et al.*, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 93:2312 (1996)). Antioxidant vitamin E and the spin-trap compound PBN have been shown to protect against A $\beta$ -mediated neurotoxicity *in vitro* (Goodman, Y., & Mattson, M.P., *Exp. Neurol.* 128:1 (1994); Harris, M.E., *et al.*, *Exp. Neurol.* 131:193 (1995)).

A $\beta$ , a 39-43 amino acid peptide, is produced (Haass, C., *et al.*, *Nature* 359:322 (1992); Seubert, P., *et al.*, *Nature* 359:325 (1992); Shoji, M., *et al.*, *Science* 258:126 (1992)) by constitutive cleavage of the amyloid protein precursor (APP) (Kang, J., *et al.*, *Nature* 325:733 (1987); Tanzi, R.E., *et al.*, *Nature Genet* (1993)) as a mixture of polypeptides manifesting carboxyl-terminal heterogeneity. A $\beta$ -40 is the major soluble A $\beta$  species in biological fluids (Vigo-Pelfrey, C., *et al.*, *J. Neurochem.* 61:1965 (1993)) and A $\beta$ <sub>1-42</sub> is a minor soluble species, but is heavily enriched in interstitial plaque amyloid (Masters, C.L., *et al.*, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 82:4245 (1985); Kang, J. *et al.*, *Nature* 325:733 (1987); Prelli, F., *et al.*, *J. Neurochem.* 51:648 (1988); Roher *et al.*, *J. Cell Biol.* 107:2703-2716 (1988); Roher *et al.*, *J. Neurochem.* 61:1916-1926 (1993); Miller, D.L., *et al.*, *Arch. Biochem. Biophys.* 301:41 (1993)). The discovery of pathogenic mutations of APP close to or within the A $\beta$  domain (van Broeckhoven, C., *et al.*, *Science* 248:1120 (1990); Levy, E., *et al.*, *Science* 248:1124 (1990); Goate, A., *et al.*, *Nature* 349:704 (1991); Murrell, J., *et al.*, *Science* 254:94 (1991); Mullan, M., *et al.*, *Nature Genet* 1:345 (1992)) indicates that the metabolism of A $\beta$  is involved with the pathophysiology of this predominantly sporadic disease. Familial AD-linked mutations of APP, presenilin-1 and presenilin-2 correlate with increased cortical amyloid burden and appear to induce an increase in the ratio of A $\beta$ <sub>1-42</sub> as part of their common pathogenic mechanism (Suzuki, N., *et al.*, *Science* 264:1336 (1994); Scheuner *et al.*, *Nat Med.*, 2(8):864-870 (1996); Citron, M., *et al.*, *Nature Medicine* 3:67 (1997)). However, the mechanism by which A $\beta$ <sub>1-42</sub> exerts more neurotoxicity than A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> and other A $\beta$  peptides (Doré, S., *et al.*, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 94:4772 (1997)) remains unclear.

One of the models proposed for A $\beta$  neurotoxicity is based on a series of observations of A $\beta$ -generated oxyradicals generated by a putative A $\beta$  peptide fragmentation mechanism which is O<sub>2</sub>-dependent, metal-independent and involves the sulfoxation of the methionine at A $\beta$  residue 35 (Butterfield,

D.A., *et al.*, *Biochem. Biophys. Res. Commun.* 200:710 (1994); Hensley, K., *et al.*, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 91:3270 (1994); Hensley, K., *et al.*, *Ann N Y Acad Sci.*, 786: 120-134 (1996). A $\beta_{25-35}$  peptide has been reported to exhibit H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub>-like reactivity towards aqueous Fe<sup>2+</sup>, nitroxide spin probes, and synaptosomal membrane proteins (Butterfield, D.A., *et al.*, *Life Sci.* 58:217 (1996)), and A $\beta_{1-40}$  has also been reported to generate the hydroxyl radical by mechanisms that are unclear (Tomiyaama, T., *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 271:6839 (1996)). However, there has been no quantitative appraisal of the ROS-generating capacity of A $\beta_{1-42}$  versus that of A $\beta_{1-40}$  and other A $\beta$  variants, to date.

A $\beta$  is a metal binding protein which saturably binds zinc via a histidine-mediated specific high affinity site ( $K_D = 107$  nM) as well as by low affinity binding ( $K_D = 5.2$   $\mu$ M). The high-affinity zinc binding site was mapped to a stretch of contiguous residues between positions 6-28 of the A $\beta$  sequence (Bush, A.I., *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 269:12152 (1994)). Concentrations of zinc  $\geq 1$   $\mu$ M rapidly induce aggregation of human A $\beta_{1-40}$  solutions (Bush, A.I., *et al.*, *Science* 265:1464 (1994)), in reversible manner which is dependent upon the dimerization of peptide in solution, its alpha-helical content, and the concentration of NaCl (Huang, X., *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 272:26464-26470 (1997)). Rat/mouse A $\beta_{1-40}$  ("rat A $\beta$ ", with substitutions o R<sub>5</sub>-G, Y<sub>10</sub>-F, and H<sub>13</sub>-R, as compared to human A $\beta$ ) binds zinc less avidly (a single binding site,  $K_A=3.8$   $\mu$ M) and, unlike the human peptide, is not precipitated by zinc at concentrations  $\leq 25$   $\mu$ M. Since zinc is concentrated in the neocortex, we hypothesized that the differential solubility of the rat/mouse A $\beta$  peptide in the presence of zinc may explain the scarcity with which these animals form cerebral A $\beta$  deposits (Johnstone, E.M., *et al.*, *Mol. Brain Res.* 10:299 (1991); Shivers, B.D., *et al.*, *EMBO J.* 7:1365 (1988)).

We have also observed interactions of A $\beta$  with Cu<sup>2+</sup>, which stabilizes dimerization of A $\beta_{1-40}$  on gel chromatography (Bush, A.I., *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.*

269:12152 (1994)), and which binds to the peptide with an affinity estimated to be in the low picomolar range.  $\text{Fe}^{2+}$  has been observed to induce partial aggregation of A $\beta$  (Bush, A.I., *et al.*, *Science* 268:1921 (1995)), and to induce SDS-resistant polymerization of the peptide (Dyrks, T., *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 267:18210-18217 (1992)). We hypothesized that the interactions of A $\beta$  with Fe and Cu may contribute to the genesis of the oxidation insults that are observed in the AD-affected brain. This is because  $\text{Fe}^{3+}$  and  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$  are redox-active metal ions that are concentrated in brain neurons, and may participate in the generation of ROS by transferring electrons in their reduced state (reviewed in Markesbery, 1997).

The levels of Cu and Fe, and their binding proteins, are dysregulated in AD (Diebel, M.A., *et al.*, *J. Neurol. Sci.* 143:137 (1996); Good, P.F., *et al.*, *Ann. Neurol.* 31:286 (1992); Robinson, S.R., *et al.*, *Alzheimer's Research* 1:191 (1995); Thompson, C.M., *et al.*, *Neurotoxicology* 9:1 (1988); Kennard, M.L., *et al.*, *Nature Medicine* 2:1230 (1996); Connor, J.R., *et al.*, *Neurosci. Lett.* 159:88 (1993)) and may therefore lead to conditions that could promote ROS production. While a direct role for A $\beta$  in metal-dependent ROS generation has not been described, the peptide's physiochemical interaction with transition metals, the presence of ferritin (Grudke-Iqbal, I., *et al.*, *Acta Neuropathol.* 81:105 (1990)) and redox reactive iron (Smith, M.A., *et al.*, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 94:9866 (1997)) in amyloid lesions, and the facilitation of A $\beta_{1-40}$  neurotoxicity in cell culture by nanomolar concentrations of iron (Schubert, D. & Chevion, M., *Biochem. Biophys. Res. Commun.* 216:702 (1995)), collectively support such a possibility.

We report the simultaneous production of  $\text{H}_2\text{O}_2$  and reduced metal ions by A $\beta$ , with the consequent generation of the hydroxyl radical. The amounts of reduced metal and ROS were both greatest when generated by A $\beta_{1-42}$  > A $\beta_{1-40}$  > rat A $\beta_{1-40}$ , A $\beta_{40-1}$  and A $\beta_{1-28}$ , a chemical relationship that correlates with the relative neurotoxicity of these peptides. These data describe a novel,  $\text{O}_2$

and biometal-dependent pathway of ROS generation by Alzheimer A $\beta$  peptides which may explain the occurrence of oxidative stress in AD brain.

a) *Metal Ion Reduction by A $\beta$  Peptides*

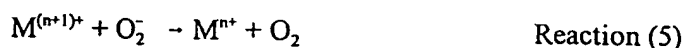
To determine whether A $\beta$  peptides possess metal-reducing properties, the ability of A $\beta$  peptides (Example 1) to reduce Fe<sup>3+</sup> and Cu<sup>2+</sup>, compared to Vitamin C and other polypeptides (Example 2) was measured. Vitamin C, serving as a positive control, reduced Cu<sup>2+</sup> efficiently (Figure 13A). However, the reduction of Cu<sup>2+</sup> by A $\beta$ <sub>1-42</sub> was as efficient, reducing all of the available Cu<sup>2+</sup> during the incubation period. A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> reduced 60% of the available Cu<sup>2+</sup>, whereas rat A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> and A $\beta$ <sub>1-28</sub> reduced no Cu<sup>2+</sup>. The reduction of Cu<sup>2+</sup> by BSA (25%) and insulin (10%) was less efficient than that by the human A $\beta$  peptides, and was not unexpected since these polypeptides possess cysteine residues and reduce Cu<sup>2+</sup> in the process of forming disulfide bonds.

Fe<sup>3+</sup>/Fe<sup>2+</sup> has lower standard reduction potential (0.11 V) than Cu<sup>2+</sup>/Cu<sup>+</sup> (0.15 V) does under our experimental conditions (Miller, D.M., *et al.*, *Free Radical Biology & Medicine* 8:95 (1990)), and, in general, Fe<sup>3+</sup> was reduced with less efficiency by Vitamin C and the polypeptides that reduced Cu<sup>2+</sup>. Vitamin C reduced 15% of the available Fe<sup>3+</sup>, however A $\beta$ <sub>1-42</sub> was the most efficient (50%) of the agents tested for Fe<sup>3+</sup> reduction, reducing more Fe<sup>3+</sup> in the incubation period than Vitamin C (15%), A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> (12%) and BSA (8%). Rat A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub>, A $\beta$ <sub>1-28</sub> and insulin did not significantly facilitate the reduction of Fe<sup>3+</sup>. Analysis of A $\beta$ <sub>1-42</sub> and A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> after incubation with Cu<sup>2+</sup> and Fe<sup>3+</sup> under these conditions revealed that there was no apparent mass modification of the peptides on mass spectrometry, and no change in its migration pattern on sodium dodecyl sulfate polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis (SDS PAGE), nor evidence for increased aggregation of the peptides by turbidometry or sedimentation analysis, suggesting that the peptides were not consumed or modified during the reduction reaction. Under these conditions, the complete kinetics of the peptide-mediated reactions cannot be appreciated (the presence



of A $\beta_{1-42}$  induced the total consumption of the Cu<sup>2+</sup> substrate within the incubation period), but a striking relationship exists between the relative efficiencies of the various A $\beta$  peptides to reduce Cu<sup>2+</sup>/Fe<sup>3+</sup> in this system and their respective participation in amyloid neuropathology.

5 Since the dissolved O<sub>2</sub> in the buffer vehicle may be expected to react with the reduced metals being generated [Reaction (1)], the effect of modulating the O<sub>2</sub> tension in the buffer upon the generation of reduced metals by the A $\beta$  peptides (Figure 13B) was examined. Prior to the addition of Vitamin C or polypeptide, the buffer vehicle was continuously bubbled for 2  
10 hours at 20°C with 100% O<sub>2</sub> to create conditions of increased O<sub>2</sub> tension, or Argon to create anaerobic conditions. Increasing the O<sub>2</sub> tension slightly reduced the levels of reduced metals being detected, probably due to the diversion of a fraction of the Fe<sup>2+</sup>/Cu<sup>+</sup> being generated to Reaction (1), and, if H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> is being produced as a product of Reaction (2), the recruitment of  
15 Fe<sup>2+</sup>/Cu<sup>+</sup> into the Fenton reaction [Reaction (3)]. However, performing the reaction under anaerobic (Argon purged) conditions also slightly reduced the levels of reduced metals being detected. This may be because some of the reduction of Fe<sup>3+</sup>/Cu<sup>2+</sup> is due to reaction with O<sub>2</sub><sup>-</sup>:



To determine whether the reduction of metal ions in the presence of A $\beta$  was due to the action of the peptide or the generation of O<sub>2</sub><sup>-</sup> by the peptide, the effects of metal ion chelators on the generation of reduced metal ions (Figure  
25 13B) was studied. It was found that coincubation of A $\beta_{1-42}$  with the relatively Fe<sup>3+</sup>-specific chelator desferrioxamine (DFO) under ambient oxygenation conditions nearly halved the production of Fe<sup>2+</sup>. Coincubation of A $\beta_{1-42}$  with the high-affinity Cu<sup>2+</sup> chelator TETA abolished 95% of the Cu<sup>+</sup> generated by the peptide under ambient oxygenation conditions. These data indicate that

- 63 -

the majority of the  $\text{Cu}^+$  and a significant amount of the  $\text{Fe}^{2+}$  produced by  $\text{A}\beta_{1-42}$  are due to the direct action of the peptide and not indirectly due to the production of  $\text{O}_2^-$ .

5 The inhibitory effects of chelation upon  $\text{A}\beta$ -mediated reduction of metal ions indicates that  $\text{A}\beta$  probably directly coordinates  $\text{Fe}^{3+}$  and  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$ , and also that these chelating agents are not potentiating the redox potential of the metals ions, suggested to be an artifactual mechanism for the generation of reduced metal species (Sayre, L.M. *et al.*, *Science* 274:1933 (1996)). The reasons for DFO being less effective than TETA in attenuating metal reduction  
10 may relate to the respective (unknown) binding affinities for  $\text{Fe}^{3+}$  and  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$  to the  $\text{A}\beta$  peptide, the stereochemistry of the coordination of the metal ions by the peptide, and the abilities of the chelating agents to affect electron transfer after coordinating the metal ion.

The reduction of metal ions by  $\text{A}\beta$  must leave the peptide, at least  
15 transiently, radicalized, in agreement with the electron paramagnetic resonance (EPR) findings of Hensley *et al.*, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci.* 91:3270 (1994). In their report, DFO, EDTA or Chelex 100 could not abolish the EPR signal generated by  $\text{A}\beta_{25-35}$  in PBS, leading these investigators to conclude that the radicalization of  $\text{A}\beta$  was metal-independent. However, the inventors have  
20 found that after treatment with Chelex 100 the concentrations of Fe and Cu in PBS are still as high as  $\approx 0.5 \mu\text{M}$  (8), which could be sufficient to induce the radicalization of the peptide after metal reduction. Since DFO does not abolish the reduction of  $\text{Fe}^{3+}$  by  $\text{A}\beta_{1-42}$  (Figure 13B), and since EDTA has been observed to potentiate Fe-mediated Fenton chemistry (Samuni *et al.*, *Eur. J.*  
25 *Biochem.* 137:119-124(1983)), it is suspected that Hensley and colleagues may have inadvertently overlooked the contribution of metal reduction to  $\text{A}\beta$ -mediated radical formation.

Rat  $\text{A}\beta_{1-40}$  did not reduce metal ions, and has been shown to have attenuated binding of  $\text{Zn}^{2+}$  (Bush *et al.*, *Science*, 265:1464 (1994)). A similar  
30 attenuation of  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$  and  $\text{Fe}^{3+}$  binding by rat  $\text{A}\beta_{1-40}$  compared to human  $\text{A}\beta_{1-40}$  is

anticipated. These data also indicate that the rat A $\beta$  substitutions in human A $\beta$ 's zinc binding domain towards the peptide's amino terminus (Bush *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.*, 269:12152 (1994)) involve residues that mediate the metal-reducing properties of the peptide. However, the hydrophobic carboxyl-terminal residues were also critical to the reduction properties of A $\beta$ . That A $\beta_{1-28}$  did not reduce metal ions indicates that an intact Zn<sup>2+</sup>-binding site (Bush *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 269:12152 (1994)) is insufficient to facilitate the metal reduction reaction. The mechanism by which the two additional hydrophobic residues (Ile and Ala) on A $\beta_{1-42}$  so substantially enhance the peptide's redox activity compared to A $\beta_{1-40}$  is still unclear.

It has been observed that sulfoxation of the methionine residue at A $\beta$  position 35 accompanies the EPR changes seen during the incubation of A $\beta_{25-35}$  for 3 hours in PBS at 37°C (Hensley, K., *et al.*, *Ann N Y Acad Sci.*, 786: 120-134 (1996)), however, no evidence was found for a modification of A $\beta_{1-40}$  and A $\beta_{1-42}$  after mass spectrophotometric examination of the peptides incubated under conditions as described. Therefore, A $\beta$ -mediated metal reduction, and the subsequent A $\beta$ -mediated redox reactions described below, appear to be achieved by a mechanism that differs from that previously reported.

#### b) *Production of H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> by A $\beta$ Peptides*

The reduced metal ions produced by A $\beta$  were expected to generate O<sub>2</sub> and H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> by Reactions (1) and (2). To study this, a novel assay was developed (Example 3) which detected the generation of 10  $\mu$ M H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> by A $\beta_{1-42}$  in the presence of 1  $\mu$ M Fe<sup>3+</sup> under ambient O<sub>2</sub> conditions (Figure 14A). To validate the assay, coincubation with catalase was observed to abolish the H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> signal in a dose dependent manner. The amount of H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> produced by the various A $\beta$  peptides was studied, and observed that the order of the production of H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> by the A $\beta$  variants was A $\beta_{1-42}$  > A $\beta_{1-40}$  >> rat A $\beta_{1-40}$  - A $\beta_{1-28}$  (Figure 14B), paralleling the amounts of metal reduction by the same peptides (Figure 13A).

H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> formation is likely to be mediated first by O<sub>2</sub>-dependent O<sub>2</sub><sup>-</sup> formation [Reaction (1)], followed by dismutation [Reaction (2)]. To appraise the contribution of Reaction (1) to H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> formation, H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> formation by Aβ<sub>1-42</sub> in the presence of chelators was measured (Figure 14C). The amount of H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> formed in the presence of 1 μM Cu<sup>2+</sup> was 25% greater than the amount formed in the presence of 1 μM Fe<sup>3+</sup>. Coincubation with DFO had no effect on H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> formation in the presence of 1 μM Fe<sup>3+</sup>. However, TETA, and the Cu<sup>+</sup>-specific indicator BC, both substantially inhibited the formation of H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> in the presence of 1 μM Cu<sup>2+</sup>. The reasons why DFO partially inhibited Fe<sup>3+</sup> reduction, but was unable to inhibit H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> formation are unclear. These data indicate that the formation of H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> by Aβ is dependent upon the presence of substoichiometric amounts of Cu<sup>+</sup>/(II). The possibility that formation of H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> in the presence of Fe<sup>3+</sup> was due to the presence of trace quantities of Cu<sup>2+</sup> cannot be excluded.

BC and BP, agents that specifically complex reduced metal ions, were far more effective than DFO and TETA at inhibiting H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> formation by Aβ (Figure 14C) but the reasons for this are not clear. The relatively Fe<sup>2+</sup>-specific complexing agent, BP, inhibited H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> formation in the presence of Cu<sup>2+</sup>, and the relatively Cu<sup>+</sup>-specific complexing agent, BC, inhibited H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> formation in the present of Fe<sup>3+</sup>, suggesting that these agents are not totally specific in their metal ion affinities. The formation of H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> by Aβ in the absence of BC or BP confirms that the reduction of metals is not contingent upon the artifactual enhancement of the metal ions' redox potentials (Sayre, L.M., *Science* 274:1933 (1996)).

To determine whether the formation of O<sub>2</sub><sup>-</sup>/H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> by Aβ is merely due to the reduction of metal ions, or whether Aβ also facilitates the recruitment of the substrates in Reaction (1), the generation of H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> by Aβ<sub>1-42</sub>, Aβ<sub>1-40</sub> and Vitamin C under different O<sub>2</sub> tensions in the presence of 1 μM Fe<sup>3+</sup> (Figure 14D) or 1 μM Cu<sup>2+</sup> (Figure 14E) was studied. The presence of Vitamin C was used as a control measure to determine the amount H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> that is generated by

- 66 -

the presence of reduced metals alone. In the presence of either metal ion, there was a significant increase in the amount of  $H_2O_2$  produced under higher  $O_2$  tensions. The presence of either  $A\beta_{1-42}$  and  $A\beta_{1-40}$  generated more  $H_2O_2$  ( $A\beta_{1-42} > A\beta_{1-40}$ ) than Vitamin C under any  $O_2$  tension studied, and generated  $H_2O_2$  under conditions where Vitamin C produced none, even though reduced metal ions must be present due to the activity of Vitamin C. Therefore, under these ambient and argon-purged conditions, the reduction of metal ions is insufficient to produce  $H_2O_2$ . These data indicate that  $A\beta$  indeed facilitates the recruitment of  $O_2$  into Reaction (1) more than would be expected by the interaction of the metals reduced by  $A\beta$  with the passively dissolved  $O_2$ . Under relatively anaerobic conditions, the  $A\beta$  peptides were observed to still produce  $H_2O_2$  in the presence of  $Cu^{2+}$  (Figure 14E). This is probably due to the ability of  $A\beta$  to recruit  $O_2$  into Reaction (1) under conditions of very low  $O_2$  tension. Since  $O_2$  is preferentially dissolved in hydrophobic environments (Halliwell and Gutteridge, *Biochem. J.*, 219:1-14 (1984)), it seems that the hydrophobic carboxyl-terminus of  $A\beta$  could attract  $O_2$ , serving as a reservoir for the substrate.

c) *Evidence of the Superoxide Anion Formed by the  $A\beta$ -metal Complex*

To confirm the production of  $O_2^-$  by  $A\beta$ , the absorbance of the peptide in solution at 250 nm, the absorbance peak of  $O_2^-$  (Figure 15A) was measured. The absorbance generated by  $A\beta_{1-42}$  in the presence of  $1 \mu M Fe^{3+}$  was 60% reduced when co-incubated with SOD, increased in the presence of high  $O_2$  tension and abolished under anaerobic conditions. These data support the likelihood that  $A\beta$  generates  $H_2O_2$  by first generating  $O_2^-$ .

The absorbance changes at 250 nm for the various  $A\beta$  peptides in PBS (Figure 15B) paralleled the production of  $H_2O_2$  from the same peptides (Figure 14B), but the reason for the  $A_{250}$  being much greater for  $A\beta_{1-42}$  compared to  $A\beta_{1-40}$  is unclear. It is likely that a fraction of the total  $H_2O_2$  generated by  $A\beta$

is decomposed by the Fenton reaction [Reaction (3)]. Therefore, the amount of  $H_2O_2$  detected may be an attenuated reflection of the amount of  $O_2$  detected.

*d) Detection of Hydroxyl Radicals Generated from the A $\beta$ -metal Complex*

5 Having demonstrated that human A $\beta$  peptides simultaneously produce  $H_2O_2$  and reduced metals, it was determined whether the hydroxyl radical was formed by the Fenton or Haber-Weiss reactions [Reactions (3) and (4)]. A modified TBARS assay was employed to detect  $OH^\bullet$  released from co-incubation mixtures of A $\beta$  peptides and  $1\ \mu M$   $Fe^{3+}$  or  $Cu^{2+}$ . As expected, 10 A $\beta_{1-42}$  produced more  $OH^\bullet$  than A $\beta_{1-40}$ , and rat A $\beta$  did not generate  $OH^\bullet$  (Figure 16A). In contrast to the amount of  $Fe^{2+}$  and  $Cu^+$  produced (Figure 13A), A $\beta$  generated more  $OH^\bullet$  in the presence of  $Fe^{3+}$  than in the presence of  $Cu^{2+}$ . This may be because  $Fe^{2+}$  is more stable than  $Cu^+$ , which may be more rapidly oxidized by Reaction (1). Therefore, the  $Fe^{2+}$  generated by A $\beta$  may 15 have a greater opportunity than the  $Cu^+$  generated to react with  $H_2O_2$ . It is also possible that the contribution of the Haber-Weiss reaction to the production of  $OH^\bullet$  [Reaction (5)] is greater in the presence of  $Fe^{3+}$  than in the presence of  $Cu^{2+}$ .

20 The effects of the  $OH^\bullet$  scavengers, dimethyl sulfoxide (DMSO) and mannitol, upon A $\beta_{1-42}$ -mediated  $OH^\bullet$  generation were studied. Whereas these agents suppressed the generation of  $OH^\bullet$  by Vitamin C in the presence of  $Fe^{3+}$ , and DMSO suppressed the generation of  $OH^\bullet$  by Vitamin C in the presence of  $Cu^{2+}$ , neither were able to quench the generation of  $OH^\bullet$  by A $\beta_{1-42}$ , whether in the presence of  $Fe^{3+}$  or  $Cu^{2+}$  (Figure 16B). This suggests that these scavengers 25 cannot encounter the  $OH^\bullet$  generated by A $\beta$  before the TBARS reagent does.

*e) Similarity Between Bleomycin-Fe and A $\beta$ -Fe/Cu Complexes*

The present Examples provide evidence for a model by which Fe/Cu and  $O_2$  are mediators and substrates for the production of  $OH^\bullet$  by A $\beta$  (Figures 16A and 16B) in a manner that depends upon the presence and length of the

peptide's carboxyl terminus. The brain neocortex is an environment that is rich in both O<sub>2</sub> and Fe/Cu, which may explain why this organ is predisposed to A $\beta$ -mediated neurotoxicity, if this mechanism is confirmed *in vivo*. The transport of Fe, Cu and Zn in the brain is largely energy-dependent. For example, the copper-transporting gene for Wilson's disease is an ATPase (Tanzi, R.E. *et al.*, *Nature Genetics* 5:344 (1993)), and the re-uptake of zinc following neurotransmission is highly energy-dependent (Assaf, S.Y. & S.H. Chung, *Nature*, 308:734-736 (1984); Howell *et al.*, *Nature*, 308:736-738 (1984)).

There is increasing evidence for lesions of brain energy metabolism in aging and AD (Parker *et al.*, *Neurology*, 40:1302-1303 (1990); Mecocci *et al.*, *Ann. Neurol.* 34:609-616 (1993); Beal, M.F. *Neurobiol. Aging* 15 (Suppl 2):S171-S174(1994)). Therefore, damage to energy-dependent brain metal homeostasis may be an upstream lesion for the genesis of A $\beta$  deposition in AD. Most brain biometals are bound to proteins or other ligands, however, according to our findings, only A $\beta$  small fraction of the available metals needs to be derailed to the A $\beta$ -containing compartment to precipitate the peptide and to activate its ROS-generating activities. The generation of ROS described herein depends upon the sub-stoichiometric amounts of Fe<sup>3+</sup>/Cu<sup>2+</sup> (1:10, metal:A $\beta$ ), and it was estimated that 1% of the zinc that is released during neurotransmission would be sufficient to precipitate soluble A $\beta$  in the synaptic vicinity (Huang, X. *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 272:26464-26470 (1997)).

A polypeptide which generates both substrates of the Fenton reaction in sufficient quantities to form significant amounts of the OH• radical is unusual. Therefore, A $\beta$  collections in the AD-affected brain are likely to be a major source of the oxidation stress seen in the effected tissue. One recent report describes that A $\beta$  is released by the treatment of the mammalian lens in culture with H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> (Frederikse, P.H., *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 271:10169 (1996)). If a similar response mechanism to H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> stress exists in neocortex, then the increasing H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> concentration generated by the accumulating A $\beta$  mass in the

AD-affected brain may induce the production of even more A $\beta$  leading to a vicious cycle of A $\beta$  accumulation and ROS stress.

The simultaneous production of Fenton substrates by A $\beta$  is a chemical property that is brought into therapeutic application in the oxidation mechanism of the bleomycin-iron complex. Bleomycin is a glycopeptide antibiotic produced by *Streptomyces verticillus* and is a potent antitumor agent. It acts by complexing Fe<sup>3+</sup> and then binding to tumor nuclear DNA which is degraded *in situ* by the generation of OH $\cdot$  (Sugiura, Y., *et al.*, *Biochem. Biophys. Res. Commun.* 105:1511 (1997)). Similar to A $\beta$ -Fe<sup>3+</sup>/Cu<sup>2+</sup> complexes, incubation of bleomycin in aqueous solution also engenders the production of O<sub>2</sub><sup>-</sup>, H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> and OH $\cdot$  in an Fe<sup>3+</sup>-dependent manner. DFO could not inhibit H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> production from the A $\beta$ -Fe<sup>3+</sup>/Cu<sup>2+</sup> complex, and similarly, DFO does not inhibit the OH $\cdot$ -mediated DNA damage caused by the bleomycin-Fe<sup>3+</sup> complex. Also, low-molecular-mass OH $\cdot$  scavengers mannitol and DMSO were unable to inhibit the generation of OH $\cdot$  by A $\beta$ -Fe<sup>3+</sup>/Cu<sup>2+</sup>, and are similarly unable to inhibit OH $\cdot$  production from bleomycin-Fe<sup>3+</sup>.

It is proposed herein that inhibition of A $\beta$ -mediated OH $\cdot$  provides means of treatment, *e.g.* therapy, by compounds that are Fe or Cu chelators. The clinical administration of DFO was reported as being effective in preventing the progression of AD (Crapper-McLachlan, D.R. *et al.*, *Lancet* 337:1304 (1991)); however, since DFO chelates Zn<sup>2+</sup> as well as Fe<sup>3+</sup> and Al(III), the effect, if verifiable, may not have been due to the abolition of the redox activity of A $\beta$ , but may have been due to the disaggregation of Zn<sup>2+</sup>-mediated A $\beta$  deposits (Cherny, R.A. *et al.*, *Soc. Neurosci. Abstr.* 23:(abstract)(1997)) which may have reduced cortical A $\beta$  burden and, consequently, oxidation stress.

#### f) *Oxidative Stress and Alzheimer's Disease Pathology*

Autopsy tissue from AD subjects has been reported to exhibit higher basal TBARS formation than control material (Subbarao, K.V. *et al.*, *J.*



*Neurochem.* 55:342 (1990); Balazs, L. and M. Leon, *Neurochem. Res.* 19:1131 (1994); Lovell *et al.*, *Neurology* 45:1594 (1995)). These observations could be explained, on the basis of the present findings, as being due to the reactivity of the A $\beta$  content within the tissue. A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> recently has been shown to generate TBARS in a dose-dependent manner when incubated in cell culture, however TBARS reactivity was reduced by pre-treating the cells with trypsin which also abolished the binding of the peptide to the RAGE receptor (Yan *et al.*, *Nature* 382:685 (1996)). One possibility for this result is that the RAGE receptor tethers an A $\beta$  microaggregate sufficiently close to the cell to permit increased penetration of the cell by H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> which may then combine with reduced metals within the cell to generate the Fenton reaction. Alternatively, A $\beta$  may generate the Fenton chemistry at the RAGE receptor. The resulting attack of the cell surface by the highly reactive OH• radical, which reacts within nanometers of its generation, may have been the source of the positive TBARS assay.

APP also reduces Cu<sup>2+</sup>, but not Fe<sup>3+</sup>, at a site in its amino terminus (Multhaup, G., *et al.*, *Science* 271:1406-1409 (1996)), adjacent to a functional and specific Zn<sup>2+</sup>-binding site that modulates heparin binding and protease inhibition (Bush *et al.*, 1993; Van Nostrand, 1995). Therefore, the amino terminus of APP reiterates an association with transition metal ions that is found in the A $\beta$  domain. This intriguing theme of tandem Cu/Zn interaction and associated redox activity found in two soluble fragments of the parent protein may indicate that the function and metabolism of APP could be related to biometal homeostasis and associated redox environments.

The present findings indicate that the manipulation of the brain biometal environment with specific agents acting directly (*e.g.* chelators and antioxidants) or indirectly (*e.g.* by improving cerebral energy metabolism) holds promise as a means for therapeutic intervention in the prevention and treatment of Alzheimer's disease.

### *Example 4*

#### *Resolubilization of A $\beta$*

Considerable evidence now indicates that the accumulation of A $\beta$  in the brain cortex is very closely related to the cause of Alzheimer's disease. A $\beta$  is a normal component of biological fluids whose function is unknown. A $\beta$  accumulates in a number of morphologies varying from highly insoluble amyloid to deposits that can be extracted from post-mortem tissue in aqueous buffer. The factors behind the accumulation are unknown, but the inventors have systematically appraised the solubility of synthetic A $\beta$  peptide in order to get some clues as to what kind of pathological environment could induce the peptide to precipitate.

It was found that A $\beta$  has three principal vulnerabilities - zinc, copper and low pH. The precipitation of A $\beta$  by copper is dramatically exaggerated under mildly acidic conditions (e.g., pH 6.9), suggesting that the cerebral lactic acidosis that complicates Alzheimer's disease could contribute to the precipitation of A $\beta$  were this event to be mediated by copper. A consideration of the involvement of zinc and copper in plaque pathology is contemplatable since the regulation of these metals in the brain has been shown to be abnormal in AD.

Recently direct evidence has been obtained indicating that these metals are integral components of the A $\beta$  deposits in the brain in AD. It was found that zinc- and copper-specific chelators (including clioquinol) dramatically redissolve a significant proportion (up to 70%) of A $\beta$  extracted from post-mortem AD affected brain tissue, compared to the amount extracted from the tissue by buffer in the absence of chelators.

These data support a strategy of redissolving A $\beta$  deposits *in vivo* by chelation. Therefore, clioquinol is an excellent candidate for further development since it chelates both copper and zinc, and since it is

- 72 -

hydrophobic, is enriched in the brain. Interestingly, a reported success in attempting to slow down the progression of Alzheimer's disease used a chelation strategy with desferrioxamine. The authors (Crapper-McLachlan, D.R., *et al.*, 337:1304 (1991), thought that they were chelating aluminum, but desferrioxamine is also a chelator of copper and zinc. Treatment with desferrioxamine is impractical because the therapy requires twice daily deep intramuscular injections which are very painful, and also causes side effects such as anaemia due to iron chelation.

#### *Resolubilization of Metal-induced A $\beta$ Aggregates by Chelators*

A $\beta$  (10 ng/well in TBS) aggregation was induced by addition of ZnCl<sub>2</sub> (25  $\mu$ M), CuCl<sub>2</sub> (5  $\mu$ M) or acidic conditions (pH 5.5). Aggregates were transferred to a 0.2  $\mu$  nylon membrane by filtration. The aggregates were then washed (200  $\mu$ l/well) with TBS alone, TBS containing 2  $\mu$ M EDTA, or TBS containing 2  $\mu$ M clioquinol. The membrane was fixed, probed with the anti-A $\beta$  monoclonal antibody 6E10, and developed for exposure to ECL-film. Figure 17 shows relative signal strength as determined by transmittance analysis of the ECL-film, calibrated against known amounts of the peptide. Values are expressed as a percentage of A $\beta$  signal after washing with TBS alone.

Both EDTA and clioquinol treatments were more effective than TBS alone at resolubilizing the retained (aggregated) A $\beta$  when the peptide was precipitated by Zn or Cu (see Figure 17). When A $\beta$  was precipitated by pH 5.5 however, it was not resolubilized more readily by either chelator compared to TBS washing alone. The pH 5.5 precipitate contains a much greater proportion of beta-sheet amyloid than the A $\beta$  precipitates formed by Zn or Cu.

### Example 5

#### *A $\beta$ Extraction from Human Brain Post-Mortem Samples*

The inventors have recently characterized zinc-mediated A $\beta$  deposits in human brain (Cherny, R.A., *et al.*, *Soc. Neurosci Abstr.* 23:(Abstract) (1997)). It was recently reported that there is a population of water-extractable A $\beta$  deposit in the AD-affected brain (Kuo, Y-M., *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 271:4077-81 (1996)). The inventors hypothesized that homogenization of brain tissue in water may dilute the metal content in the tissue, so lowering the putative zinc concentration in A $\beta$  collections, and liberating soluble A $\beta$  subunits by freeing A $\beta$  complexed with zinc [Zn<sup>2+</sup>].

To test this hypothesis, the brain tissue preparation protocol of Kuo and colleagues was replicated, but phosphate-buffered saline pH 7.4 (PBS) was substituted as the extraction buffer, achieving similar results. Highly sensitive and specific anti-A $\beta$  monoclonal antibodies (Ida, N., *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.*, 271:22908 (1996)) were used to assay A $\beta$  extraction by western blot. Next, the extraction of the same material was repeated with PBS in the presence of chelators of varying specificities (Table 1), and it was determined that the presence of a chelator increased the amount of A $\beta$  in the soluble extract several-fold (Figures 19A-19C, 20A and 20B, 25A; Table 2).

The amount of A $\beta$  detected in the pellet fraction of each sample is correspondingly lower, indicating that the effect of the chelator is upon the disassembly of the A $\beta$  aggregate, and not by inhibition of an A $\beta$ -cleaving metalloprotease (such as insulin degrading enzyme cleavage of A $\beta$  reported recently by Dennis Selkoe at the 27<sup>th</sup> Annual Meeting for the Society for Neuroscience, New Orleans). The extraction of sedimentable A $\beta$  into the soluble phase correlated only with the extraction of zinc from the pellet, and not with any other metal assayed (Table 3). Examination of the total amount

of protein released by the treatments revealed that chelation was not merely liberating more proteins in a non-specific manner.

Table 1. Dissociation Constants for Metal Ions of Various Chelators Used to Extract Human Brain A $\beta$ .

CHELATOR	Ca	Cu	Mg	Fe	Zn	Al	Co
EGTA	10.9	17.6	5.3	11.8	12.6	13.9	12.4
EDTA	10.7	18.8	8.9	14.3	16.5	16.5	16.5
Penicillamine	0	18.2	0	0	10.2	0	0
TPEN	3.0	20.2	0	14.4	15.4	0	0
Bathophenanthroline	0	8.8	0	5.6	6.9	0	0
Bathocuproine (BC)	0	19.1 (Cu <sup>+</sup> )	0	0	4.1	0	4.2

LogK is illustrated for the chelators, where  $K = [ML]/[M][L]$ . Different chelators have greatly differing affinities for metal ions, as shown. TPEN is relatively specific for Zn and Cu, and has no affinity for Ca and Mg (which are far more abundant metal ions in tissues). Bathocuproine (BC) has high affinity for zinc and for cuprous ions. Whereas all the chelators examined have a significant affinity for zinc, EGTA and EDTA have significant affinities for Ca and Mg.

The ability of chelators to extract A $\beta$  from post-mortem brain tissue was studied in over 40 cases (25 AD, 15 age-matched and young adult controls, all confirmed by histopathology). While there is a lot of variation between samples as to what is the best concentration of given chelator for the optimum extraction of A $\beta$ , there are no cases where a chelator does not, at some concentration, extract far more A $\beta$  than PBS alone.

Figure 19 shows that metal chelators promote the solubilization of A $\beta$  from human brain sample homogenates. Representative curves for three chelators (TPEN, EGTA, Bathocuproine) used in extracting the same

representative AD brain sample are shown. 0.5 g of prefrontal cortex was dissected and homogenized in PBS  $\pm$  chelator as indicated. The homogenate was then centrifuged (100,000 g) and the supernatant removed, and a sample taken for western blot assay using anti-A $\beta$  specific antibodies after Tricine  
5 PAGE. Densitometry was performed against synthetic peptide standards. The blots shown here represent typical results. Similar results were achieved whether or not protease inhibitors were included in the PBS (extraction was at 4°C). Furthermore, similar results were achieved when the brain sample was homogenized in PBS and then pelleted before treated with PBS  $\pm$  chelator.

10 There is also a complex relationship between the dose of the chelator and the resultant resolubilization of A $\beta$  (Figures 19A-C). For the same given sample, neither TPEN nor EGTA could increase the extraction of A $\beta$  in a dose-dependent manner. Rather, although concentrations of chelators could be very effective in the low micromolar range (*e.g.*, TPEN 4  $\mu$ M, Figure 19A),  
15 higher concentrations induced a paradoxical loss of recovery. This kind of response was found in every case examined. The extraction of A $\beta$  is abolished by adding exogenous zinc, but is enhanced by adding magnesium.

Preliminary *in vitro* data indicate that whereas Mg has no effect on the precipitation of A $\beta$ , its presence enhances the peptide's resolubilization  
20 following zinc-induced precipitation. Therefore, the "polyphasic" profile of chelator extraction of A $\beta$ , with higher concentrations of TPEN and EGTA inducing a loss of recovery, may be explained by the chelation of Mg that is only expected to occur after the chelation of zinc when the relative abundance of Mg in the sample, and the relative dissociation constants of TPEN and  
25 EGTA are considered.

In contrast, bathocuproine (BC) exhibits a clear dose-dependent increase in A $\beta$  extraction from human brain, probably due to its relatively high specificity for zinc, although an interaction with trace amounts of Cu<sup>+</sup> or other metals not yet assayed, cannot be excluded.

Western blot analysis of extracts using A $\beta$ <sub>1-42</sub>-specific monoclonals revealed the presence of abundant A $\beta$ <sub>1-42</sub> species. It was observed that  $\approx$ 20% of AD cases exhibit clear SDS-resistant A $\beta$  dimers in the soluble extract after treatment with chelators. These dimers are reminiscent of the neurotoxic A $\beta$ <sub>1-42</sub> dimers that were extracted by Roher and colleagues from AD-affected brain (Roher, A.E., *et al.*, *Journal of Biological Chemistry* 271:20631-20635 (1996)). An estimation of the proportion of total precipitated A $\beta$  in the sample was achieved by extracting the homogenate pellet following centrifugation, into formic acid, and then performing a western blot on the extract following neutralization. The proportion of pelletable A $\beta$  that is released by chelation treatment varies considerably from case to case, from as little as 30% to as much as 80%. In the absence of a chelator, no more than  $\approx$ 10% of the total pelletable A $\beta$  is extracted by PBS alone.

One preliminary emerging trend is that samples with a greater proportion of diffuse or vascular A $\beta$  deposit are more likely to have their pelletable A $\beta$  resolubilized by chelation treatment. Also, extraction of the tissue homogenate overnight with agitation greatly increases the amount of A $\beta$  extracted in the presence of chelators (compared to PBS alone), when compared to briefer periods of extraction indicating that the disassembly of A $\beta$  deposits by chelation treatment is a time-dependent reaction and is unlikely to be due to inhibition of a protease. A study of brain cortical tissue from one amyloid-bearing APP transgenic mouse indicates that, like human brain, homogenization in the presence of a chelator enhances the extraction of pelletable A $\beta$ .

Effects of various chelators on the extraction of A $\beta$  into the supernatant as a percentage change from control extractions is summarized below in Table 2.

Table 2. Effects of Various Chelators Upon Extraction of A $\beta$ .

Effect of Chelators (% change from control)						
	TPEN		EGTA		BATHOCUP	
	0.1mM	2.0mM	0.1mM	2.0mM	0.1mM	2.0mM
Mean (n=6)	182	241	207	46	301	400
+/- SD	79	81	115	48	190	181

5                   Densitometry of A $\beta$  western blots (Figures 19A-19C) was performed for a series of 6 AD brain samples homogenized in the presence of chelators as indicated. The mean ( $\pm$ SD) increases in signal, above the signal generated by PBS extraction alone, are indicated in Table 2. A significantly increased amount of chelator-induced A $\beta$  resolubilization was achieved by a 16 hour  
10 extraction with agitation in subsequent studies.

Table 3 shows a comparison between pellets of post-centrifugation homogenates in the presence and absence of a chelator (TPEN).

Table 3. Residual Metals in Pellets of Post-Centrifugation Homogenates in the Presence and Absence of Chelator.

METAL	Zn	Cu	Fe	Ca	Mg	Al
PBS alone mg/kg (SD)	50.7 (12.0)	11.9 (3.5)	227 (69)	202 (69)	197 (94)	44 (111)
+TPEN mg/kg (SD)	33.2* (9.8)	9.8 (3.1)	239 (76)	(210) (89)	230 (94)	65 (108)

15 Frontal cortex from AD (n=6) and healthy controls (n=4) was homogenized in the presence and absence of PBS  $\pm$  TPEN (0.1 mM). After ultracentrifugation  
20 of the homogenate, the pellets were extracted into concentrated HCl and measured for metal content by ion coupled plasma - atomic emission spectroscopy (ICP-AES).  
25



Using the same technique, zinc-mediated assembly of A $\beta$  in normal brains was shown. Figures 20A and 20B show sedimentable A $\beta$  deposits in healthy brain tissue. The effects of chelators in enhancing A $\beta$  extraction from brain homogenates is also observed in normal tissue. Figure 20A illustrates a western blot with anti-A $\beta$  antibody of material extracted from a 27-year-old individual with no history of neurological disorder. T= TPEN, E= EGTA, B= bathocuproine. Bathocuproine is much less effective in extracting A $\beta$  from control tissue than from AD tissue. These data are typical of 15 cases.

As expected, far less total A $\beta$  is present in normal brain samples compared to AD brain samples, although the content of A $\beta$  increases with age. It is possible that these findings in young adult brains represent the zinc-mediated initiation of amyloid formation in deposits that, in youth, are too diffuse to be detected by immunohistochemistry.

Roher and others have suggested that dimers of A $\beta$  are the toxic component of amyloid. As shown in Figure 21, dimers appear in response to chelation in disproportion to the monomeric signal (treatment with PBS alone does not generate soluble dimers). This suggests that A $\beta$  deposits are being dismantled by the chelators into SDS-resistant dimeric structural units.

Figure 22 shows that the recovery of total soluble protein is not affected by the presence of chelators in the homogenization step. The proportionality of extracted subfractions, calculated based on total protein as determined by formic acid extraction, should not be prone to artifact based on chelator-specific affects.

### *Example 6*

#### *Resolubilization of A $\beta$ by Clioquinol*

In one previous attempt to use metal chelation as a therapeutic for AD, Crapper-McLachlan and colleagues (Crapper-McLachlan, D.R., *et al.*, 337:1304 (1991)) administered intramuscular desferrioxamine (DFO) daily to

a small cohort of AD patients, and reported that their treatment attenuated the progression of the disease. Replication of this study has not been attempted.

The inventors attributed the beneficial effect to the removal of aluminum; however, they have conceded in presentations at meetings (*e.g.* International Conference on Alzheimer's Disease, 1992, Padua) that post-mortem metal analysis on brain tissue from subjects in the study indicated that although aluminum levels were lowered than placebo controls, zinc and iron levels were also lower in the brains of subjects treated with DFO. This is because, like all chelators, DFO has only a relative specificity for aluminum, but with also complex with zinc and iron. There appears to be no report on a histopathological analysis of post-mortem brain A $\beta$  content in the subjects who took DFO compared to the controls.

The administration of DFO, a painful intramuscular injection, is fraught with complications including the non-specific problems of chelation therapies (*e.g.* anemia). Although the results of Crapper-McLachlan and colleagues remain contentious and have not yet been reproduced, the possibility that the beneficial effects they reported were due to the partial removal of zinc from brain A $\beta$  collections cannot be excluded. DFO is a charged molecule that does not easily penetrate the blood-brain barrier, and, as such, is not an ideal candidate for the removal of zinc from A $\beta$  deposits, especially as its affinity for zinc is relatively low. Therefore, a more suitable candidate compound to attempt a trial of A $\beta$  Dissolution in APP Tgs was sought.

Clioquinol (iodochlorhydroxyquin, 5-chloro-7-iodo-8-hydroxyquinoline, MW 305.5) is a USP drug that chelates zinc [ $K(\text{Zn})= 12.5$ ,  $K(\text{Cu})= 15.8$ ,  $K(\text{Ca})= 8.1$ ,  $K(\text{Mg})= 8.6$ ], is hydrophobic, has a low general toxicity profile, and crosses the blood brain barrier (Padmanabhan *et al.*, 1989). It therefore possesses some of the ideal prototypic properties for a candidate agent that could solubilize zinc-assembled A $\beta$  deposits *in vivo*. It has been used as an oral antiamebic antibiotic, and as a topical antibiotic.

It has been demonstrated that clioquinol is rapidly absorbed from the gut of rats and mice where blood levels reached  $\approx 1\text{-}10\ \mu\text{M}$  within one hour of ingestion (Kotaki *et al.*, *J Pharmacobiodyn*, 6(11):881-887 (1983)). Since the drug is hydrophobic, it passes rapidly into the brain, and then is rapidly  
5 excreted, so that a bolus dose of clioquinol is almost completely removed from the brain within three hours. It appears to be safe in many mammalian species, including rat and mouse (Tateishi, J., *et al.*, *Lancet*, 2(7786):1096 (1972); Tateishi, J., *et al.*, *Acta Neuropathol.*, (Berl), 24(4):304-320 (1973)), and is still used as a veterinary antibiotic (Entero Vioform).

10 Clioquinol was withdrawn from use as an oral antibiotic for humans in the early 1970's when its ingestion in Japan was linked to a mysterious condition called subacute myelo-optic neuritis (SMON), a condition that resembles subacute combined degeneration of the cord caused by vitamin B12 deficiency. The mechanism of SMON has never been elucidated, but in the  
15 1970's a considerable literature developed exploring the pathophysiology of clioquinol ingestion (Tateishi, J., *et al.*, *Lancet*, 2(7786):1096 (1972); Tateishi, J., *et al.*, *Acta Neuropathol.*, (Berl), 24(4):304-320 (1973)). Several reports have demonstrated that clioquinol complexes with zinc in the brain, especially in areas enriched in synaptic vesicular zinc such as the temporal lobe (Shiraki,  
20 H. *Handbook of Clinical Neurology*, Vol. 37 (1979)). Indeed, over ingestion of clioquinol has been reported to induce amnesia in humans (Shiraki, H. *Handbook of Clinical Neurology*, Vol. 37 (1979)).

Because of its relatively safe profile in mice, and because there is a large literature on its pharmacology in this animal, clioquinol was chosen for  
25 study as a means to specifically chelate zinc from A $\beta$  deposits *in vitro* (induced aggregates and brain samples). It is possible that the low concentrations of clioquinol shown to be effective in resolubilizing A $\beta$  in the present invention may avoid the adverse SMON effect noted above. Thus, given its other pharmacological properties, clioquinol may hold promise as a  
30 effective agent in the treatment of AD in humans.

### *Dissolving Clioquinol*

In order to obtain a solution of clioquinol in PBS, the following protocol was followed: 5.3 grams of clioquinol was suspended with agitation in 200 milliliter of n-decane. The undissolved material was settled, air dried, and weighed, based on which it was determined that only 2 % of the clioquinol had dissolved in the n-decane. 100 milliliter of the supernatant (light yellow) was agitated in 100 milliliter of PBS, pH 7.4. Next, the phases were allowed to separate. The lower phase (PBS) was collected and filtered to remove the residue which had formed at the phase interface upon extraction with the organic solvent. The concentration of clioquinol in the PBS was determined to be 800 nanomolar. This number was arrived at based on two assumptions: (1) 2 % of the clioquinol was dissolved in the n-decane; and (2) the partitioning coefficient is 1/1750 with PBS at 1:1 mixture of n-decane to clioquinol.

### *Resolubilization of In Vitro Metal-Induced A $\beta$ Aggregates*

First, in order to appraise the efficacy of clioquinol in resolubilizing A $\beta$  aggregates, its ability to resolubilize A $\beta$  aggregates formed *in vitro* by the action of Cu<sup>2+</sup> or Zn<sup>2+</sup> upon A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> was examined. Figure 23 shows resolubilization of metal-induced A $\beta$  aggregate by chelators. A $\beta$  (10 ng/well in buffered saline) aggregation was induced by addition of metals (5  $\mu$ M) or acidic conditions (pH 5.5). Aggregates were transferred to a 0.2  $\mu$  nylon membrane by filtration. The aggregates were then washed (200  $\mu$ l/well) with TBS alone, TBS containing 2  $\mu$ M EDTA or TBS with 2  $\mu$ M clioquinol. The membrane was then fixed, probed with anti-A $\beta$  monoclonal antibody 6E10 and developed for exposure to ECL-film. Figure 23 shows the relative signal as determined by densitometric analysis of the ECL-film, calibrated against known amounts of the peptide. Values are expressed as a % of A $\beta$  signal remaining on the filter after washing with TBS alone. Clioquinol is hydrophobic, so that the reagent must first be solubilized in an organic solvent, and then partitioned into the aqueous buffer according to established protocols.

- 82 -

Like EDTA ( Figure 17), clioquinol significantly resolubilized precipitated A $\beta$ . Cu<sup>2+</sup> partially precipitates A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> (Bush, A.I., *et al.*, *Science* 268:1921 (1995)) at pH 7.4. EDTA (2  $\mu$ M) resolubilized 35% of a Zn<sup>2+</sup>-induced A $\beta$  precipitate, 60% of a Cu<sup>2+</sup>-induced precipitate, and 15% of a pH 5.5-induced precipitate. In contrast, clioquinol (2  $\mu$ M) was more effective at resolubilizing the Zn<sup>2+</sup>- and Cu<sup>2+</sup>- induced A $\beta$  precipitates (50%, and 85%, respectively), but was also ineffective at resolubilizing the pH 5.5 precipitate (10%). Since the aggregate at pH 5.5 is predominantly  $\beta$ -sheet (Wood, S.J. *et al.*, *J. Mol. Bio.*, 256:870-877 (1996)), these data indicate that the resolubilization of A $\beta$  by clioquinol/EDTA is likely to be due to specific chelation effects.

#### *Extraction of A $\beta$ from Samples of AD-Affected Brains*

Next the ability of clioquinol to extract A $\beta$  deposits from human brain was examined. It was found that, like other zinc chelators, clioquinol efficiently increases the resolubilization of A $\beta$ , compared to the amount of A $\beta$  resolubilized from the pellet fraction of brain homogenate by PBS alone. Figure 24 shows the effect of clioquinol upon the extraction of A $\beta$  from AD-affected brain. Fragments of prefrontal cortex from individual post-mortem samples with the histopathological diagnosis of AD were homogenized in PBS, pH 7.4, and then pelleted after centrifugation. The pellets were then washed with agitation twice for 30 minutes, 4°C, with PBS or PBS containing clioquinol (100% = 0.8  $\mu$ M clioquinol). The suspension was then pelleted (10,000 g for 30 minutes) and the supernatant removed (S1) for western blot analysis using A $\beta$ -specific antibodies (illustrated). The pellet was treated a second time in this experiment with agitation and centrifugation, and the second supernatant (S2) analysed. The data show typical results by western blot.

In agreement with earlier findings which showed that the optimal concentration of chelator for the extraction of A $\beta$  is idiosyncratic from case

to case, and that there is a paradoxical diminution of A $\beta$  extraction when the chelator concentration rises above the optimum, it was found that optimal clioquinol concentrations for A $\beta$  resolubilization vary in a similar manner (e.g., Specimen #1= 0.08  $\mu$ M, #2= 0.8  $\mu$ M). It was also observed that  
5 apparently dimeric A $\beta$  was more frequently observed on SDS-PAGE (illustrated), and that in these cases (e.g., Specimen #2) the first wash did not resolubilize much A $\beta$ , but the second wash was very efficient at resolubilizing the peptide. It was surmised that the pellet mass may be coated with adventitial, non-A $\beta$ , proteins that are removed by the first wash, allowing the  
10 second treatment access to the A $\beta$  collection. Indeed, further studies have shown that both sustained (for 16 hours) and repeated exposure to the chelator increases the resolubilization of A $\beta$  significantly.

Figure 25A and 25B show the western blot and accompanying densitometric analysis of reolubilization of A $\beta$  from AD-affected brain.  
15 Figure 25A is a western blot showing the effect of clioquinol upon the resolubilization of A $\beta$  from AD-affected brain. In this study, the brain specimen (from a different case than that of Figure 24) was homogenized according to the protocols in Figure 19. In this case a dose-dependent response to clioquinol was observed. Synthetic peptide standards that were  
20 used to calibrate densitometric quantification are shown in the two right-most lanes.

Figure 25B is a chart showing densitometry performed upon the results in Figure 25A, above. Proportional change in the amount of A $\beta$  recovered in the extraction of A $\beta$  by clioquinol from human brain is shown. As little as a  
25 1% dilution of clioquinol in PBS (100% = .8 $\mu$ M) or 8nM clioquinol is capable of doubling the recovery of A $\beta$  in the soluble phase.

In sequential extraction experiments, as described above, clioquinol (1.12  $\mu$ M) has been shown to result in a 2.5 fold increase in solubilization of A $\beta$  relative to PBS alone (see Figures 25A and 25B). Significantly, the  
30 findings the present invention show that very low (8nM) concentrations of

clioquinol may resolubilize more than twice the amount of A $\beta$  compared to PBS buffer alone (see Figures 25A and 25B). This suggests that such low concentrations may be therapeutically effective in treating amyloidosis, preferably that occurring in AD-affected human subjects.

### Example 7

#### *Potentiation of Resolubilization of Amyloid from AD-Affected Brain Tissue*

A $\beta$  was extracted from cortical tissue obtained from three subjects with clinically and histopathologically confirmed Alzheimer's disease in the presence of 1.6 $\mu$ M clioquinol (CQ), 2mM bathocuproine (BC), CQ + BC or PBS. Soluble A $\beta$  (ng/g tissue) was determined as described. Total A $\beta$  was determined following formic acid extraction of otherwise untreated tissue.

Figure 26 illustrates the potentiation of A $\beta$  resolubilization using clioquinol in combination with bathocuproine by graphically showing the proportion of total A $\beta$  extracted. Table 4 below shows the data depicted in Figure 26 and, in addition, shows each chelator or chelator combination in PBS buffer.

Table 4. Potentiation of Chelator-Promoted A $\beta$  Solubilization

Subject	PBS	CQ	BC	CQ+BC	CQ+PBS	BC+PBS	CQ+BC+PBS
1	0.74	1.85	3.1	5	0.11	2.36	4.26
2	1.8	4.5	7.2	11.2	2.7	5.4	9.4
3	2.3	3.4	6	12.7	1.1	3.7	10.4

(% of total A $\beta$  extracted)

The effect of clioquinol and bathocuproine combined is seen to be much more than additive. In subject 3, for example, the potentiated effect was over twice that of a simple additive effect (10.4 compared to 1.1 + 3.7 or 4.8). These data suggest that combinations of clioquinol and bathocuproine may be particularly

effective therapeutic combinations for the treatment of amyloidosis, in particular, the pathological A $\beta$ -aggregation manifest in brains of those afflicted with Alzheimer's disease.

### *Example 8*

#### 5     *Differential Effects of Chelation of Cerebral A $\beta$ Deposits in AD-Affected Subjects Versus Age-Matched Controls and the Effect of Magnesium*

Experiments involving extraction of cerebral tissue from AD-affected subjects and non-AD, age-matched controls by chelation indicate different  
10     resolubilization responses of amyloid deposits between the two sample groups with regard to extraction by specific chelators.

Higher concentrations of chelators with relatively broad specificity (e.g. EGTA) result in less resolubilization of A $\beta$  deposits. Experiments show that chelation of magnesium negatively affects resolubilization of A $\beta$  deposits.

#### *Materials and Methods*

15     Cortical tissue was dissected from the frontal poles of frozen AD and age-matched normal brains for which histopathological and clinical documentation were provided. AD tissue was selected according to CERAD criteria (Mirra et al., *Neurology* 41:479-486 (1991)) with particular attention  
20     paid to the presence of neuritic plaques and neurofibrillary tangles. Histological examination of A $\beta$  levels in normal specimens ranged from immunohistochemically undetectable to substantially present in the form of diffuse plaques.

Suitable quantities of gray matter from each subject were minced to serve as pools of homogenous tissue. Equal portions (0.5 g unless otherwise  
25     specified) were homogenized (Ika Ultaturax T-25, Janke and Kunkel, Staufen,



- 86 -

Germany) for 3 x 30s periods at full speed with a 30 second rest between runs in 3 ml of ice-cold phosphate-buffered saline (PBS pH 7.4) containing a cocktail of protease inhibitors (Biorad, Hercules, California. - Note: EDTA was not included in the protease inhibitor mixture) or in the presence of chelators or metal ions prepared in PBS. To obtain the soluble fraction, the homogenates were centrifuged at 100,000 x g for 30 min (Beckman J180, Beckman instruments, Fullerton, California) and the supernatant collected in 1 ml aliquots and stored on ice or immediately frozen at -70°C. In each experiment, all protein was precipitated from 1 ml of supernatant from each treatment group using 1:5 ice cold 10% trichloroacetic acid and pelleted in a bench top microfuge (Heraeus, Osteroder, Germany) at 10,000 x g. The remaining pellet was frozen at -70°C.

The efficiency of the precipitation was validated by applying the technique to a sample of whole human serum, diluted 1:10, to which had been added 2 µg of synthetic Aβ<sub>1-40</sub> or Aβ<sub>1-42</sub> (W. Keck Laboratory, Yale University New Haven, CT). Protein in the TCA pellet was estimated using the Pierce BCA kit (Pierce, Rockford, IL). The total Aβ load of unextracted cortex was obtained by dissolving 0.5 g of grey matter in 2 ml of 90% formic acid, followed by vacuum drying and neutralization with 30% ammonia.

Precipitated protein was subjected to SDS polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis (SDS-PAGE) on Novex pre-cast 10-20% Tris-Tricine gels followed by Western transfer onto 0.2 µm nitrocellulose membrane (Biorad, Hercules, CA). Aβ was detected using the WO2, G210 or G211 monoclonal antibodies (Ida, N., *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.*, 271:22908 (1996)) in combination with HRP-conjugated rabbit anti-mouse IgG (Dako, Denmark), and visualized using chemiluminescence (ECL, Amersham Life Science, Little Chalfont, Buckinghamshire, UK). Each gel included two or more lanes containing known quantities of synthetic Aβ which served as internal reference standards. Blot images were captured by a Relisys scanner with transparency adapter (Teco Information Systems, Taiwan, ROC) and densitometry conducted using

the NIH Image 1.6 program (National Institutes for Health, USA. Modified for PC by Scion Corporation, Frederick, MD), calibrated using a step diffusion chart. For quantitation of A $\beta$  in brain extracts, the internal reference standards of synthetic A $\beta$  were utilized to produce standard curves from which values were interpolated.

In the experiments corresponding to the results shown in Figure 27, duplicate 0.2 g samples of AD cortical tissue were homogenized and subjected to ultracentrifugation as described, but using either 1 ml or 2 ml of extraction buffer (PBS). Protein was precipitated from the entire supernatant and redissolved in 100  $\mu$ l of sample buffer. Equal volumes of TCA-precipitated protein were subjected to Tris-Tricine SDS-PAGE and A $\beta$  was visualized as described above.

In the experiments corresponding to the results shown in Figure 28A, 0.2 g specimens of frontal cortex from AD brain were homogenized in the presence of 2 ml of PBS or varying concentrations of Cu<sup>2+</sup> (Cu(SO<sub>4</sub>)<sub>2</sub>) or Zn<sup>2+</sup> (Zn(SO<sub>4</sub>)<sub>2</sub>). A $\beta$  in the high speed supernatant was visualized as described above.

In the experiments corresponding to the results shown in Figure 28B, 0.2 g specimens of frontal cortex from AD brain were homogenized in the presence of 2 ml of PBS or 2 mM EGTA. The homogenates were spun at 100,000 x g for 30 min and the supernatant discarded. The remaining (metal depleted) pellets were rehomogenized in a further 2 ml of either PBS alone EGTA alone, 2 mM Mg<sup>2+</sup> (Mg(Cl)<sub>2</sub> • 6H<sub>2</sub>O) in PBS or 2 mM Ca<sup>2+</sup> (CaCl<sub>2</sub> • 2H<sub>2</sub>O) in PBS and the homogenate subjected to ultracentrifugation. A $\beta$  in the soluble fraction was visualized as described above.

In the experiments corresponding to the results shown in Figures 29A and 29B, frontal cortex from AD (n=6) and age-matched, amyloid-positive (n=5) subjects were treated with PBS, TPEN, EGTA or BC (0.1mM and 2mM) and soluble A $\beta$  assessed as described above.

In the experiments corresponding to the results shown in Figure 30, representative AD (left panels) and aged-matched control specimens (right panels) were prepared as described in PBS or 5mM BC. Identical gels were run and Western blots were probed with mAbs WO2 (raised against residues 5-16, recognizes  $A\beta_{1-40}$  and  $A\beta_{1-42}$ ), G210 (raised against residues 35-40, recognizes  $A\beta_{1-40}$ ), or G211 (raised against residues 35-42, recognizes  $A\beta_{1-42}$ ) (See Ida, N., *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.*, 271:22908 (1996)).

### Results and Discussion

To further explore the involvement of metal ions in the deposition and architecture of amyloid deposits, the inventors extracted brain tissue from histologically-confirmed AD-affected subjects and from subjects that were age-matched to AD-affected subjects but were not clinically demented (age-matched controls, "AC") in the presence of a variety of chelating agents and metals. Chelators were selected which displayed high respective affinities for zinc and/or copper relative to more abundant metal ions such as calcium and magnesium. See Table 5 below.

Table 5. Stability constants of metal chelators

	Ca	Cu	Mg	Fe	Zn	Al	Co
EGTA	10.86	17.57	5.28	11.8	12.6	13.9	12.35
TPEN	3	20.2	n/a	14.4	15.4	n/a	n/a
BC	n/a	Cu <sup>2+</sup> 6.1 Cu <sup>+</sup> 19.1	n/a	n/a	4.1	n/a	4.2

logK10 where  $K = \frac{[Metal.Ligand]}{[Metal][Ligand]}$ . From: NIST database of critically selected stability constants for metal complexes Version 2.0 1995.

A series of titration curves were prepared to determine the chelator concentration at which maximal response was obtained. In these experiments,

selected chelators were limited to EGTA, TPEN and BC. Figures 19A-C show that chelators affect the solubilization of A $\beta$  in a dose-dependent manner.

It was found that EGTA and TPEN elicited a significant enhancement in solubilization of A $\beta$  in a pattern of response typified by peak values at or near 0.004mM and 0.1mM, and lower values at concentrations in between. Both chelators were increasingly ineffective at concentrations over 1mM, and at 2mM, EGTA virtually abolished the signal for A $\beta$ . In contrast, BC elicited a typical concentration-dependent response with no decline in effectiveness in the low millimolar range even when extended to 20mM. Total TCA-precipitated protein in the supernatant was assayed and found to be unaffected by either chelator kind or concentration.

Recent findings have demonstrated the presence of neurotoxic dimers in the soluble (Kuo, Y-M., *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 271:4077-81 (1996)) and insoluble (Roher, A.E., *et al.*, *Journal of Biological Chemistry* 271:20631-20635 (1996); Giulian, D. *et al.*, *J. Neurosci.*, 16:6021-6037 (1996)) fractions of A $\beta$  extracts of the brains of AD individuals. Figure 21 shows that chelator-promoted solubilization of A $\beta$  elicits SDS-resistant dimers. Under the preparation conditions used, SDS-resistant dimers were not generally observed in the extracts with PBS alone. Dimers were found to appear in response to chelator-promoted solubilization of A $\beta$  however.

The signal for dimeric A $\beta$  was frequently disproportionate to that of monomeric A $\beta$  and the ratio varied with both the type and concentration of chelator used (Figure 21). In contrast, when synthetic A $\beta_{1-40}$  was run under identical conditions, the monomer:dimer ratio reflected a predictable and reproducible concentration-dependent relationship. These data suggest that the dimers observed in extracts of human brain are predominantly an intermediate structural unit generated by the dissolution of amyloid, resulting in turn from the sequestration of metals by chelating agents.

Figure 28A shows the effect of metals upon the solubility of brain-derived A $\beta$ . Precipitation of A $\beta$  was induced by adding either copper or zinc to

unchelated extracts. The resulting signal for soluble A $\beta$  was attenuated, the threshold concentration being between 20 and 50  $\mu$ M for copper and between 5 and 20  $\mu$ M for zinc. At concentrations greater than 100  $\mu$ M solubility was abolished. Interestingly, at lower concentrations of copper there appears to be a transitional stage where A $\beta$  is present in the dimeric form prior to complete aggregation, mirroring the intermediate stage dimers elicited by chelator-mediated solubilization.

In order to confirm that the chelators were effective at sequestering metals at the concentrations employed in these experiments, ICP was used to determine the residual levels of several metals in the post-centrifugation pellets retained from the experiment described in Figures 19A-19C. Of the six metals tested, zinc levels were reduced by TPEN in a dose dependent manner, whereas EGTA affected calcium and magnesium, particularly at higher concentrations. See Table 6 below.

Table 6. Residual Metal Levels in Post-Centrifugation (Extracted) Pellets

		Mg (mg/kg)	Al (mg/kg)	Ca (mg/kg)	Fe (mg/kg)	Zn (mg/kg)	Cu (mg/kg)
TPEN (mM)	PBS	202	36	573	411	60	13
	0.004	147	22	322	317	28	10
	0.001	192	34	490	512	42	12
	0.04	201	22	956	322	22	10
	0.1	200	60	708	389	21	12
	2.0	200	148	419	376	19	11
	5.0	205	16	377	307	17	10
EGTA (mM)	PBS	223	52	1186	266	45	11
	0.004	228	73	795	247	53	11
	0.001	237	43	862	281	49	12
	0.04	247	104	1402	438	71	13
	0.01	213	61	675	272	54	13
	2.0	191	62	519	238	27	13
	5.0	168	27	455	230	18	12
BC (mM)	0.004	234	33	489	231	47	12
	0.001	225	88	1306	275	47	13
	0.04	226	38	753	248	56	15
	0.01	223	73	762	256	49	13

	Mg (mg/kg)	Al (mg/kg)	Ca (mg/kg)	Fe (mg/kg)	Zn (mg/kg)	Cu (mg/kg)
2.0	254	42	1602	271	49	14
5.0	238	38	912	249	53	15

Metal levels were measured in 10 AD specimens treated with 0.1 mM TPEN. See Table 7 below. The observed increase in extractable A $\beta$  correlated with significant depletion in zinc in every case and to a lesser extent, copper, when compared with PBS-treated tissue. No other metal tested was significantly influenced by treatment at this concentration.

Table 7. Residual Metal Levels (Based on 10 AD Specimens)

	Zn	Cu	Fe	Ca	Mg	Al
PBS (+/- SEM)	50.7 (4.9)	11.9 (1.5)	227 (28.8)	202 (28.3)	197 (39.1)	44 (46.2)
TPEN (+/-SEM)	33.2 (4.1)	9.8 (1.7)	239 (31.7)	210 (37.0)	230 (39.2)	65 (45.0)

Given the precipitous decline in extractable A $\beta$  observed when employing high concentrations of TPEN or EGTA (see Figure 9), it was hypothesized that magnesium or calcium might also have a significant role in the A $\beta$  solubility equilibrium. Magnesium or calcium added to the homogenization buffer produced no appreciable alteration in soluble A $\beta$ . However, using an extract previously depleted of metals by high levels of EGTA, the addition of magnesium, and to a much lesser extent calcium, led to resolubilization of the precipitated A $\beta$ . Figure 28B shows that A $\beta$  solubility in metal-depleted tissue samples is restored by supplementing with magnesium.

Mindful of the high variability observed between individual subjects, 6 AD and 5 aged-matched control brains were chosen at random to determine if the observed phenomena were broadly applicable. These specimens were subjected to chelation treatment at selected concentrations of 0.1 or 2.0 mM or with PBS alone. Figure 29A shows that patterns of chelator-promoted solubilization of A $\beta$  differ in AD and aged, non-AD tissue. The chelator-

promoted solubilization of A $\beta$  from AD brains represented an increase of up to 7-fold over that seen with PBS alone; the mean increase for BC being around 4 fold, and that for TPEN around 2 fold. Treatment with EGTA at 2 mM always produced a diminution in A $\beta$  signal below that observed for the PBS control (See Figure 29B).

The effects observed with non-demented, aged-matched controls were similar with respect to EGTA and TPEN. However, it is noteworthy that the effect of BC was much reduced. In some cases (Figure 29A, lower panel), BC treatment caused an attenuation in soluble A $\beta$  suggesting that the amyloid deposits in AD-affected brain respond to this chelator in a different fashion than the deposits predominating in non-demented elderly brain.

For each subject in the experiments of Figures 29A and 29B, the extractable A $\beta$  was derived and calculated as a proportion of the total pre-extraction A $\beta$  load See Table 8 and 9 below.

Table 8. AD-Affected Tissue

AD	1	2	3	4	5	6	X	+/-SEM	X C/PBS
Total A $\beta$ ( $\mu$ g/g)	10.8	77.0	80.3	6.0	14.4	16.8	43.0	14.1	
PBS $\mu$ g/g (% of total)	0.74 (0.1)	1.39 (1.8)	1.04 (1.3)	0.07 (1.1)	3.0 (2.1)	0.06 (0.4)	1.05 (1.2)	0.44 (0.3)	
TPEN 2mM $\mu$ g/g (% of total)	0.21 (0.2)	3.40 (4.4)	1.80 (2.25)	5.50 (9.2)	5.00 (3.5)	0.28 (1.75)	2.73 (4.6)	0.85 (0.9)	2.60
BC2mM $\mu$ g/g (% of total)	0.31 (0.3)	5.54 (7.2)	3.62 (4.5)	6.05 (10.0)	6.03 (4.2)	0.54 (3.4)	4.10 (5.4)	0.86 (1.2)	3.90

Table 9. Age-Matched Control Tissue

AC	1	2	3	4	5	X	+/-SEM	X C/PBS
Total A $\beta$ ( $\mu$ g/g)	0.7	4.2	2.7	3.2	3.6	2.8	0.60	
PBS $\mu$ g/g (% of total)	0.17 (25.0)	0.13 (3.1)	0.18 (6.7)	0.10 (3.3)	0.66 (18.3)	0.25 (11.3)	0.10 (4.4)	
TPEN 2mM $\mu$ g/g (% of total)	0.22 (32.0)	0.38 (9.0)	0.26 (9.7)	0.09 (3.0)	1.06 (29.5)	0.40 (16.7)	0.17 (5.1)	1.6

- 93 -

AC	1	2	3	4	5	X	+/-SEM	X C/PBS
BC 2mM $\mu\text{g/g}$	0.03	0.24	0.29	0.08	0.98	0.32	0.16	1.28
(% of total)	(5)	(5.7)	(11.0)	(2.6)	(27.2)	(10.3)	(4.6)	

Total A $\beta$  for AD brains ranged from 6 - 80 $\mu\text{g/g}$  wet weight tissue. The percentage of A $\beta$  extractable (one extraction/centrifugation sequence) ranged from 0.33 - 10%. The corresponding values for aged-matched control brains were 0.68 - 4.2 $\mu\text{g/g}$  total A $\beta$  and 2.6 - 29.5% extractable.

In order to further investigate these different responses to chelators, triplicate blots of AD tissue and control tissue which displayed cerebrovascular and diffuse amyloid deposits were compared. Figure 30 shows that chelation promotes the solubilization of A $\beta_{1-40}$  and A $\beta_{1-42}$  from AD and non-AD tissue. Using 3 different monoclonal antibodies, attempts to detect whether any particular species of A $\beta$  were selectively affected by chelation were performed. Both A $\beta_{1-40}$  and A $\beta_{1-42}$  were liberated by chelation, however the dimeric form of A $\beta_{1-40}$  in both AD and control tissue predominated. As reported by Roher, A.E., *et al.*, *PNAS* 90: 10,836-10,840 (1993), the predominant form of cerebrovascular amyloid is A $\beta_{1-42}$ . Somewhat surprisingly, the dimeric form of this highly aggregating species is absent in the (control) tissue in which it is most favored.

It has recently been reported that the zinc-dependent Insulin Degrading Enzyme (IDE) has significant A $\beta$  cleavage activity (Perez *et al.*, *Proc Soc. for Neuroscience* 20: Abstract 321.13 (1997)).<sup>23</sup> In the experiments presented here, the disassembly of amyloid is reflected in the intermediate dimeric species which result from conversion between soluble and insoluble forms. Thus, simple inhibition of catalytic enzyme activity cannot account for the observed increase in soluble A $\beta$ . However, in the event that a proportion of the chelator-mediated augmentation of A $\beta$  solubilization was due to inhibition of this enzyme, homogenisations were conducted both in the presence of 1mM n-ethyl amide (NEM), a potent inhibitor of IDE, and at 37°C. No enhancement of



A $\beta$  signal was observed above that of PBS alone for NEM, nor was there any diminution of signal after incubation at 37°C.

### Discussion

5 Metal chelators offer a powerful tool for investigating the role of metals in the complex environment of the brain, however the strengths of these compounds may also define their limitations. The broad metal affinities of most chelators make them rather a blunt instrument. Attempts were made to sharpen the focus of the use of chelators by selecting chelators with a range of affinities for the metals of interest. These differences may be exploited by  
10 appropriate dilution, thereby favoring the binding of the relatively high affinity ligand (metal for which the chelator has the highest affinity).

The dilution profiles exhibited by EGTA and TPEN possibly reflect a series of equilibria between different metal ligands and the chelator, whereby the influence of abundant but low affinity metals is observed at high chelator  
15 concentrations and that of the high affinity, but more scarce, metals is predominates at low concentrations of chelator. In the case of A $\beta$  itself, this explanation is further complicated by the presence of low and high affinity binding sites for zinc (and copper) (Bush, A.I. *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.*, 269:12152-12158 (1994)).

20 Bathocuproine with its low affinity for metals other than Cu<sup>+</sup> is effective at solubilizing A $\beta$  through a dilution range over 3 orders of magnitude, and interestingly, does not diminish in effectiveness at the highest levels tested. The particular affinity of BC for Cu<sup>+</sup> has been exploited to demonstrate that in the process of binding to APP, Cu<sup>2+</sup> is reduced to Cu<sup>+</sup> resulting in the liberation  
25 of potentially destructive free radicals (Multhaup, G., *et al.*, *Science* 271:1406-1409 (1996)). It has been shown that A $\beta$  has a similar propensity for reducing copper with consequent free radical generation (Huang, X., *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 272:26464-26470 (1997)).

Although the predicted reduction in copper in extraction pellets treated with BC has not been demonstrated, it is possible that the ratio of  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$  to  $\text{Cu}^+$  has been affected. At this stage, however, the means to evaluate the relative contributions of divalent and reduced forms to the total copper content of such extraction pellets are not available.

In addition to their primary metal binding characteristics, chelators are a class of compounds which vary in hydrophobicity and solubility. Their capacity to infiltrate the highly hydrophobic amyloid deposits may therefore be an important factor in the disassembly of aggregated  $\text{A}\beta$ . It is also possible that the chelators are also acting to liberate intracellular stores of  $\text{A}\beta$  in vesicular compartments as metal-bound aggregates. Preliminary data from our laboratory indicates that this may be the case with platelets.

The variability between subjects is consistent, reflecting the heterogeneity of the disease in its clinical and histopathological expression. Despite this, a consistent pattern of response to the actions of chelators by tissue from both AD and non-AD subjects is observed. This universality of the phenomenon of chelator-mediated solubilization is strongly suggestive that metals are also involved in the assembly of amyloid deposits in normal individuals, although the dissimilar patterns of response suggest that different mechanisms are operating in the disease and non-pathological states.

On the basis of the evidence presented here and the *in vitro* data, it is proposed that zinc functions in the healthy individual to promote the reversible aggregation of  $\text{A}\beta$ , counteracted by magnesium acting to maintain  $\text{A}\beta$  solubility. Further, the disease state is characterized by an unregulated interaction with copper resulting in the generation of free radicals.

A functional homeostatic mechanism implies equilibrium between intracellular copper and zinc (and perhaps other metals) normally present in trace amounts, for which  $\text{A}\beta$  has strong affinity, and more abundant metals which bind less strongly to  $\text{A}\beta$ . Zinc is of particular interest because the anatomical distribution of zinc correlates with the cortical regions most

susceptible to amyloid plaque formation (Assaf, S.Y. & Chung, S.H., *Nature*, 308:734-736 (1984)).

It has recently been demonstrated (Huang, X., *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 272:26464-26470 (1997)) that zinc-promoted aggregation of synthetic A $\beta$  is reversible by the application of EDTA. The tightly-regulated neurocortical zinc transport system might provide a physiological parallel for this chelator-mediated disaggregation by moving zinc quickly in and out of the intraneuronal spaces.

Copper, while binding less avidly to A $\beta$  than zinc (Bush, A.I., *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 269:12152-12158 (1994)) has greater potential to inflict damage via free radical generation, resulting polymers are not reversible (see Example 10, below). Slight alterations in the transportation and/or metabolism of metals resulting from age-related deterioration of cellular processes may provide the environment for a rapid escalation of metal-mediated A $\beta$  accretion which eventually overwhelms regulatory and clearance mechanisms. In describing a mechanism for A $\beta$  homeostasis this model for amyloid deposition implies a possible physiological role for A $\beta$  whereby aggregation and disaggregation may be effected through regulation or cortical metal levels and that the predominantly sporadic character of AD reflects individual differences in the brain milieu. Such a mechanism by no means rules out other genetic, environmental, inflammatory or other processes influencing the progression of the disease. Furthermore, in demonstrating the effectiveness of chelators in solubilising amyloid, it is suggested herein that agents of this type are useful for therapeutic or prophylactic use in AD.

### Example 10

#### *Formation of SDS-Resistant A $\beta$ Polymers*

The cause for the permanent deposition of A $\beta$  in states such as Alzheimer's Disease (AD) and Down's Syndrome (DS) are unknown, but the extraction of A $\beta$  from the brains of AD and DS patients indicates that there are forms of A $\beta$  that can be resolubilized in water and run as a monomer on SDS-PAGE (Kuo, Y-M., *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 271:4077-4081 (1996); see also Example 9 above), and forms that manifest SDS-, urea- and formic acid-resistant polymers on PAGE (Masters, C.L. *et al.*, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 82:4245-4249 (1985); Dyrks, T., *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 267:18210-18217 (1992); Roher, A.E., *et al.*, *Journal of Biological Chemistry* 271:20631-20635 (1996). Thus, the extraction of SDS-resistant A $\beta$  polymers from plaques implicates polymerization as a pathogenic mechanism that promotes the formation of AD amyloid.

The exact mechanism underlying the formation of SDS-resistant polymeric A $\beta$  species remains unresolved. Recently, we found that A $\beta$  reduces both Cu<sup>2+</sup> and Fe<sup>3+</sup> (Huang, X., *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 272:26464-26470 (1997)), providing a mechanism whereby a highly reactive species could promote the modification of proteins via an oxidative mechanism. In this study we test the ability of Cu<sup>2+</sup> and Fe<sup>3+</sup> to promote SDS-resistant A $\beta$  polymerization.

#### *Materials and Methods*

Human A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> peptide was synthesized, purified and characterized as described above. Rat A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> was obtained from Quality Control Biochemicals, Inc. (Hopkinton, MA). Peptides were analyzed and stock solutions prepared as described above.

As above, electronic images captured using the Fluoro-S Image Analysis System (Bio-Rad, Hercules, CA) were analyzed using Multi-Analyst

Software (Bio-Rad, Hercules, CA). This chemiluminescent image analysis system is linear over 2 orders of magnitude and has comparable sensitivity to film.

Human AD derived SDS-resistant polymers were solublized in formic acid, and then dialyzed with 5 changes of 100 mM ammonium bicarbonate, pH 7.5. The solublized peptide was then used for subsequent chelation experiments.

### *Results and Discussion*

The generation of SDS-resistant A $\beta$  polymers by metal ions was tested by incubating Cu<sup>2+</sup> (30  $\mu$ M) or Zn<sup>2+</sup> (30  $\mu$ M) at pH 6.6, 7.4 and 9.0 with A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub>. As shown in Figure 9, Western blot analysis of samples incubated with Cu<sup>2+</sup> and run under SDS denaturing and  $\beta$ -mercaptoethanol reducing conditions revealed an increase in dimeric, trimeric and higher oligomeric A $\beta$  species over time. The dimer and trimer had molecular weights of approximately 8.5 kD and 13.0 kD, respectively. Image analysis indicated 42% and 9% conversion of the monomer to dimer and trimer, respectively, in samples incubated at pH 7.4 after 5 d. The conversion of monomer to the dimer and trimer was 29% and 2%, respectively, at pH 6.6 after 5 d.

In contrast, changes in [H<sup>+</sup>] alone did not induce SDS-resistant A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> polymerization. Less than 4% of the peptide was converted to the SDS-resistant dimer after 5 d in samples incubated at pH 6.6, 7.4 or 9.0, most likely as a result of contaminating Cu<sup>2+</sup> in the buffer and A $\beta$  solutions. Cu<sup>2+</sup> contamination of chelex-treated PBS was up to 0.5  $\mu$ M as determined by ion coupled plasma-atomic emission spectroscopy (ICP-AES). Although Zn<sup>2+</sup> induces rapid aggregation of A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> (Bush, A. I., *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 268:16109 (1993); Bush, A. I., *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 269:12152 (1994); Bush, A. I., *et al.*, *Science* 265:1464-1467 (1994); Bush, A. I., *et al.*, *Science* 268:1921-1922 (1995); Atwood *et al.*, submitted; Huang, X. *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.*

272:26464-26470 (1997)), it did not induce SDS-resistant A $\beta$  polymerization (Figure 9) as previously reported (Bush, A.I., *et al.*, *Science* 268:1921-1922 (1995)).

5 A $\beta_{1-42}$  is the predominant species found in amyloid plaques (Masters, C.L. *et al.*, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 82: 4245 (1985); Murphy, G.M., *et al.*, *Am. J. Pathol.* 144:1082-1088 (1994); Mak, K., *et al.*, *Brain Res.* 667:138-142 (1994); Iwatsubo, T., *et al.*, *Ann. Neurol.* 37:294-299 (1995); Mann *et al.*, *Ann. Neurol.* 40:149-156 (1996)). Therefore, the ability of A $\beta_{1-40}$  and A $\beta_{1-42}$  to form SDS-resistant polymers was compared.

10 In contrast to Cu<sup>2+</sup>-induced SDS-resistant A $\beta_{1-40}$  polymerization over days, SDS-resistant A $\beta_{1-42}$  polymerization occurred within minutes in the presence of Cu<sup>2+</sup> (Figure 31A). Unlike A $\beta_{1-40}$  where Cu<sup>2+</sup> induces the formation of a SDS-resistant dimeric species first, A $\beta_{1-42}$  initially forms an apparent trimer species in the presence of Cu<sup>2+</sup>. Over time, dimeric and higher  
15 polymeric species also appear in A $\beta_{1-42}$  incubations with Cu<sup>2+</sup> at both pH 7.4 and 6.6. The greater Cu<sup>2+</sup> induced A $\beta_{1-42}$  polymerization observed at pH 6.6 compared with pH 7.4 in samples incubated for 30 min. was reversed after 5 d. At pH 6.6, both A $\beta_{1-40}$  and A $\beta_{1-42}$  exist in an aggregated form within minutes. Therefore, the formation of these polymeric species occurs within A $\beta$   
20 aggregates and the formation of SDS-resistant A $\beta$  polymers is independent of aggregation state (see below). Similar results were obtained using the monoclonal antibody 4G8.

25 Since redox active Fe (Smith, M.A., *et al.*, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 94:9866 (1997)) and ferritin (Grudke-Iqbal, I., *et al.*, *Acta Neuropathol.* 81:105 (1990)) are found in amyloid lesions, experiments were performed to determine if Fe could induce SDS-resistant polymerization of A $\beta_{1-40}$  and A $\beta_{1-42}$  (Figure 31A). Fe<sup>3+</sup> did not induce A $\beta_{1-40}$  polymerization above background levels with either peptide. The small increase in polymeric A $\beta_{1-40}$  and A $\beta_{1-40}$  in samples with no metal ions reflects a small contaminating concentration of Cu<sup>2+</sup>.

- 100 -

The formation of amyloid plaques is not a feature of aged rats (Johnstone, E.M., *et al.*, *Mol. Brain Res.* 10:229 (1991); Shivers *et al.*, *EMBO J.* 7:1365-1370 (1988)). To test whether rat A $\beta_{1-40}$  would form SDS-resistant A $\beta$  polymers, rat A $\beta_{1-40}$  was incubated with Cu<sup>2+</sup> and Fe<sup>3+</sup> at pH 7.4 and 6.6 (Figure 31B). Neither metal ion induced SDS-resistant A $\beta$  polymers (Huang, X. *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 272:26464-26470 (1997)). The binding and reduction of Cu<sup>2+</sup> by rat A $\beta_{1-40}$  is markedly decreased compared to that of human A $\beta_{1-40}$  (Huang, X. *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 272:26464-26470 (1997)). This result suggests that the generation of SDS-resistant A $\beta$  polymers is dependent upon the binding and reduction of Cu<sup>2+</sup> by A $\beta$ .

Tests were performed to determine the concentration of Cu<sup>2+</sup> required to induce the formation of SDS-resistant A $\beta_{1-40}$  and A $\beta_{1-42}$  polymers. A $\beta_{1-40}$  and A $\beta_{1-42}$  were incubated with different [Cu<sup>2+</sup>] (0-30  $\mu$ M) at pH 7.4 and 6.6 and the samples analyzed by Western blot and the signal quantitated using the Fluoro-S Image Analysis System (Bio-Rad, Hercules, CA) as previously described.

At pH 7.4, the increase in polymerization was barely detectable as [Cu<sup>2+</sup>] was increased from 0.5 to 1  $\mu$ M, but under mildly acidic conditions (pH 6.6), SOS-resistant polymerization could be detected (over 3-fold increase in dimerization (Table 10A)).

Table 10A. Cu<sup>2+</sup>- Induced SDS-Resistant Polymers of A $\beta_{1-40}$ 

[Cu <sup>2+</sup> ]	pH 7.4				
	Monomer	Dimer	Trimer	Tetramer	Pentamer
0	96.8	3.2	<0.1	0	0
0.5	94.8	4.9	0.3	0	0
1	93.6	5.9	0.6	0	0
5	84.3	14.2	1.5	0	0
10	85.2	13.2	1.6	0	0
30	76.2	19.1	4.7	0	0

- 101 -

	pH 6.6				
[Cu <sup>2+</sup> ]	Monomer	Dimer	Trimer	Tetramer	Pentamer
0	97.9	2.1	<0.1	0	0
0.5	97.6	2.2	0.2	0	0
1	92.6	7.3	0.1	0	0
5	90.1	9.8	0.1	0	0
10	79.4	16.1	4.5	0	0
30	74.5	13.2	12.2	0	0

A similar Cu<sup>2+</sup> concentration and pH dependent increase in SDS-resistant A $\beta$ <sub>1-42</sub> polymers also was observed (Table 10B), but SDS-resistant polymerization occurred at much lower [Cu<sup>2+</sup>].

Table 10B. Cu<sup>2+</sup>- Induced SDS-Resistant Polymers of A $\beta$ <sub>1-42</sub>

	pH 7.4				
[Cu <sup>2+</sup> ]	Monomer	Dimer	Trimer	Tetramer	Pentamer
0	76.61	0	16.0	5.5	1.9
0.5	70.7	0	20.5	6.2	2.5
1	64.9	0	23.6	7.4	4.0
5	56.1	0	31.8	8.7	4.1
10	55.1	0	30.3	10.3	4.3
30	57.1	0	31.1	8.3	4.2
	pH 6.6				
[Cu <sup>2+</sup> ]	Monomer	Dimer	Trimer	Tetramer	Pentamer
0	61.0	0	27.3	8.6	3.8
0.5	52.1	0	33.8	12.0	3.0
5	59.6	0	30.0	7.1	3.2
10	52.3	0	31.7	13.6	2.2

A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> polymerization was not detected with increasing Fe<sup>3+</sup> concentrations at any pH. Therefore, of the metal ions known to interact with



- 102 -

A $\beta$ , only Cu<sup>2+</sup>, whose ability to aggregate and bind Cu<sup>2+</sup> under mildly acidic conditions is enhanced, is capable of inducing SDS-resistant A $\beta$  polymerization.

Oxygen radical mediated chemical attack has been correlated with an increase in protein and free carbonyls (Smith, C.D., *et al.*, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 88:10540 (1991); Hensley, K., *et al.*, *J. Neurochem.* 65:2146 (1995); Smith, M.A., *et al.*, *Nature* 382:120 (1996)) and peroxynitrite-mediated protein nitration (Good, P.F., *et al.*, *Am. J. Pathol.* 149:21 (1996); Smith, M.A., *et al.*, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 94:9866 (1997)).

A $\beta$  is capable of reducing Cu<sup>2+</sup> and H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> is produced in solutions containing A $\beta$  and Cu<sup>2+</sup> or Fe<sup>3+</sup> (Huang, X. *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 272:26464-26470 (1997)). As shown above, the generation of SDS-resistant A $\beta$  polymers in the order A $\beta$ <sub>1-42</sub> >> A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> >> rat A $\beta$ <sub>1-40</sub> in the presence of Cu<sup>2+</sup> correlates well with the generation of Cu<sup>+</sup> and reactive oxygen species (ROS; OH<sup>•</sup>, H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> and O<sub>2</sub><sup>-•</sup>; Huang, X. *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 272:26464-26470 (1997)) by each peptide.

The increased generation of SDS-resistant A $\beta$  polymers in the presence of Cu<sup>2+</sup> compared to Fe<sup>3+</sup> also was correlated with the generation of the reduced metal ions, respectively (Huang, X. *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 272:26464-26470 (1997)). The increase in SDS-resistant A $\beta$  polymerization seen under mildly acidic conditions may be a result of the higher [H<sup>+</sup>] driving the production of H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> dismutated from O<sub>2</sub><sup>-•</sup> with the subsequent generation of OH<sup>•</sup> via Fenton-like chemistry inducing a modification of A $\beta$  that results in SDS-resistant A $\beta$  polymers (see Figure 12, showing a schematic of the proposed mechanism of A $\beta$ -mediated reduced metal/ROS production).

To confirm whether ROS were involved in the generation of SDS-resistant polymers, experiments were performed to determine whether Cu in the presence or absence of H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> could promote A $\beta$  polymerization (Figure 32A). A similar level of A $\beta$ <sub>1-42</sub> polymerization was observed in the presence of Cu<sup>2+</sup> or Cu<sup>+</sup>, indicating that the reduced metal ion alone was not capable of

increasing A $\beta$  polymerization. Likewise, polymerization of A $\beta_{1-42}$  in the presence of H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> was low and equivalent to control levels. However, the addition of Cu<sup>2+</sup> or Cu<sup>+</sup> to A $\beta$  in the presence of H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> induced a similar, marked increase in dimers, trimers and tetramers within 1 hour. After 1 day, higher molecular weight polymers (> 18 kD) were generated (from the oligomers), with a subsequent reduction in the levels of monomer, dimer, trimer and tetramer only with the coincubation of H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> and Cu<sup>2+</sup>.

Both the reduced and oxidized forms of Cu produced similar levels of polymerization in the presence of H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub>. In contrast, Fe<sup>3+</sup> or Fe<sup>2+</sup> did not induce as much polymerization as Cu<sup>2+</sup> in the presence of H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> after 1 day incubation (Figures 32A and 32B). Since Fe<sup>3+</sup> is not reduced as efficiently as Cu<sup>2+</sup> by A $\beta$  (Huang, X., et al., *J. Biol. Chem.*, 272:26464-26470 (1997)), and Cu<sup>+</sup> is rapidly converted to Cu<sup>2+</sup> in solution, these results suggest that the reduction reaction is required for the polymerization reaction to proceed.

It was confirmed that the reduction of Cu<sup>2+</sup> was required for generating SDS-resistant A $\beta$  polymerization by incubating A $\beta_{1-42}$  and Cu<sup>2+</sup> with and without bathocupoindisulfonic acid (BC), a Cu<sup>+</sup> specific chelator (Figure 32C). There was a marked decrease in polymerization, indicating that Cu<sup>+</sup> generation was crucial for the polymerization of A $\beta$ . It is possible that the decreased polymerization may be due to chelation of Cu<sup>2+</sup> by BC, however given the low binding affinity of BC for Cu<sup>2+</sup> compared with A $\beta$ , it seems likely that the chelation of Cu<sup>+</sup> by BC prevents it from inducing SDS-resistant A $\beta$  polymerization. Therefore, A $\beta$  may undergo a hydroxyl radical modification that promotes its assembly into SDS-resistant polymers.

If H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> is required for the polymerization reaction under physiological conditions, the removal of H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> and its precursors O<sub>2</sub> and O<sub>2</sub><sup>-</sup> (Huang, X., et al., *J. Biol. Chem.*, 272:26464-26470 (1997)) should decrease SDS-resistant polymerization. To confirm that H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> generated in the presence of A $\beta$  and Cu<sup>2+</sup> was required for the polymerization reaction, A $\beta_{1-42}$  was incubated with or without Cu<sup>2+</sup> in the presence of TCEP (Figure 33A). TCEP significantly

reduced the level of polymerization in samples with and without  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$  over 3 days. This indicates that the generation of  $\text{H}_2\text{O}_2$  is required for the polymerization of  $\text{A}\beta$ .

To confirm that the generation of  $\text{O}_2^-$  was required for SDS-resistant  $\text{A}\beta$  polymerization,  $\text{A}\beta_{1-42}$  was incubated with and without  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$  at pH 7.4 and 6.6 under argon in order to decrease the reduction of molecular  $\text{O}_2$  (Figure 33B). Argon-purging of the solution markedly decreased  $\text{A}\beta_{1-42}$  polymerization under each condition, indicating that the generation of ROS is required for the polymerization of  $\text{A}\beta$ .

Taken together, these results indicate that polymerization occurs as a result of Haber-Weiss chemistry where the continual reduction of  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$  by  $\text{A}\beta$  provides a species for the reduction of molecular  $\text{O}_2$  and the subsequent generation of  $\text{O}_2^-$ ,  $\text{H}_2\text{O}_2$  and  $\text{OH}^\cdot$ . The binding and reduction of  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$  by  $\text{A}\beta$  is supported by the finding that the incubation of  $\text{Fe}^{3+}$ ,  $\text{H}_2\text{O}_2$  and ascorbic acid with  $\text{A}\beta_{1-40}$  (Figure 33A) and  $\text{A}\beta_{1-42}$  does not induce SDS-resistant polymerization equivalent to  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$  with  $\text{H}_2\text{O}_2$  alone. Since ascorbic acid effectively reduces  $\text{Fe}^{3+}$ , the reduction of a metal ion that is not bound to  $\text{A}\beta$  is insufficient to induce significant SDS-resistant polymerization.

The formation of SDS-resistant polymers of  $\text{A}\beta$  by this metal-catalyzed oxidative mechanism strongly suggested that a chemical modification to the peptide backbone allows the formation of the polymer species. To test if the SDS-resistant polymers were covalently linked, SDS-resistant polymers generated by incubating  $\text{A}\beta_{1-42}$  with  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$  at pH 7.4 and 6.6, or  $\text{A}\beta_{1-42}$  with  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$  plus  $\text{H}_2\text{O}_2$  were subjected to treatment with urea (Figure 34A) and guanidine HCl, chaotropic agents known to disrupt H-bonding. Urea and guanidine HCl did not disrupt the SDS-resistant polymers at 4.5 M, and only slightly at 9M, suggesting that the SDS-resistant polymers were held together by high-affinity bonds, but not hydrogen bonding alone. HPLC-MS analyses confirmed no covalent modification of the peptide and no evidence of intermolecular covalent crosslinking.

Since covalent and/or hydrogen bonding were not involved in polymer formation, experiments were performed to determine whether  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$  coordination of the complex by ionic interactions was allowing for the formation of the SDS-resistant polymer species. To disrupt these ionic interactions, different  
5 chelating agents were added to a solution containing  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$ -induced  $\text{A}\beta_{1-40}$  or  $\text{A}\beta_{1-42}$  SDS-resistant polymers generated at pH 7.4 (Figures 34B and 34C).

All chelators significantly reduced the amount of  $\text{A}\beta_{1-40}$  or  $\text{A}\beta_{1-42}$  SDS-resistant polymers. EDTA was less effective in destabilizing the polymers, possibly due to its larger molecular mass, and lower affinity for  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$ . EDTA  
10 reduced the amount of  $\text{A}\beta_{1-40}$  polymers, but increased the amount of  $\text{A}\beta_{1-40}$  polymers at pH 7.4. This may be due to the fact that EDTA can enhance the redox potential of Cu under certain conditions.

$\text{Cu}^{2+}$ -induced SDS-resistant polymers generated at pH 6.6 were also disrupted with chelation treatment to a similar extent. These results suggest  
15 that the chelation of  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$  away from  $\text{A}\beta$  results in the disruption of the polymer complex and the release of monomer species. Thus, there is an absolute requirement for metal ions in the stabilization of the SDS-resistant polymer complex.

The SDS-resistant polymers generated with  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$  are similar to those  
20 extracted from post-mortem AD brains (Roher, A.E., *et al.*, *Journal of Biological Chemistry* 271:20631-20635 (1996)). To determine if these human oligomeric  $\text{A}\beta$  species could be disrupted by metal chelators, TETA and BC were incubated with  $\text{A}\beta$  oligomers extracted from human brain. Figure 30E shows that both TETA and BC significantly increased the amount of monomer  
25  $\text{A}\beta$  in samples treated with these chelators. Although the increase in the amount of monomer was small, these results suggest that human oligomeric  $\text{A}\beta$  species are partially held together with metal ions. Importantly, this result indicates the potential of chelation therapy as a means of reducing amyloidosis.

To examine whether conformational changes could disrupt the SDS-resistant polymers, solutions of SDS-resistant  $\text{A}\beta_{1-42}$  polymers in the presence  
30

or absence of  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$  were incubated with the  $\alpha$ -helical promoting solvent system DMSO/HFIP, or under acidic conditions (pH 1) (Figure 34D). These conditions reduced the amount of polymer compared to untreated controls at both pH 7.4 and 6.6, indicating that an alteration in the conformation of  $\text{A}\beta_{1-42}$  to the  $\alpha$ -helical conformation could disrupt the strong  $\text{A}\beta$ - $\text{Cu}^{2+}$  ionic interactions. This provides indirect evidence that the polymer structures are likely to be in the more thermodynamically favorable  $\beta$ -sheet conformation, such as those found in neuritic plaques.

SDS-resistant  $\text{A}\beta$  polymers, such as that found in the AD-affected brain, are likely to be more resilient to proteolytic degradation and may explain the permanent deposition of  $\text{A}\beta$  in amyloid plaques. Incubation of SDS-resistant  $\text{A}\beta$  polymers with proteinase K resulted in complete degradation of both monomer and oligomeric  $\text{A}\beta$  species. Since protease treatment is incapable of digesting hard core amyloid, some form of covalent crosslinking of the peptide following its deposition may occur over time that prevents proteolytic digestion. This may explain the limited disruption of human SDS-resistant  $\text{A}\beta$  oligomers compared to the Cu-mediated SDS-resistant polymers generated *in vitro*.

Soluble  $\text{A}\beta_{1-40}$  and  $\text{A}\beta_{1-42}$  both exist in phosphate buffered saline as non-covalent dimers (Huang, X., *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 272:26464-26470 (1997); and unpublished observations). Disruption of ionic and hydrogen bonding of  $\text{A}\beta$  in the soluble and aggregated forms (pH or  $\text{Zn}^{2+}$ ) by the ionic detergent SDS results in the complete dissociation of  $\text{A}\beta$  into the monomer species as detected on SDS-PAGE (Figures 9, 28-30). The formation of SDS-resistant polymers of  $\text{A}\beta$  over time in the presence of  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$  (Figures 9, 31A-31B, 32C) suggests that conformational or structural alterations allow for the formation of a thermodynamically more stable complex.

Although no covalent crosslinking between peptides was detected, it is possible that a covalent modification(s) takes place within the peptide backbone that allows for a high affinity association to form between the peptide and  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$ .

Thus, a chemical modification to the peptide may increase the affinity of the polymer for  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$  and the formation of a stable complex. Alternatively, the requirement for molecular oxygen suggests that Cu may be coordinated by oxygen or ROS in the formation of SDS-resistant polymers.

5           The formation of SDS-resistant polymers was dependent upon the binding and reduction of  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$ . The binding of  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$  to A $\beta$  was confirmed by the detection of  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$  in both the monomer and dimer following SDS-PAGE. The  $[\text{Cu}^{2+}]$  of PVDF membrane containing the immobilized peptide species was measured by ICP-AES (unpublished observations; Huang, X., *et al.*, *J. Biol.*  
10 *Chem.* 272:26464-26470 (1997)) and correlated with the generation of SDS-resistant polymers for each species.

$\text{Cu}^{2+}$  coordination between A $\beta$  molecules was required in order to maintain the structure since chelation treatment disrupted the *in vitro* generated SDS-resistant polymer (Figures 34B-34E). Human SDS-resistant A $\beta$  polymers  
15 also were disrupted with the Cu<sup>+</sup> specific chelator BC indicating Cu coordination in the stabilization of these structures (Figure 34E). Together with the fact that Cu specific chelators can extract more SDS-resistant A $\beta$  polymers from AD brains in aqueous buffer (see Example 9), these results implicate  $\text{Cu}^{2+}$  in the generation of SDS-resistant polymers *in vivo*.

20            $\text{Fe}^{3+}$  did not induce the formation of SDS-resistant polymers *in vitro* (Figures 31A) as previously reported except in the presence of excess  $\text{H}_2\text{O}_2$  or ascorbic acid as previously reported (Dyrks, T., *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 267:18210-18217 (1992); data not shown). Dyrks, T., *et al.* did, however observe significant increases in SDS-resistant polymerization with metal-catalyzed oxidation systems (Fe-hemin, Fe-hemoglobin or Fe-EDTA) in the  
25 presence of  $\text{H}_2\text{O}_2$ . The A $\beta_{1-42}$  used in their experiments was likely to be Cu-bound as it was extracted from a wheat germ expression system and already was present as SDS-resistant oligomers. Thus, it is possible that Cu-bound A $\beta$  used in these experiments contributed to the increased SDS-resistant  
30 polymerization observed in the Fe-catalyzed oxidation systems. Although  $\text{Fe}^{3+}$

is reduced by A $\beta$  (Huang, X., *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 272:26464-26470 (1997)), it is unable to effectively coordinate the complex like Cu (Figure 32B).

Fe<sup>2+</sup> is found in much higher concentrations in the brains of AD patients compared with age-matched controls (Ehmann, W.D., *et al.*, *Neurotoxicol.* 7:197-206 (1986); Dedman, D.J., *et al.*, *Biochem. J.* 287:509-514 (1992); Joshi, J.G., *et al.*, *Environ. Health Perspect.* 102:207-213 (1994)). This is partly attributable to the increased ferritin rich microglia and oligodendrocytes that localize to amyloid plaques (Grudke-Iqbal, I., *et al.*, *Acta Neuropathol.* 81:105 (1990); Conner, J.R., *et al.*, *J. Neurosci. Res.* 31:75-83 (1992); Sadowki, M., *et al.*, *Alzheimer's Res.* 1:71-76 (1995)).

Recently, redox active Fe was localized to amyloid lesions (Smith, M.A., *et al.*, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 94:9866 (1997)). While Fe is normally sequestered by metalloproteins, this localization of ferritin-rich cells around amyloid deposits, and the very high concentrations of iron in amyloid plaques (Conner, J.R., *et al.*, *J. Neurosci. Res.* 31:75-83 (1992); Markesbery, W.R. and Ehmann, W.D., "Brain trace elements in Alzheimer's disease," in Terry, R.D., *et al.*, eds., *Alzheimer Disease*, Raven Press, New York (1994), pp. 353-368) suggests that reduced Fe released from ferritin and transferrin under mildly acidic conditions could be available for Fenton chemistry and the formation of SDS-resistant polymers. However, even in the presence of a Fe-ROS generating system (ascorbic acid, H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> and Fe) the generation of SDS-resistant A $\beta$  polymers *in vitro* was low (Figure 33A) and may be explained by Cu<sup>2+</sup> contamination of the buffers.

Interestingly, diffuse plaques, which may represent the earliest stages of plaque formation, are relatively free of ferritin-rich cells (Ohgami, T., *et al.*, *Acta Neuropathol* 81:242-247 (1991)). Therefore, the accretion of iron in amyloid plaques may be a secondary response to the neurodegeneration caused by the reduction of Cu<sup>2+</sup> and the generation of ROS by A $\beta$  and the formation of neurotoxic SDS-resistant A $\beta$  polymers.

- 109 -

Structural differences between  $A\beta_{1-40}$  and  $A\beta_{1-42}$  may allow for the formation of a thermodynamically stable dimer in the case of  $A\beta_{1-40}$  and trimer in the case of  $A\beta_{1-42}$  (Figures 31A, 34B and 34C). Irrespective of this, the increased generation of SDS-resistant polymers by  $A\beta_{1-42}$  compared to  $A\beta_{1-40}$  is most likely explained by the increased ability of  $A\beta_{1-42}$  to reduce Cu and generate ROS. Since the addition of exogenous  $H_2O_2$  to  $A\beta_{1-42}$  increases the generation of dimeric SDS-resistant polymers of  $A\beta_{1-42}$  (Figures 32A and 32B), this dimeric species may be an integral intermediate in the formation of the SDS-resistant  $A\beta$  trimers, and may explain why  $A\beta_{1-40}$  polymerization occurs more slowly.

#### *AD Pathology*

The present invention indicates that the manipulation of the brain biometal environment with specific agents acting directly (e.g. chelators and antioxidants) or indirectly (e.g., by improving cerebral energy metabolism) provides a means for therapeutic intervention in the prevention and treatment of Alzheimer's disease.

Those skilled in the art will appreciate that the invention described herein is susceptible to variations and modifications other than those specifically described. It is to be understood that the invention includes all such variations and modifications. The invention also includes all of the steps, features, compositions and compounds referred to or indicated in this specification, individually or collectively, and any and all combinations of any two or more of said steps or features.

All patents and publications cited in the present specification are incorporated by reference herein in their entirety.



*What Is Claimed Is:*

1. A method of treating amyloidosis in a subject, said method comprising administering to said subject a combination of (a) a metal chelator selected from the group consisting of: bathocuproine, bathophenanthroline,  
5 DTPA, EDTA, EGTA, penicillamine, TETA, and TPEN, or hydrophobic derivatives thereof; and (b) clioquinol, for a time and under conditions to bring about said treatment; wherein said combination reduces, inhibits or otherwise interferes with A $\beta$ -mediated production of radical oxygen species.
2. The method of claim 1 wherein the metal chelator is  
10 bathocuproine.
3. The method of claim 1 further comprising administering a supplement selected from the group consisting of: ammonium salt, calcium salt, magnesium salt, and sodium salt.
4. The method of claim 3 wherein the supplement is magnesium  
15 salt.
5. The method of claim 1 further comprising administering to the subject an effective amount of a compound selected from the group consisting of: rifampicin, disulfiram, and indomethacin, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.
- 20 6. A method of treating amyloidosis in a subject, said method comprising administering to said subject an effective amount of a combination of (a) a salt of a metal chelator, wherein said chelator is selected from the group consisting of: bathocuproine, bathophenanthroline, DTPA, EDTA, EGTA, penicillamine, TETA, and TPEN, or hydrophobic derivatives thereof, and (b)

- 111 -

clioquinol; wherein said salt of the metal chelator is selected from the group consisting of: ammonium, calcium, magnesium, and sodium; and wherein said combination reduces, inhibits or otherwise interferes with A $\beta$ -mediated production of radical oxygen species.

5                   7.       The method of claim 6 wherein the metal chelator is bathocuproine.

                  8.       The method of claim 6 wherein the salt of a metal chelator is a magnesium salt.

10                  9.       The method of claim 6 further comprising administering to said subject a compound selected from the group consisting of: rifampicin, disulfiram, and indomethacin, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

15                  10.       A method of treating amyloidosis in a subject, said method comprising administering to said subject an effective amount of a combination of (a) a chelator specific for copper, and (b) clioquinol; wherein said combination reduces, inhibits or otherwise interferes with A $\beta$ -mediated production of radical oxygen species.

                  11.       The method of claim 10 wherein the chelator specific for copper is specific for the reduced form of copper.

20                  12.       The method of claim 11 wherein the chelator is bathocuproine or a hydrophobic derivative thereof.

                  13.       A method of treating amyloidosis in a subject, said method comprising administering to said subject an effective amount of a combination of (a) an alkalinizing agent and (b) clioquinol; wherein said combination

- 112 -

reduces, inhibits or otherwise interferes with A $\beta$ -mediated production of radical oxygen species.

14. The method of claim 13 wherein the alkalinizing agent is magnesium citrate.

5 15. The method of claim 13 wherein the alkalinizing agent is calcium citrate.

10 16. A method of treating amyloidosis in a subject, said method comprising administering to said subject a combination of (a) a metal chelator selected from the group consisting of: bathocuproine, bathophenanthroline, DTPA, EDTA, EGTA, penicillamine, TETA, and TPEN, or hydrophobic derivatives thereof; and (b) clioquinol, for a time and under conditions to bring about said treatment; wherein said combination prevents formation of A $\beta$  amyloid, promotes, induces or otherwise facilitates resolubilization of A $\beta$  deposits, or both.

15 17. The method of claim 16 wherein the metal chelator is bathocuproine.

18. The method of claim 16 further comprising administering a supplement selected from the group consisting of: ammonium salt, calcium salt, magnesium salt, and sodium salt.

20 19. The method of claim 18 wherein the supplement is magnesium salt.

20. The method of claim 16 further comprising administering to the subject an effective amount of a compound selected from the group consisting

of: rifampicin, disulfiram, and indomethacin, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

21. A method of treating amyloidosis in a subject, said method comprising administering to said subject an effective amount of a combination  
5 of (a) a salt of a metal chelator, wherein said chelator is selected from the group consisting of: bathocuproine, bathophenanthroline, DTPA, EDTA, EGTA, penicillamine, TETA, and TPEN, or hydrophobic derivatives thereof, and (b) clioquinol; wherein said salt of the metal chelator is selected from the group consisting of: ammonium, calcium, magnesium, and sodium; and wherein said  
10 combination prevents formation of A $\beta$  amyloid, promotes, induces or otherwise facilitates resolubilization of A $\beta$  deposits, or both.

22. The method of claim 21 wherein the metal chelator is bathocuproine.

23. The method of claim 21 wherein the salt of the metal chelator is  
15 a magnesium salt.

24. The method of claim 21 further comprising administering to said subject a compound selected from the group consisting of: rifampicin, disulfiram, and indomethacin, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

25. A method of treating amyloidosis in a subject, said method comprising administering to said subject an effective amount of a combination  
20 of (a) a chelator specific for copper, and (b) clioquinol; wherein said combination prevents formation of A $\beta$  amyloid, promotes, induces or otherwise facilitates resolubilization of A $\beta$  deposits, or both.

- 114 -

26. The method of claim 25 wherein the chelator specific for copper is specific for the reduced form of copper.

27. The method of claim 26 wherein the chelator is bathocuproine or a hydrophobic derivative thereof.

5 28. A method of treating amyloidosis in a subject, said method comprising administering to said subject an effective amount of a combination of (a) an alkalinizing agent and (b) clioquinol; wherein said combination prevents formation of A $\beta$  amyloid, promotes, induces or otherwise facilitates resolubilization of A $\beta$  deposits, or both.

10 29. The method of claim 28 wherein the alkalinizing agent is magnesium citrate.

30. The method of claim 28 wherein the alkalinizing agent is calcium citrate.

15 31. A pharmaceutical composition for treatment of conditions caused by amyloidosis, A $\beta$ -mediated ROS formation, or both, comprising: (a) a metal chelator selected from the group consisting of: bathocuproine, bathophenanthroline, DTPA, EDTA, EGTA, penicillamine, TETA, and TPEN, or hydrophobic derivatives thereof; and (b) clioquinol, together with one or more pharmaceutically acceptable carriers or diluents.

20 32. The pharmaceutical composition of claim 31 wherein the metal chelator is bathocuproine.

33. The pharmaceutical composition of claim 31 further comprising a supplement selected from the group consisting of: ammonium salt, calcium salt, magnesium salt, and sodium salt.

5 34. The pharmaceutical composition of claim 33 wherein the supplement is a magnesium salt.

35. The pharmaceutical composition of claim 31 further comprising a compound selected from the group consisting of: rifampicin, disulfiram, and indomethacin.

10 36. A pharmaceutical composition for treatment of conditions caused by amyloidosis, A $\beta$ -mediated ROS formation, or both, comprising a combination of (a) a salt of a metal chelator selected from the group consisting of: bathocuproine, bathophenanthroline, DTPA, EDTA, EGTA, penicillamine, TETA, and TPEN, or hydrophobic derivatives thereof; and (b) clioquinol; wherein said salt of the metal chelator is selected from the group consisting of:  
15 ammonium, calcium, magnesium, and sodium, together with one or more pharmaceutically acceptable carriers or diluents.

37. The pharmaceutical composition of claim 36 wherein the metal chelator is bathocuproine.

20 38. The pharmaceutical composition of claim 36 wherein the salt of the metal chelator is a magnesium salt.

39. The pharmaceutical composition of claim 36 further comprising a compound selected from the group consisting of: rifampicin, disulfiram, and indomethacin.

- 116 -

40. A pharmaceutical composition for treatment of conditions caused by amyloidosis, A $\beta$ -mediated ROS formation, or both, comprising a chelator specific for copper, with one or more pharmaceutically acceptable carriers or diluents.

5           41. The pharmaceutical composition of claim 40 wherein the chelator is specific for the reduced form of copper.

42. The pharmaceutical composition of claim 41 wherein the chelator specific for the reduced form of copper is bathocuproine or a hydrophobic derivative thereof.

10           43. A pharmaceutical composition for treatment of conditions caused by amyloidosis, A $\beta$ -mediated ROS formation, or both, comprising a combination of (a) an alkalinizing agent and (b) clioquinol; together with one or more pharmaceutically acceptable carriers or diluents.

15           44. The pharmaceutical composition of claim 43 wherein the alkalinizing agent is magnesium citrate.

45. The pharmaceutical composition of claim 43 wherein the alkalinizing agent is calcium citrate.

20           46. A composition of matter comprising: (a) a metal chelator selected from the group consisting of: bathocuproine, bathophenanthroline, DTPA, EDTA, EGTA, penicillamine, TETA, and TPEN, or hydrophobic derivatives thereof; and (b) clioquinol.

47. The composition of claim 46 wherein the metal chelator is bathocuproine.

- 117 -

48. The composition of claim 46 further comprising a supplement selected from the group consisting of: ammonium salt, calcium salt, magnesium salt, and sodium salt.

5 49. The composition of claim 48 wherein the supplement is a magnesium salt.

50. The composition of claim 46 further comprising a compound selected from the group consisting of: rifampicin, disulfiram, and indomethacin.

10 51. A composition of matter comprising a combination of (a) a salt of a metal chelator selected from the group consisting of: bathocuproine, bathophenanthroline, DTPA, EDTA, EGTA, penicillamine, TETA, and TPEN, or hydrophobic derivatives thereof; and (b) clioquinol; wherein said salt of the metal chelator is selected from the group consisting of: ammonium, calcium, magnesium, and sodium.

15 52. The composition of claim 51 wherein the metal chelator is bathocuproine.

53. The composition of claim 51 wherein the salt of the chelator is a magnesium salt.

54. The composition of claim 51 further comprising a compound selected from the group consisting of: rifampicin, disulfiram, and indomethacin.

20 55. A composition of matter comprising a combination of (a) an alkalizing agent and (b) clioquinol.



- 118 -

56. The composition of claim 55 wherein the alkalinizing agent is magnesium citrate.

57. The composition of claim 55 wherein the alkalinizing agent is calcium citrate.

1/60

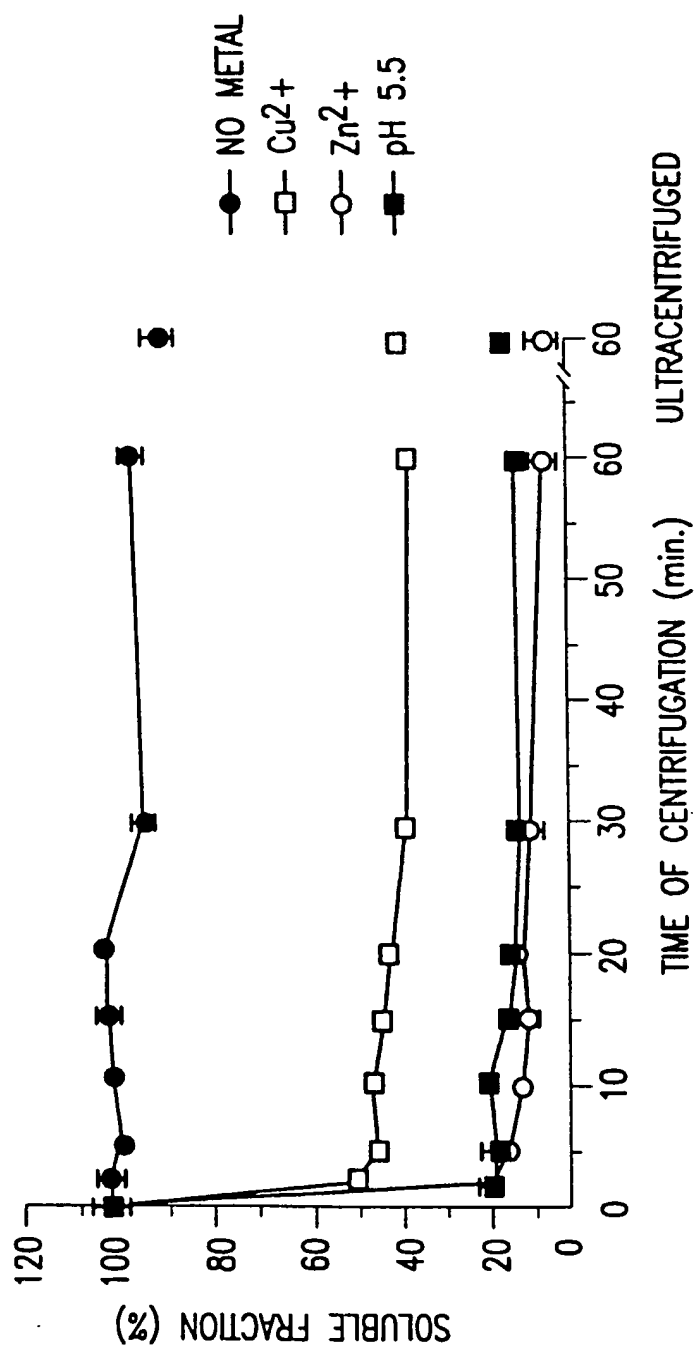


FIG.1

2/60

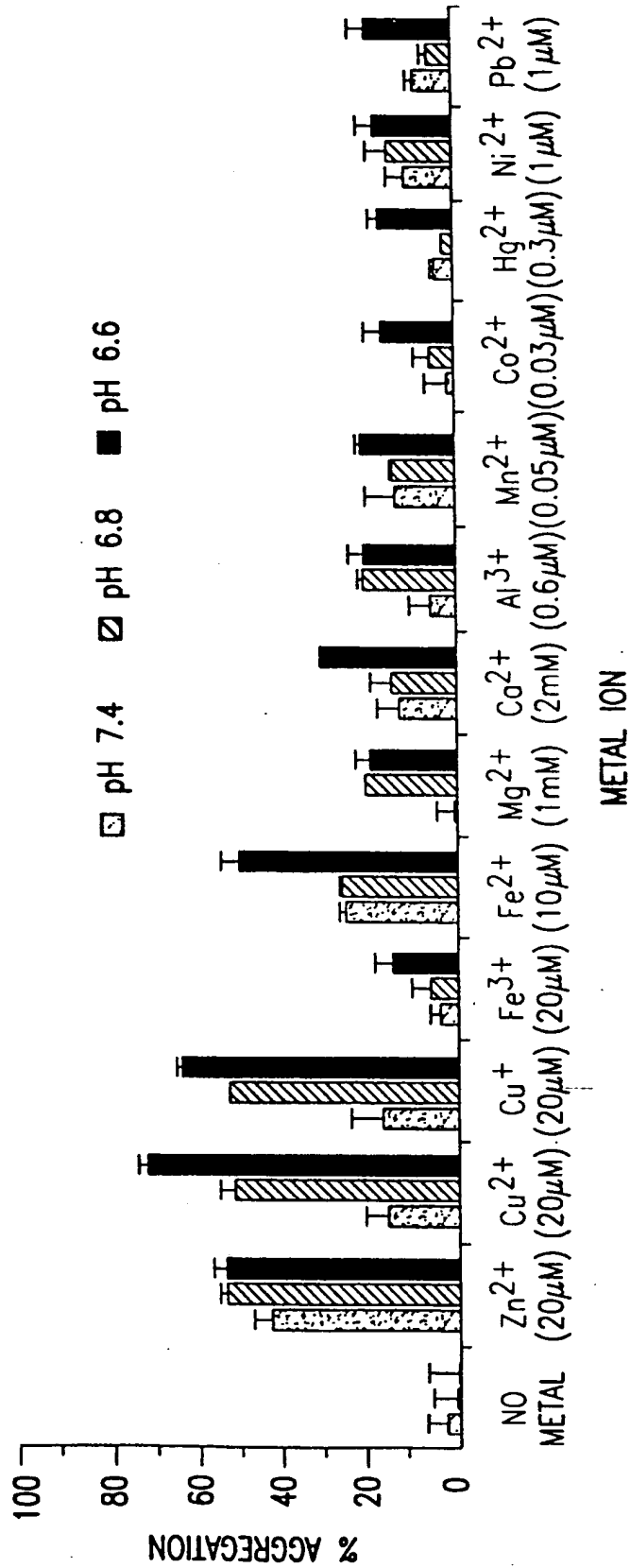


FIG. 2A

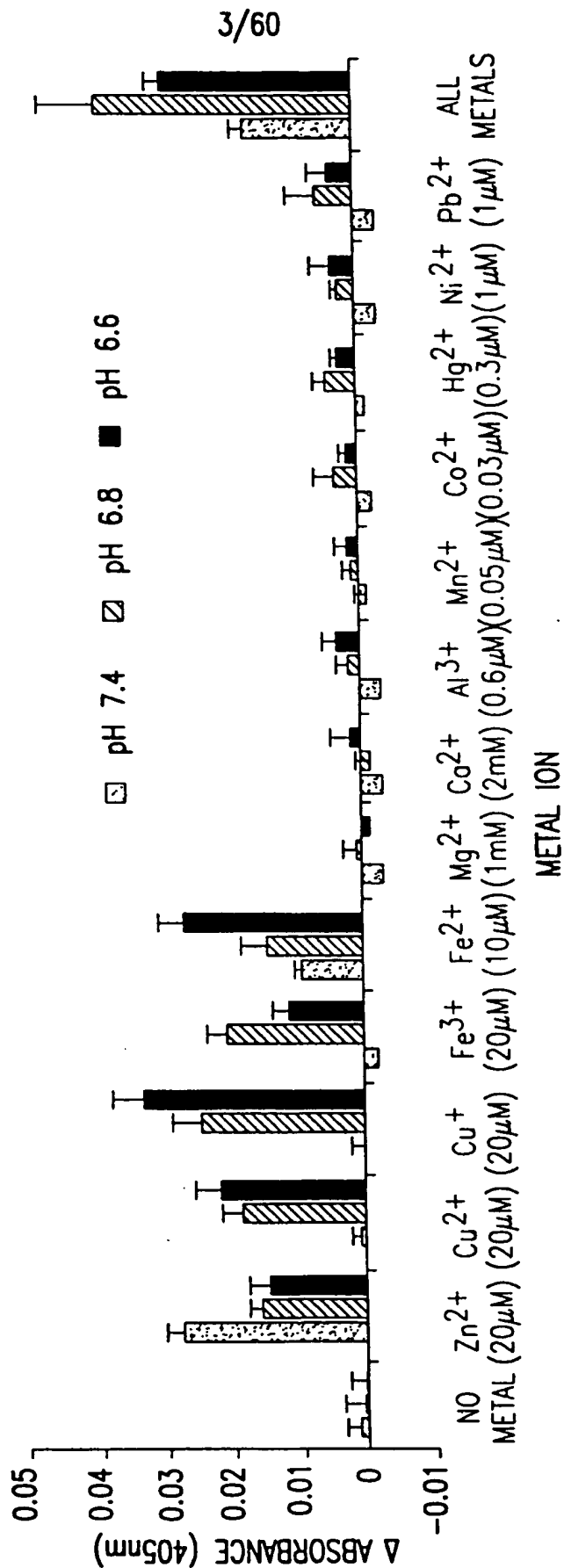


FIG. 2B

4/60

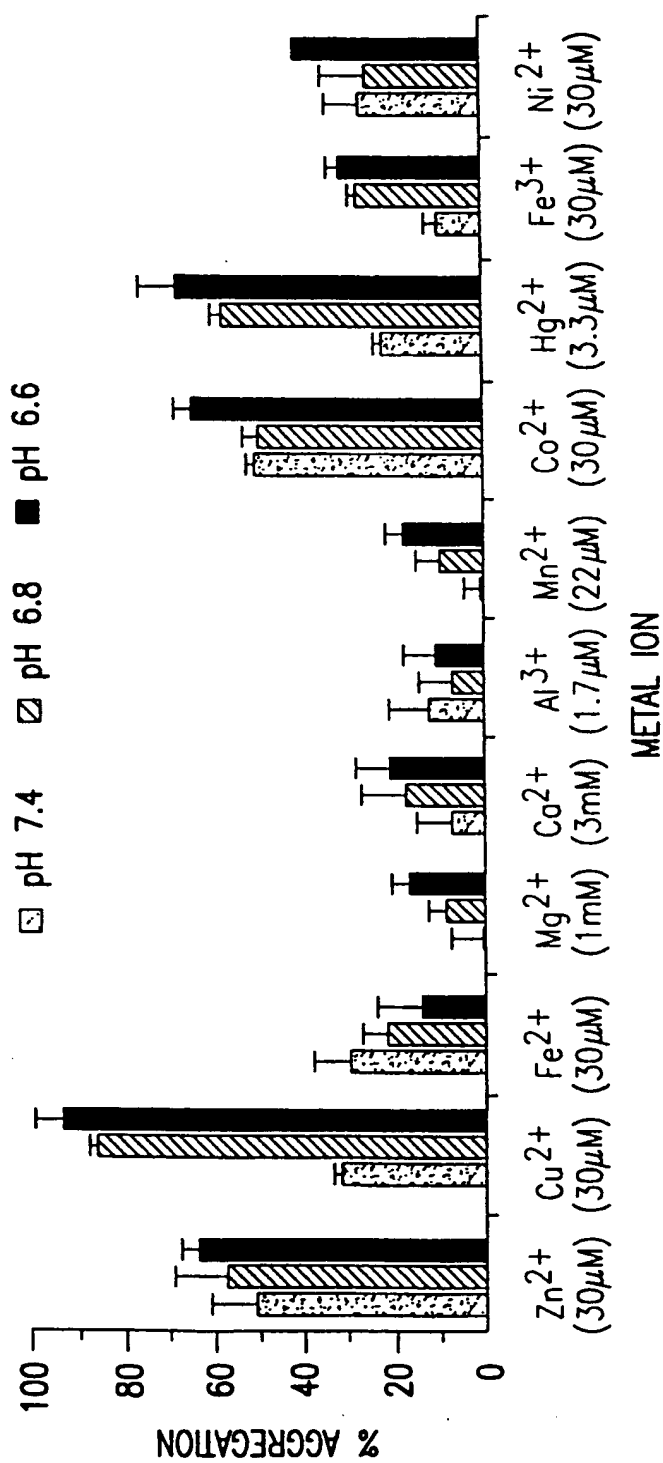


FIG. 2C

5/60

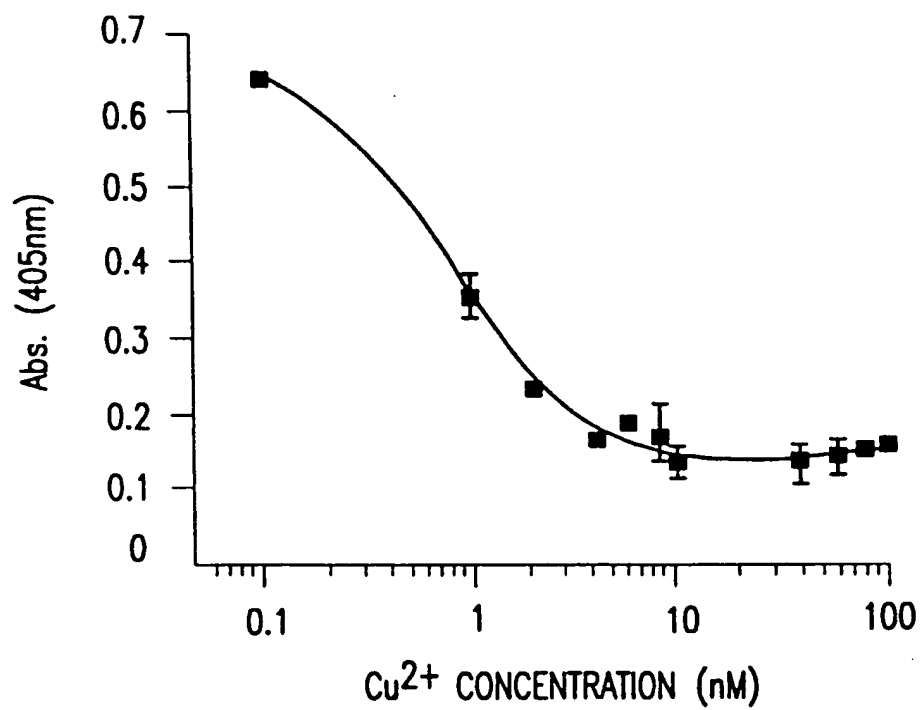


FIG.3

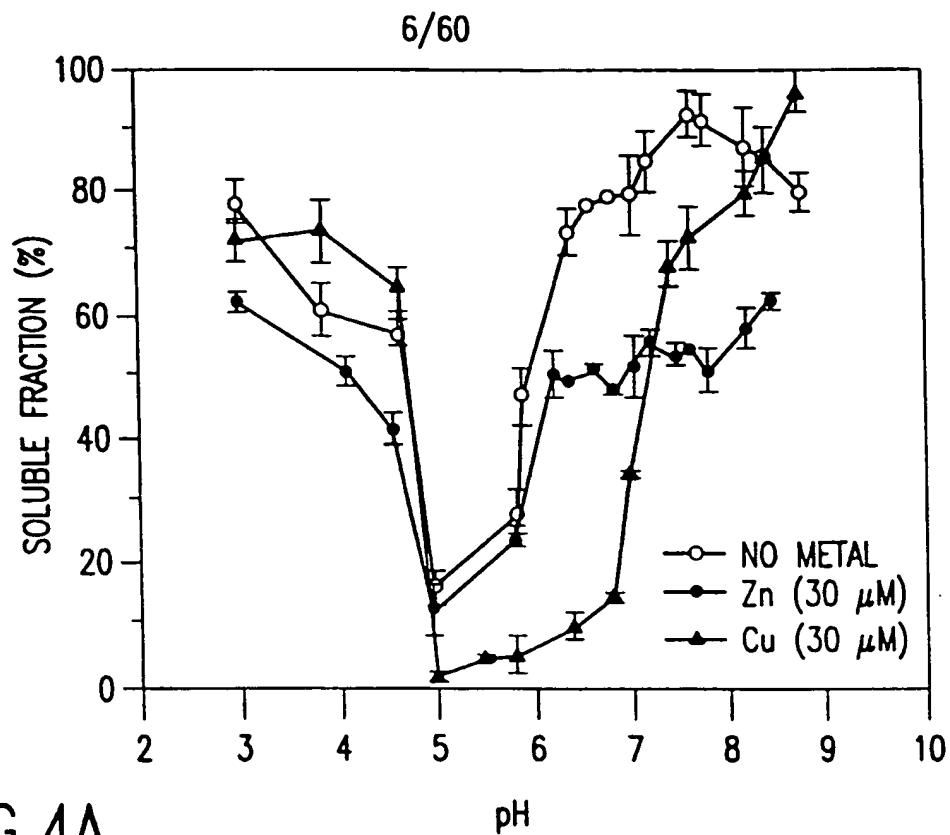


FIG. 4A

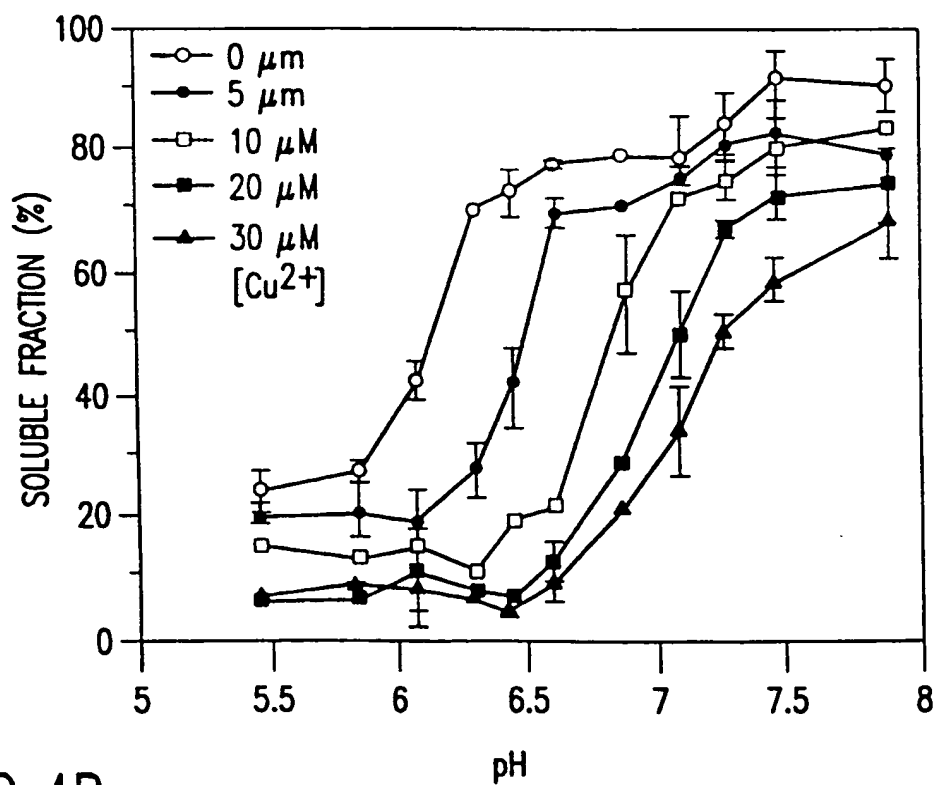


FIG. 4B

7/60

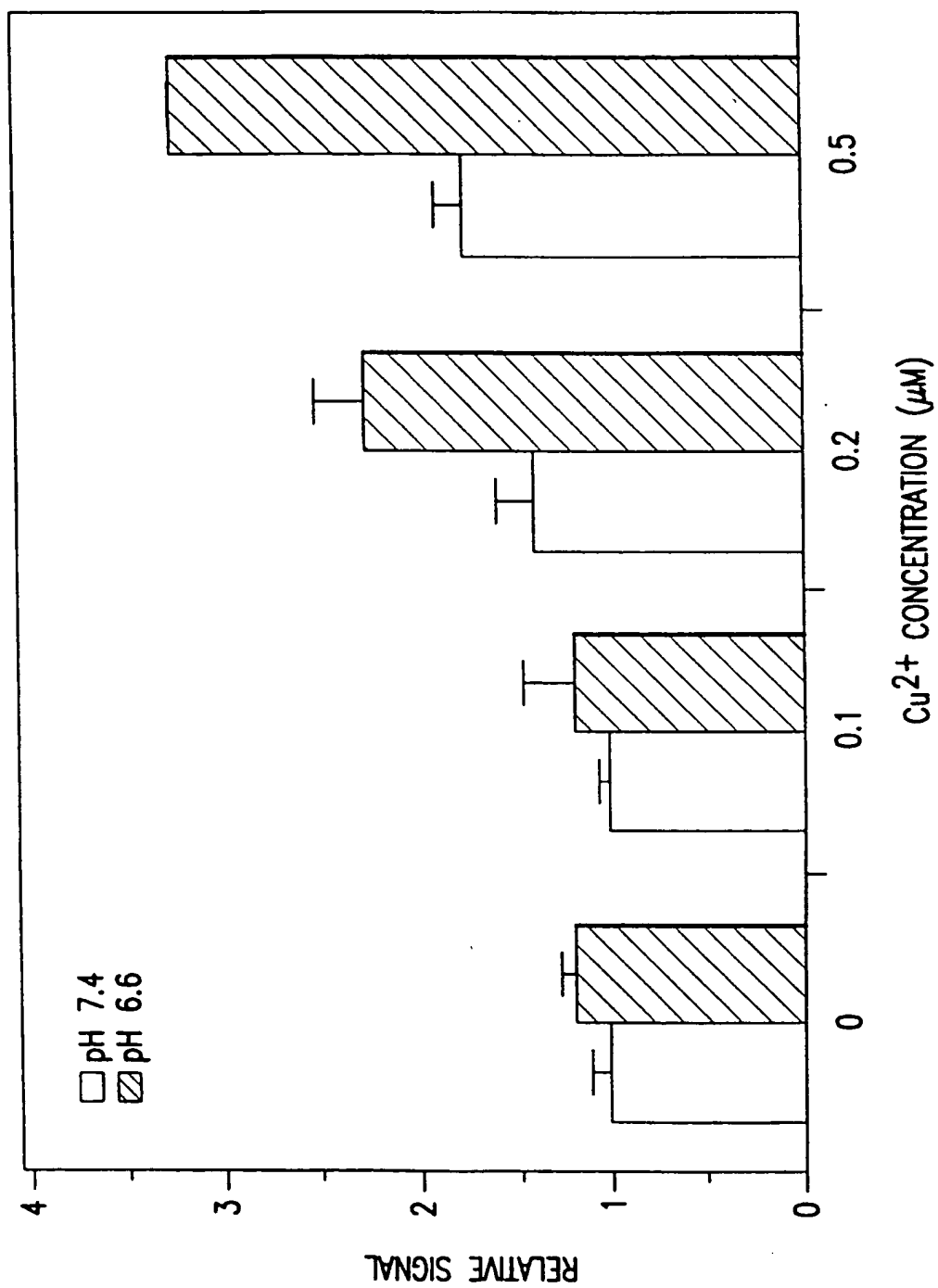


FIG. 4C



8/60

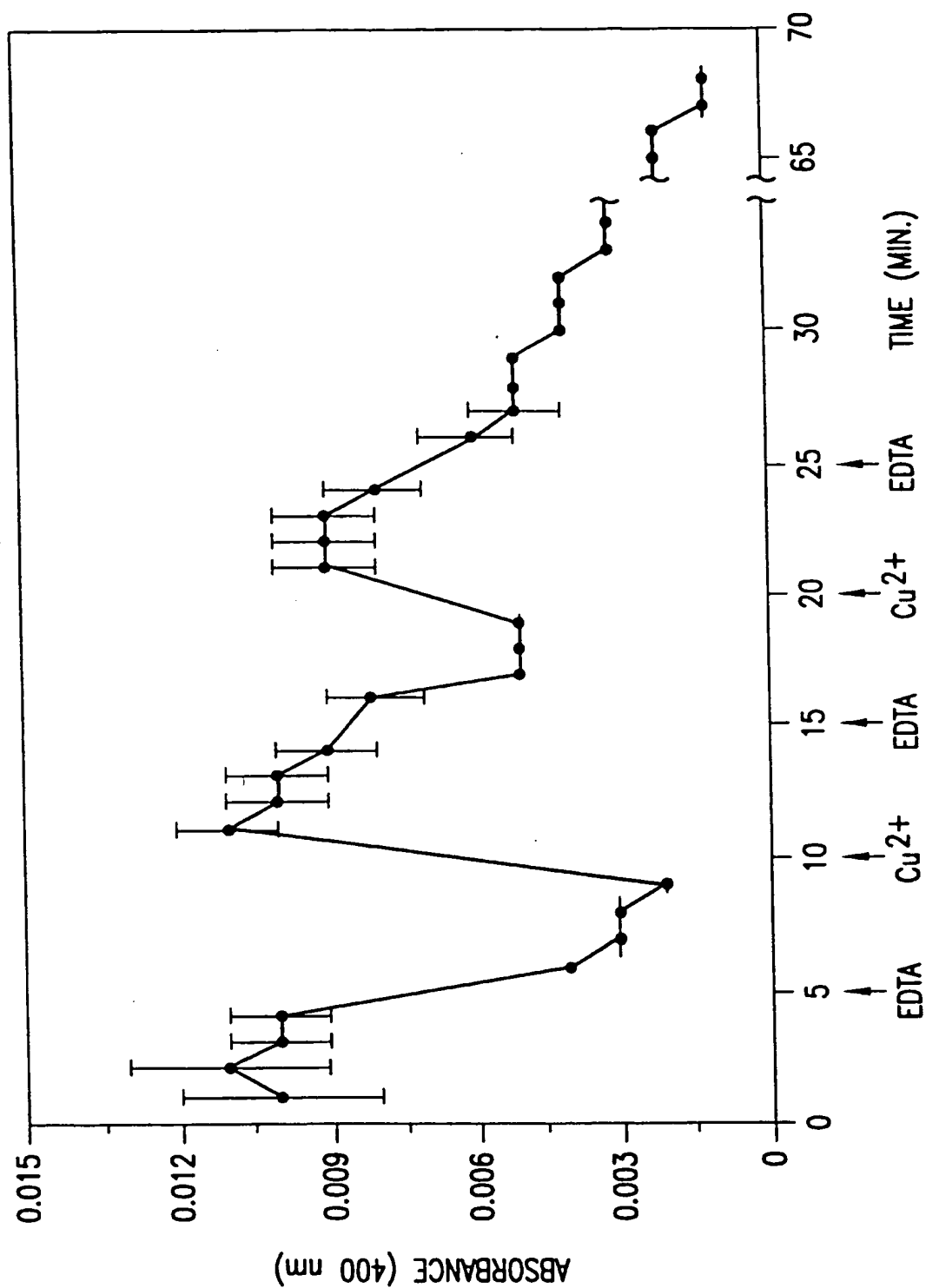


FIG. 5A

9/60

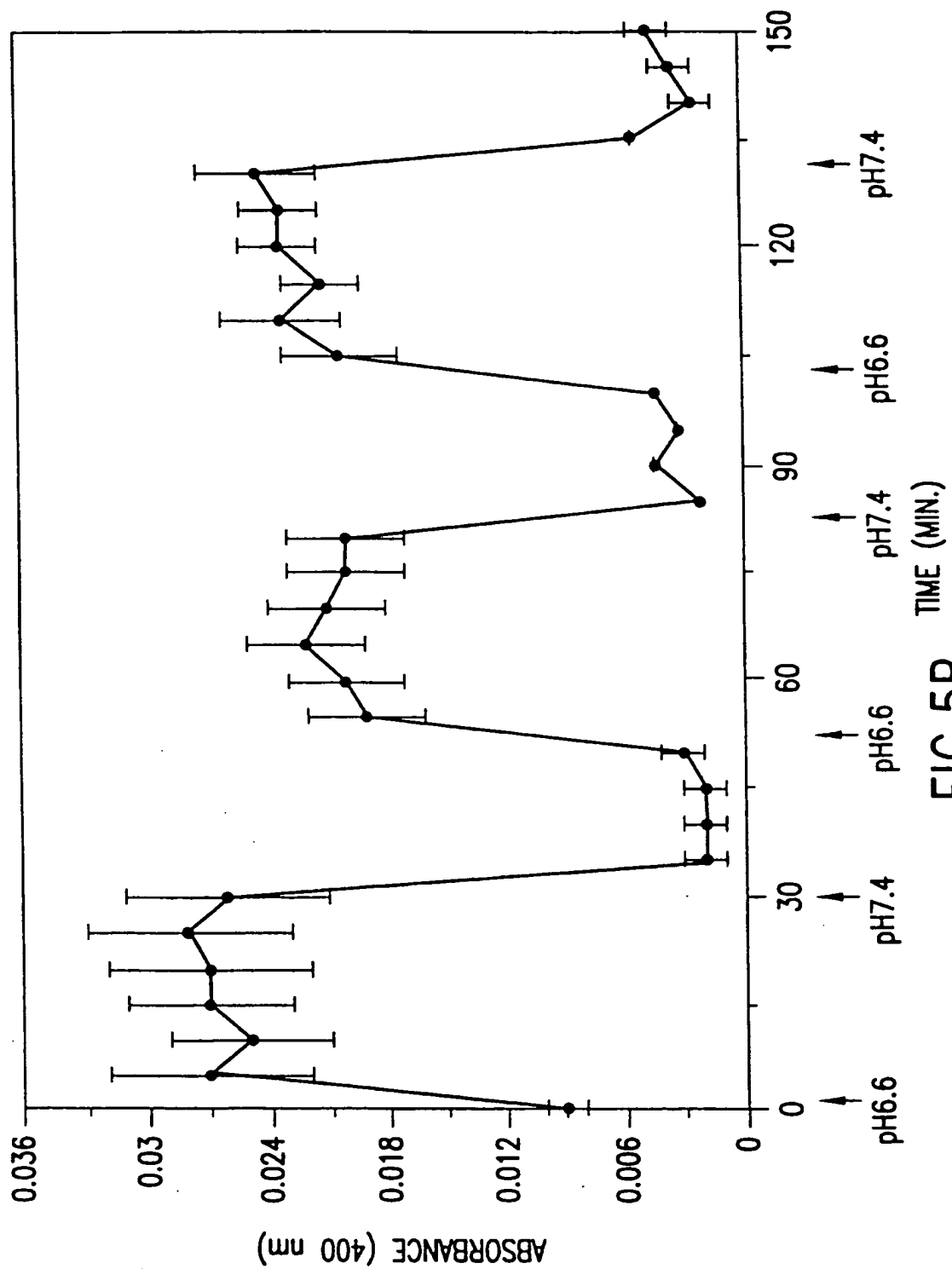


FIG. 5B

10/60

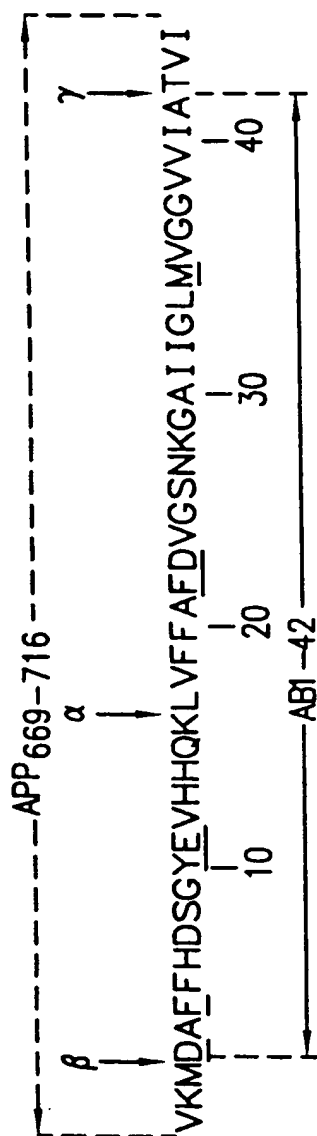


FIG. 6

11/60

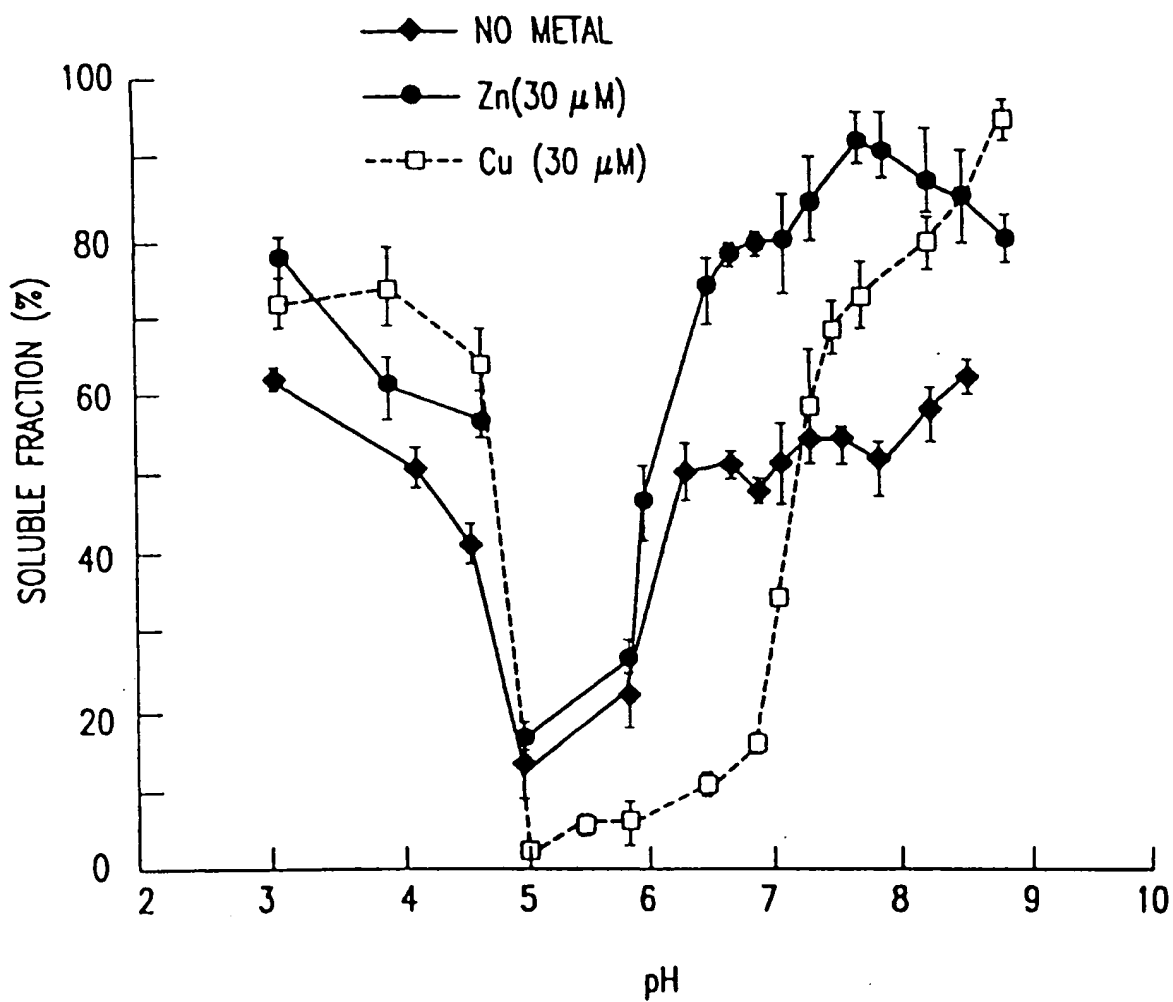


FIG.7

12/60

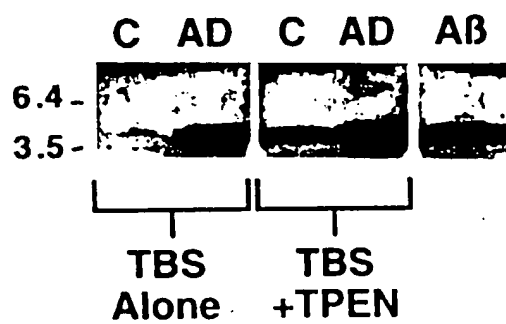


FIG.8

13/60

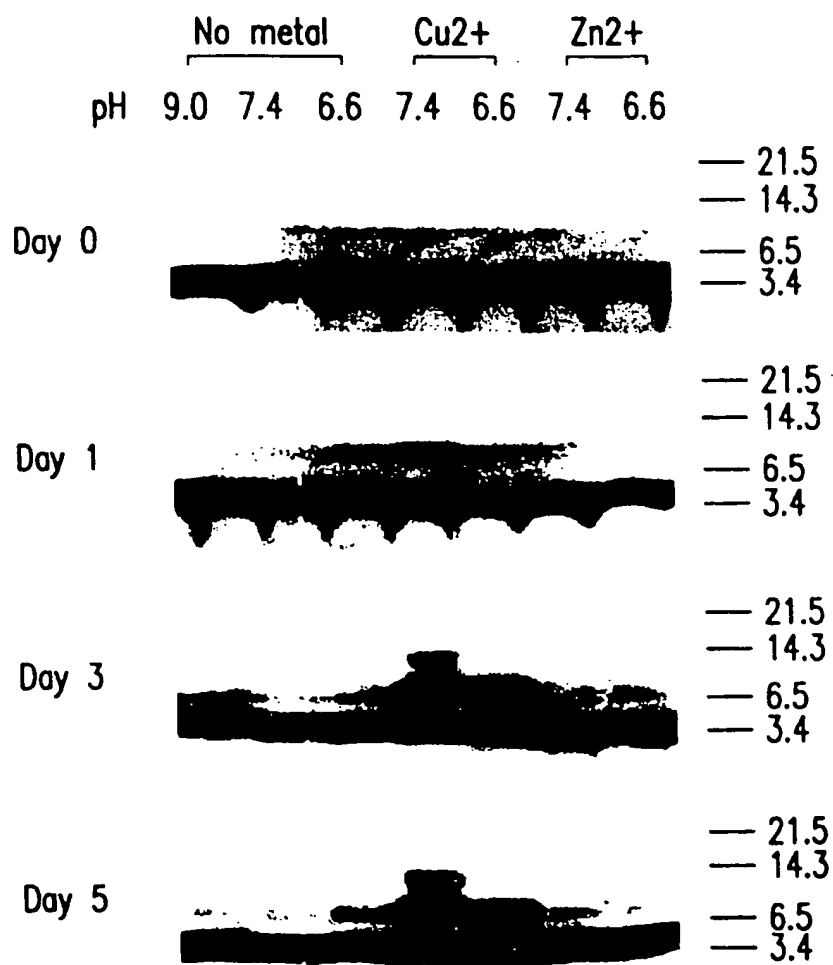


FIG.9

14/60

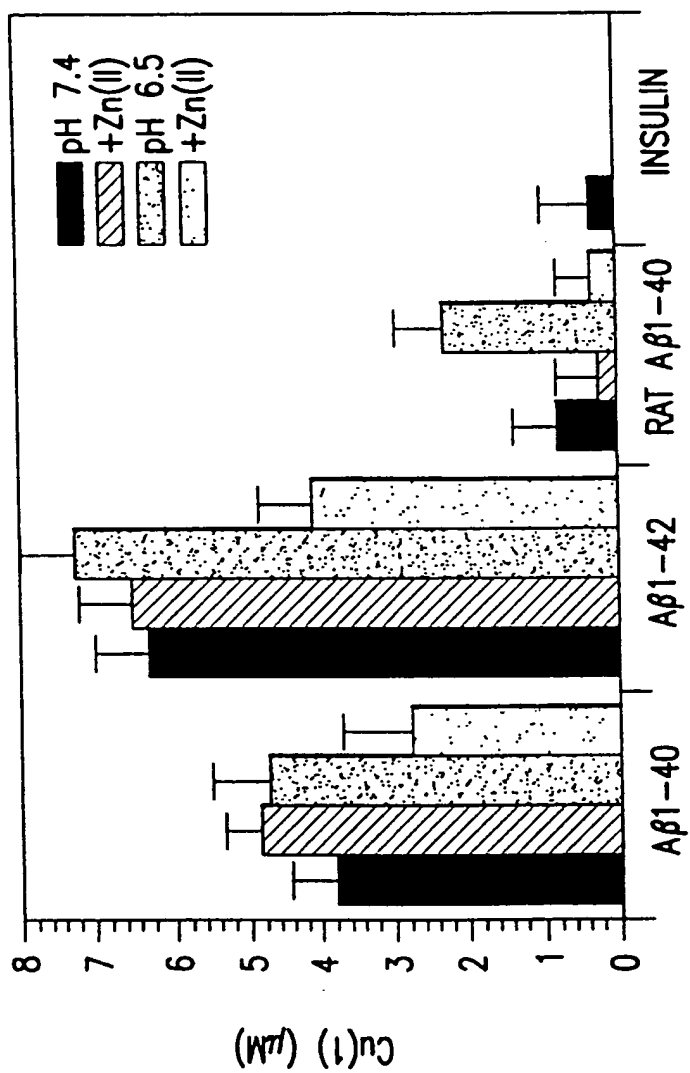


FIG.10

15/60

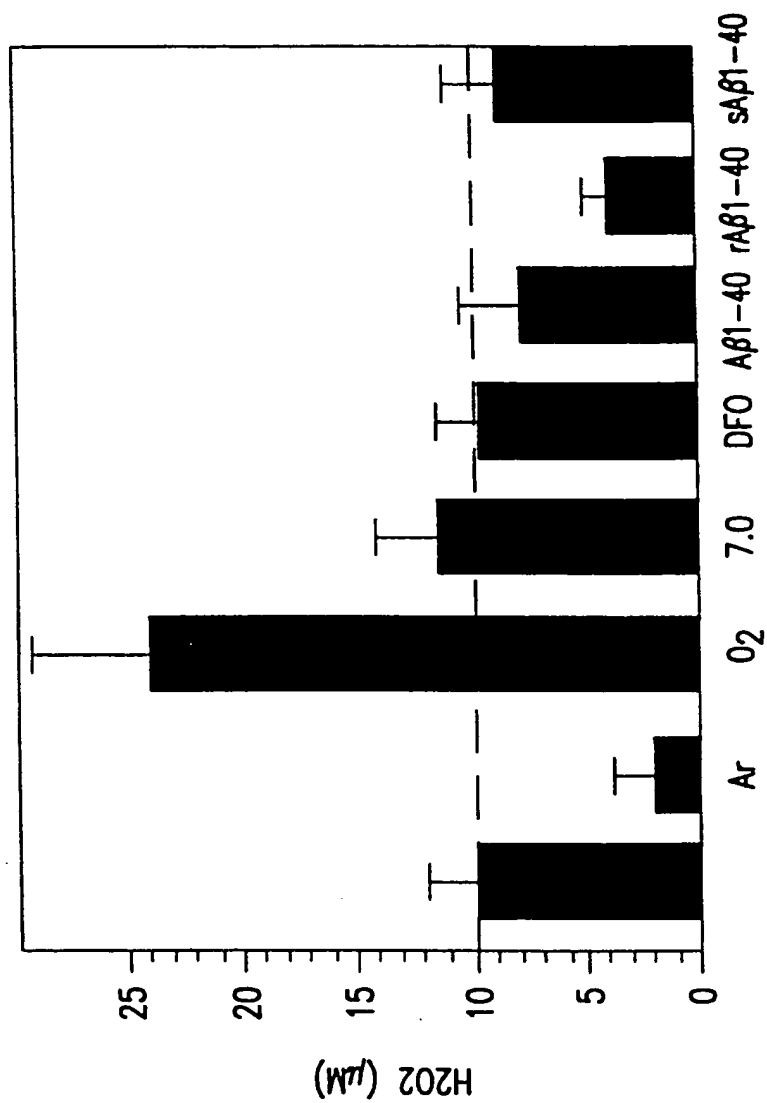


FIG.11



16/60

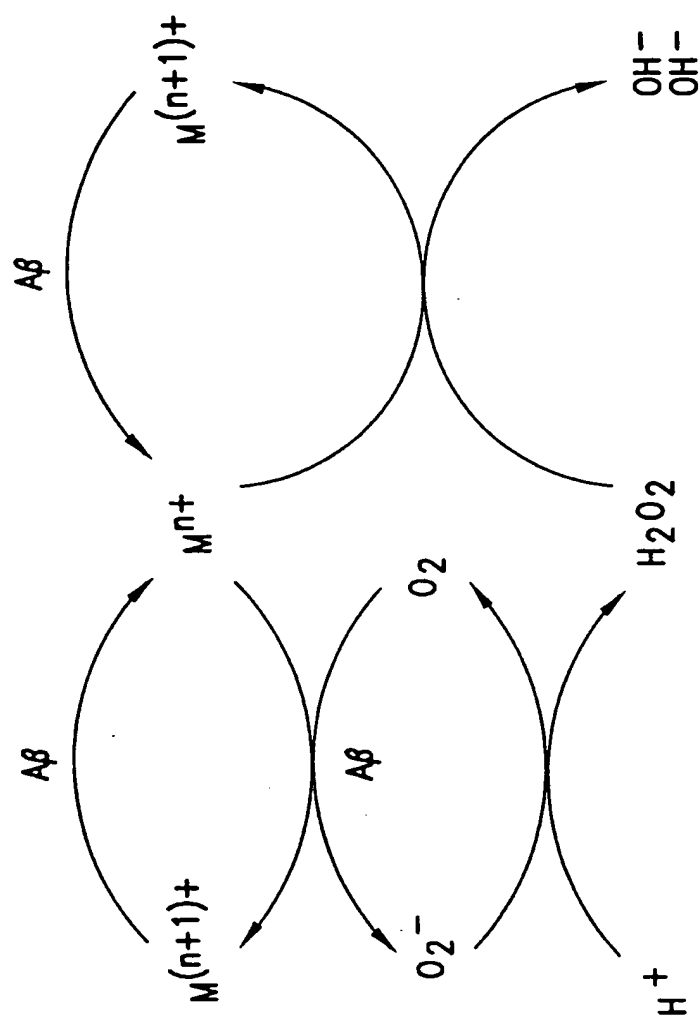


FIG.12

17/60

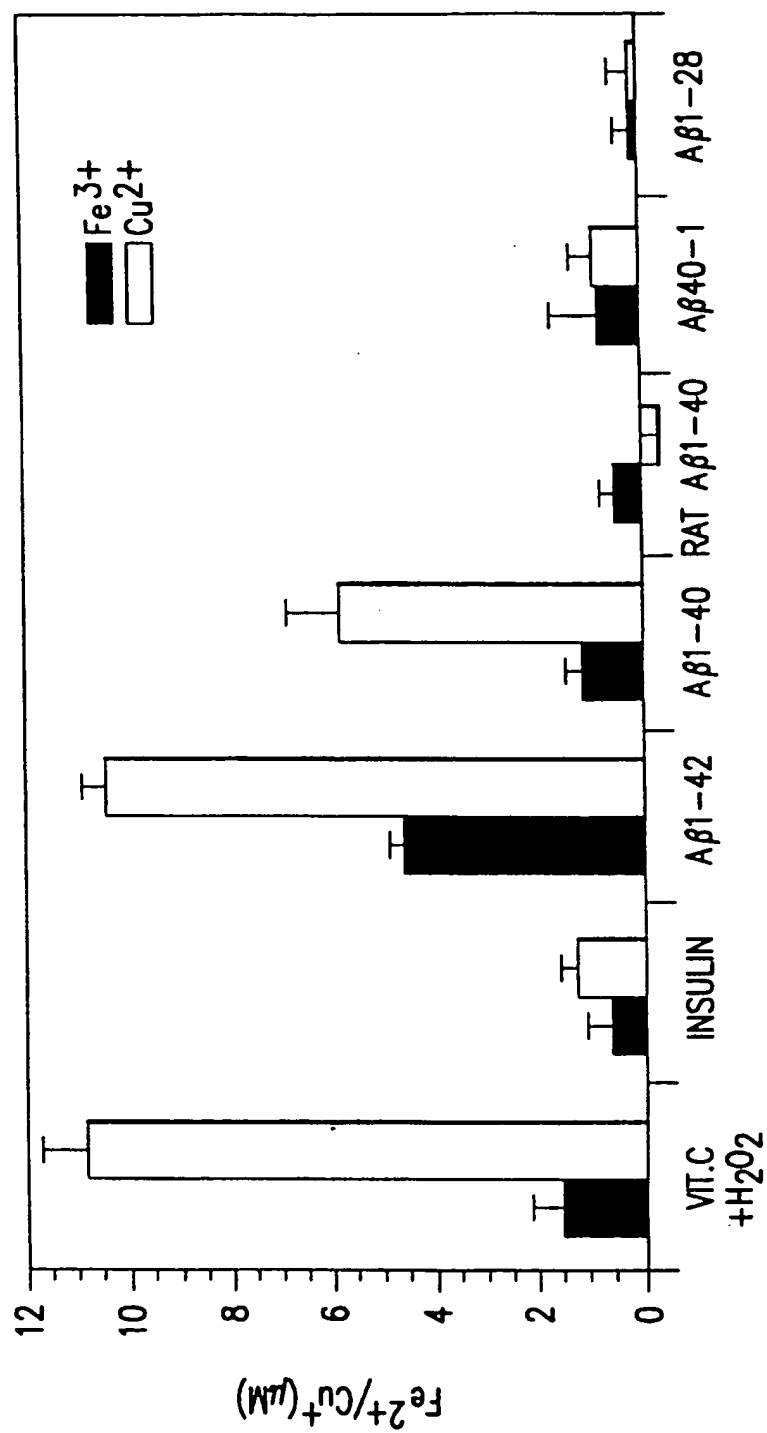


FIG.13A

18/60

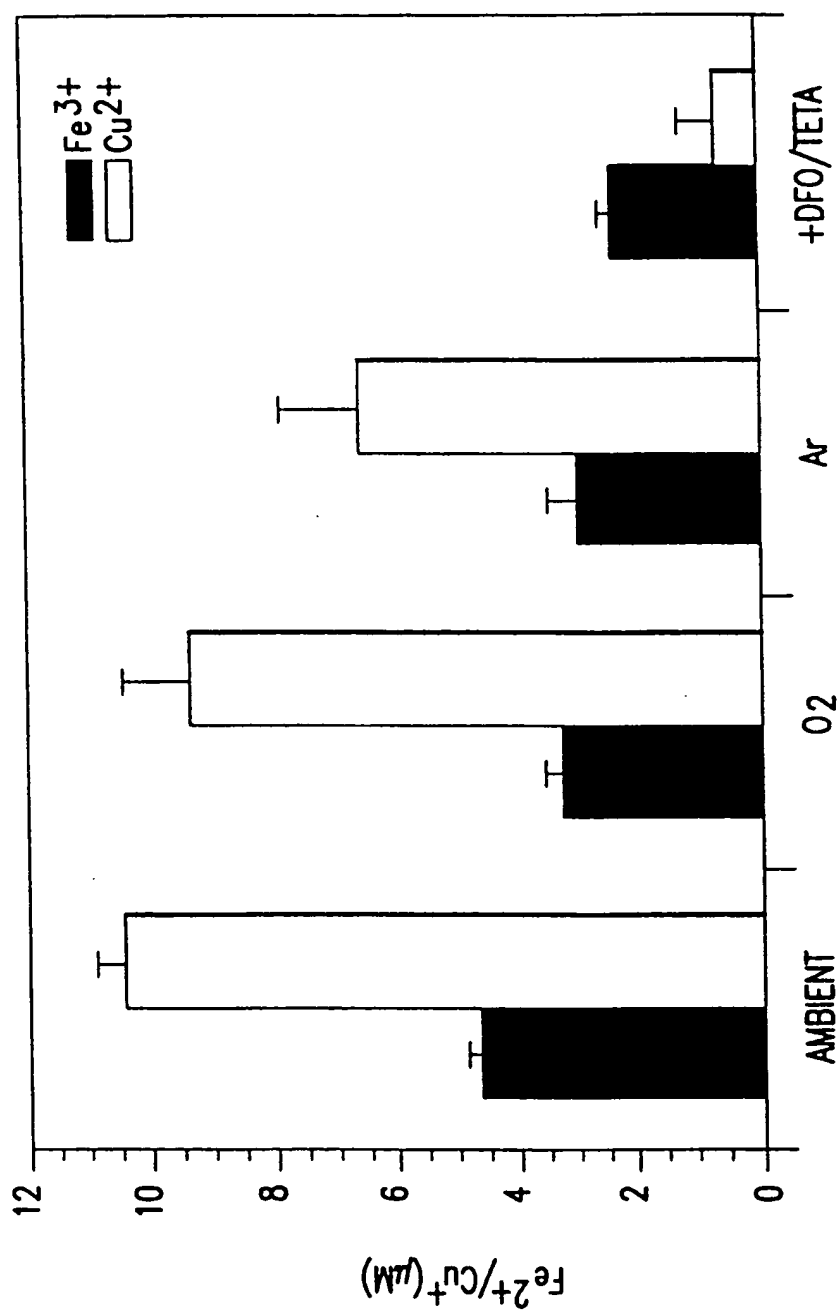


FIG.13B

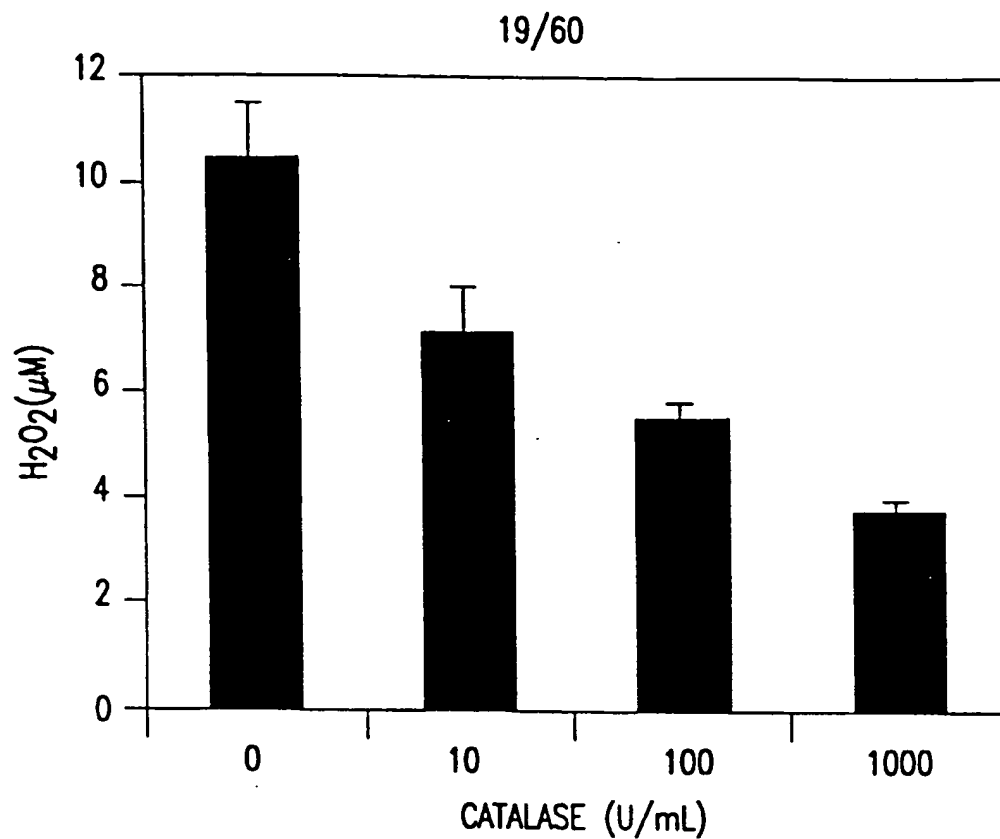


FIG.14A

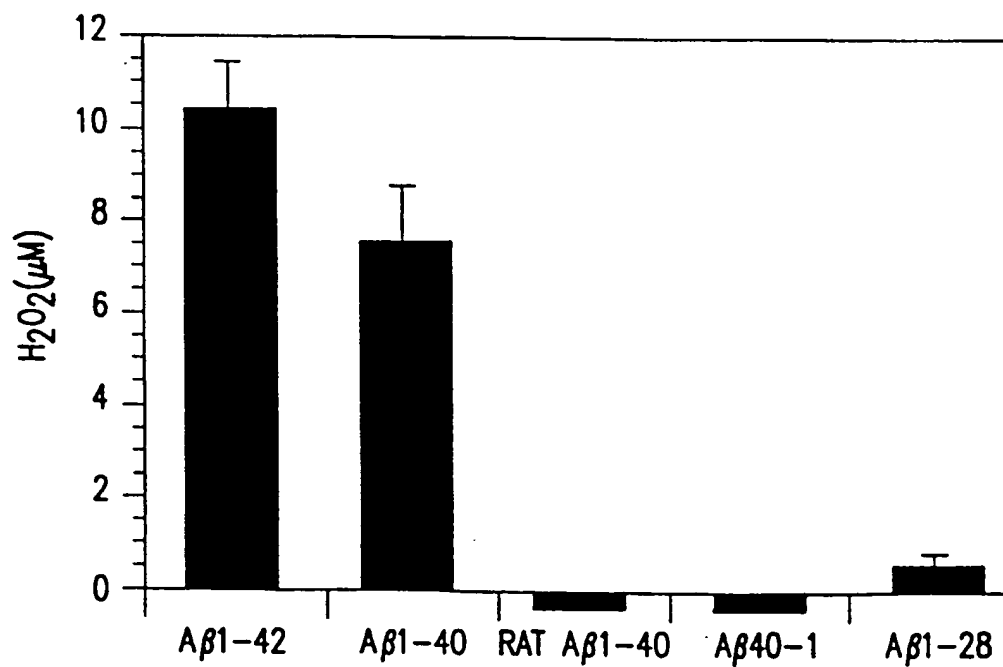


FIG.14B

20/60

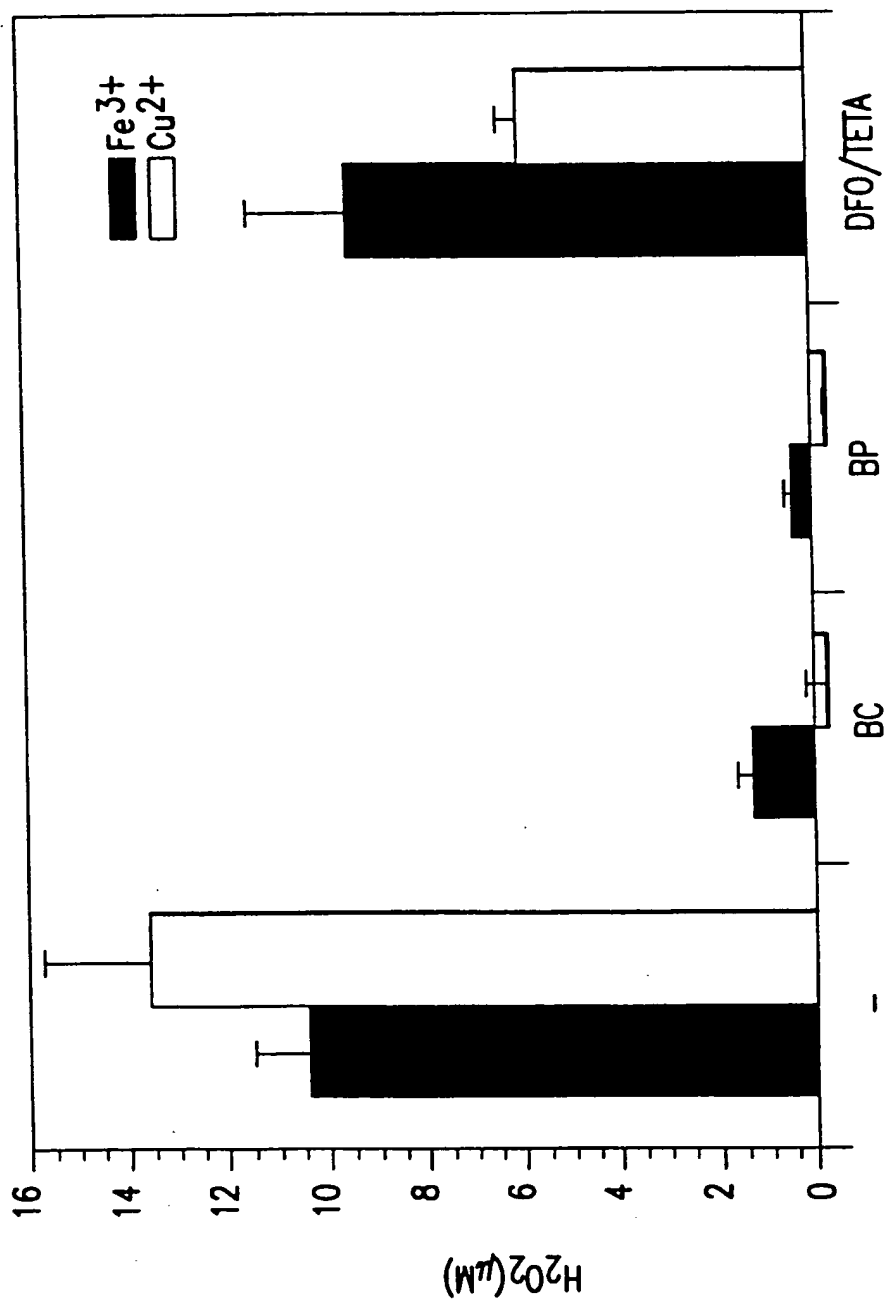


FIG.14C

21/60

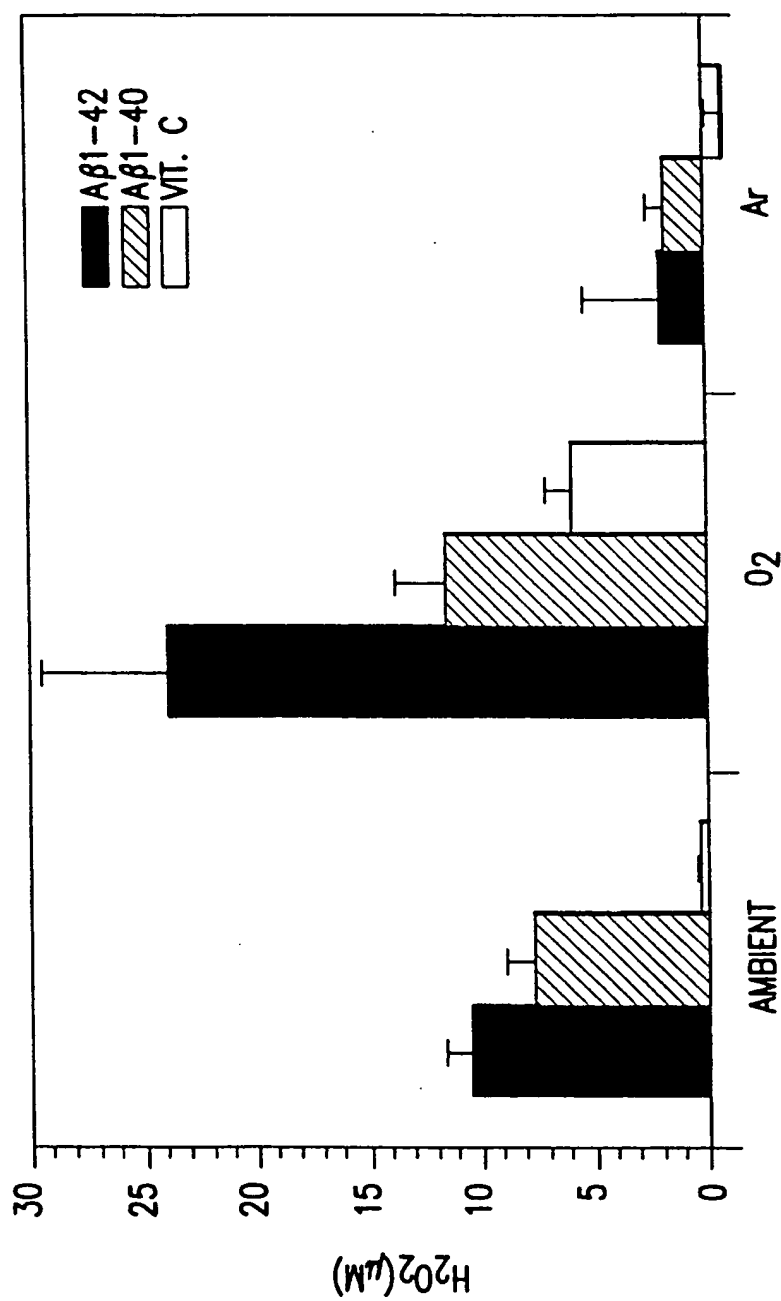


FIG.14D

22/60

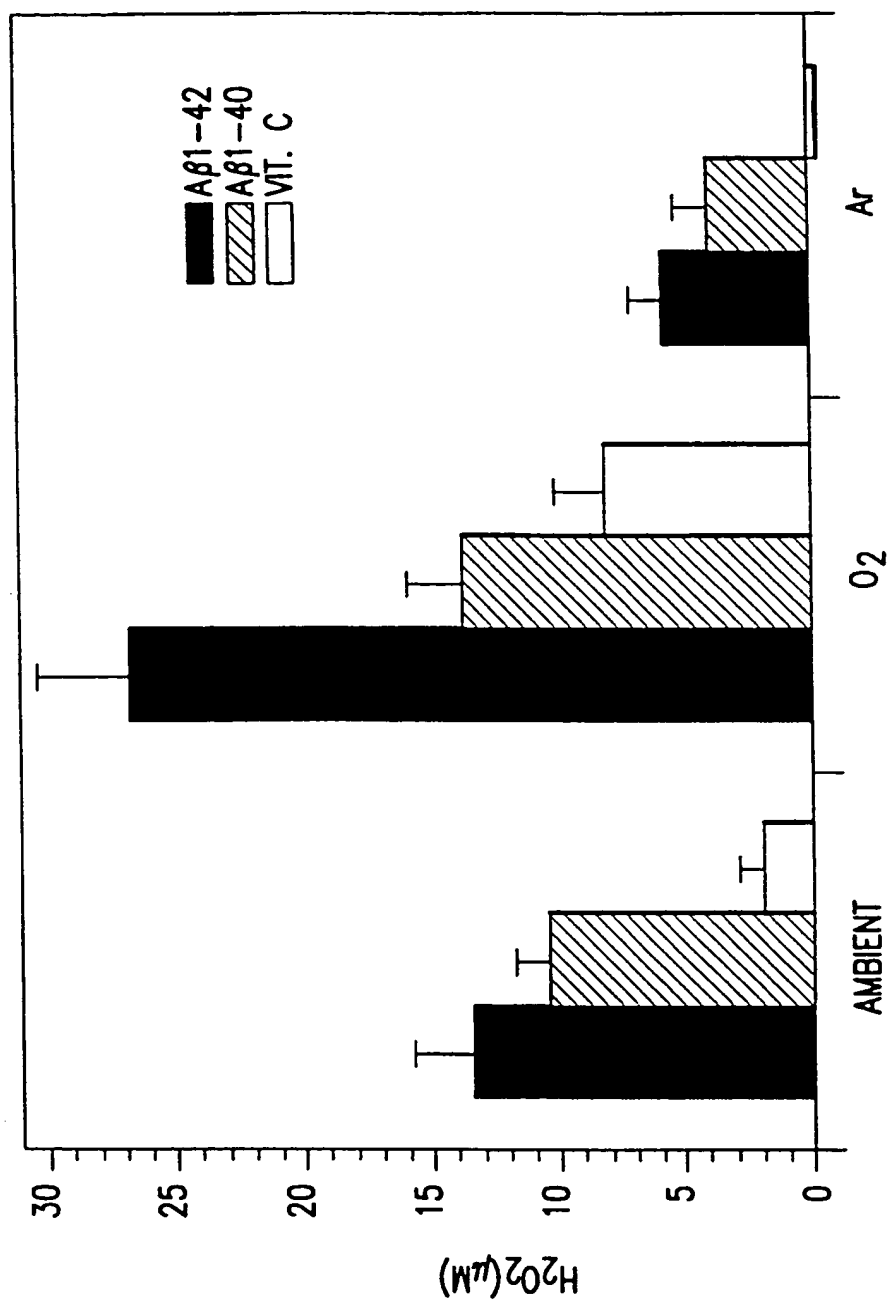


FIG.14E

23/60

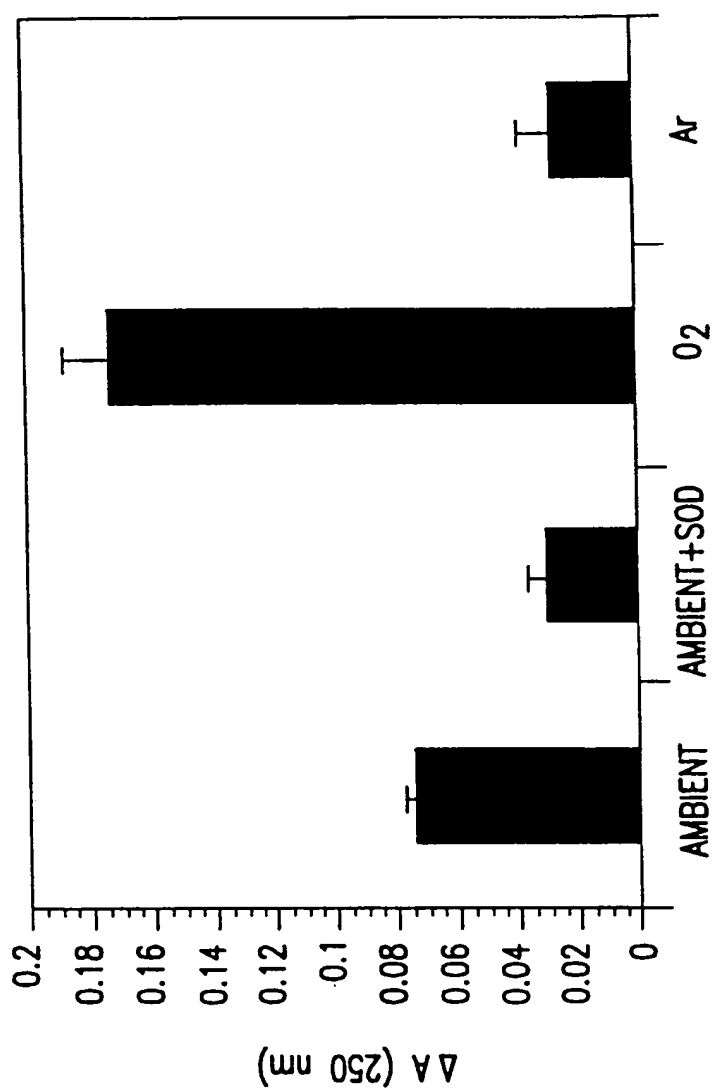


FIG.15A



24/60

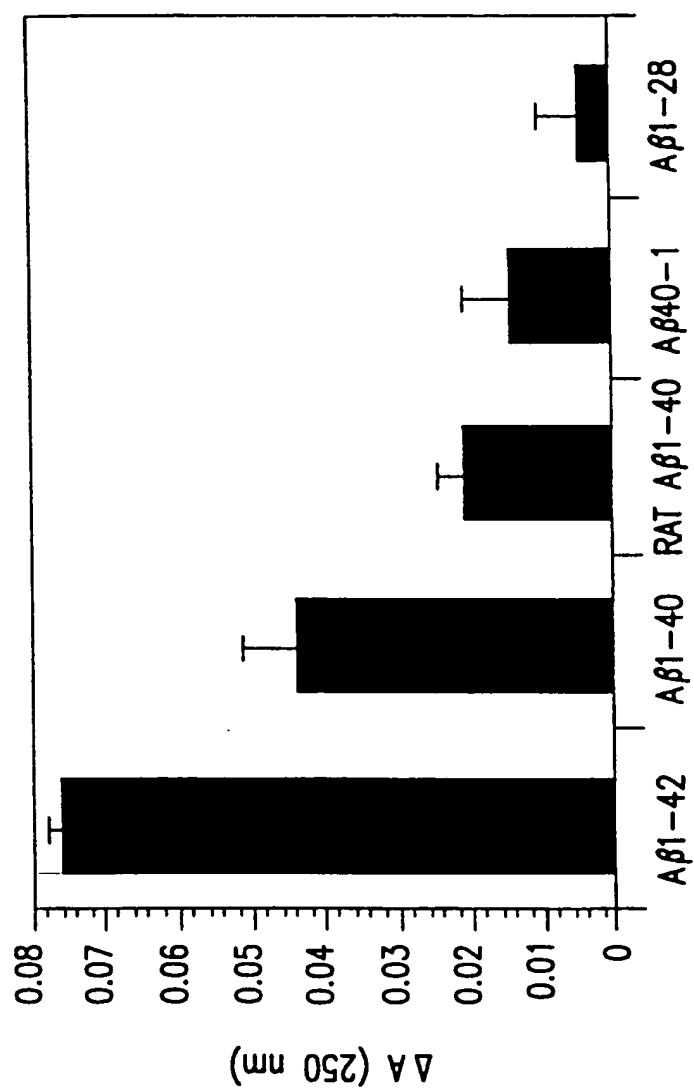


FIG.15B

25/60

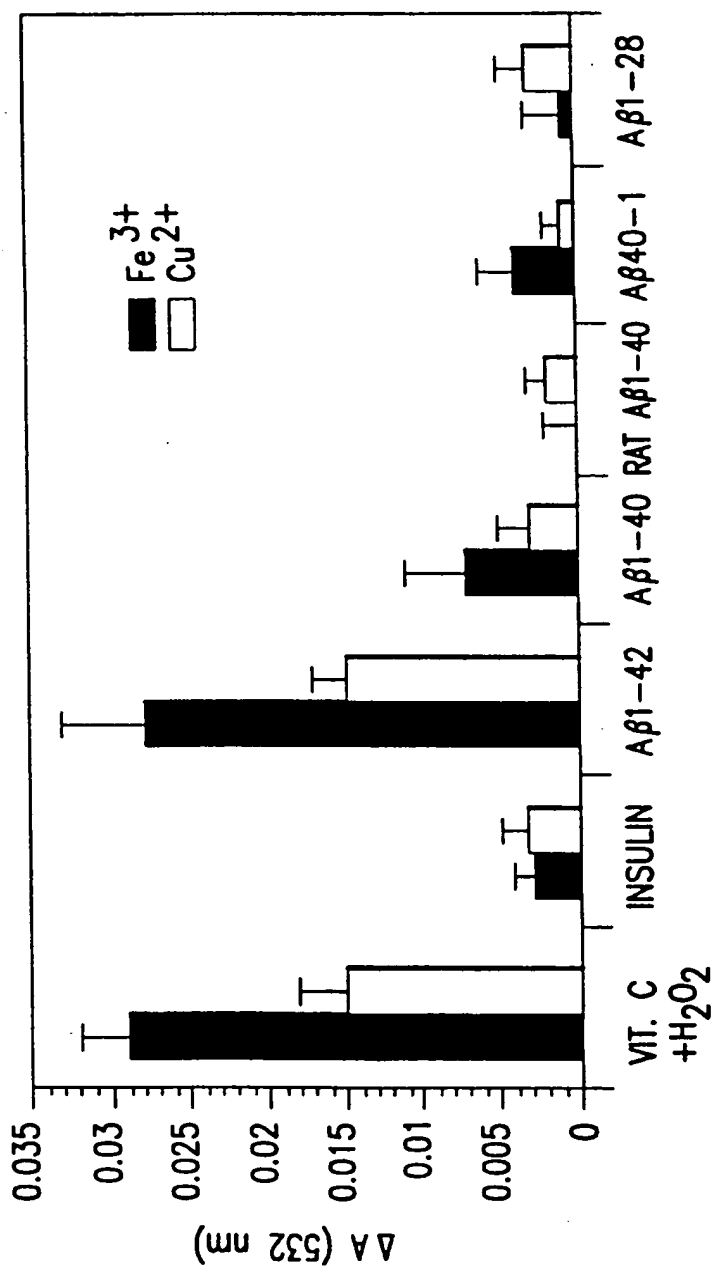


FIG. 16A

26/60

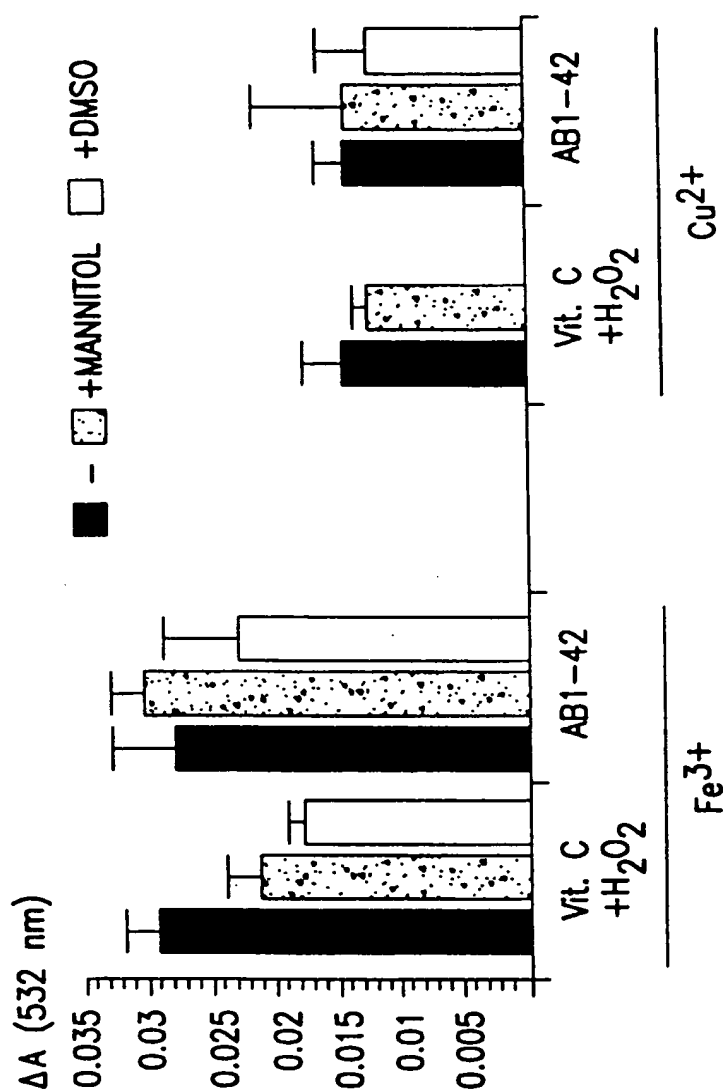


FIG. 16B

27/60

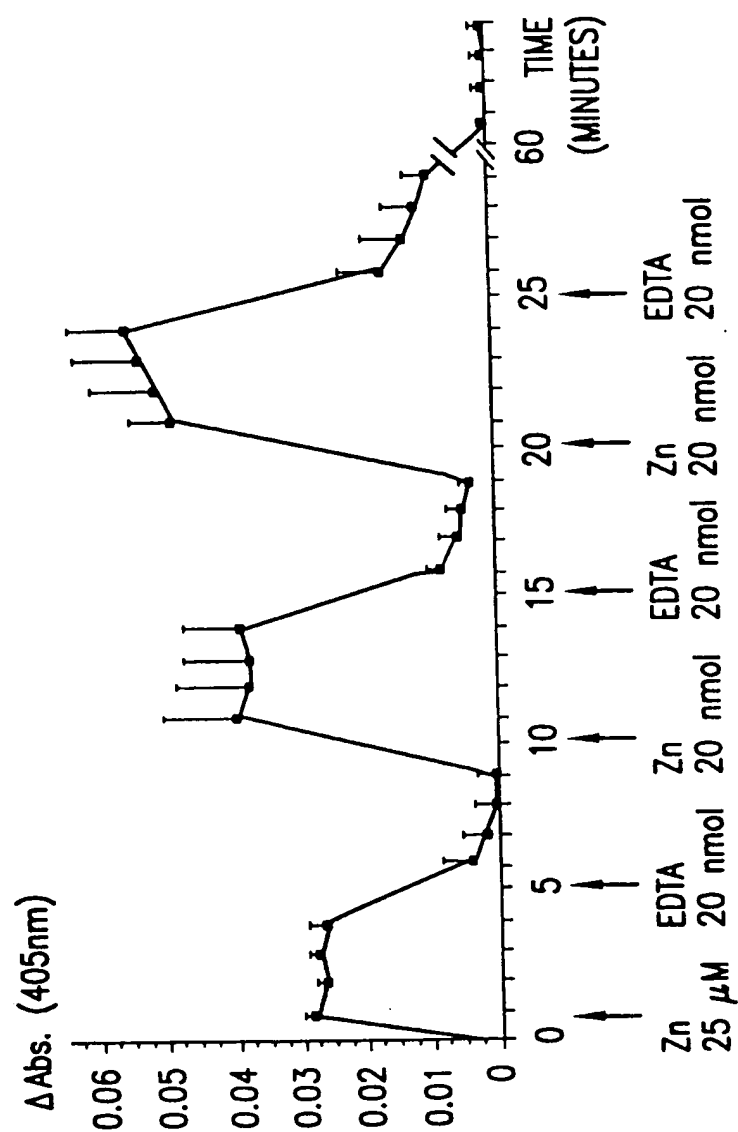


FIG. 17

28/60

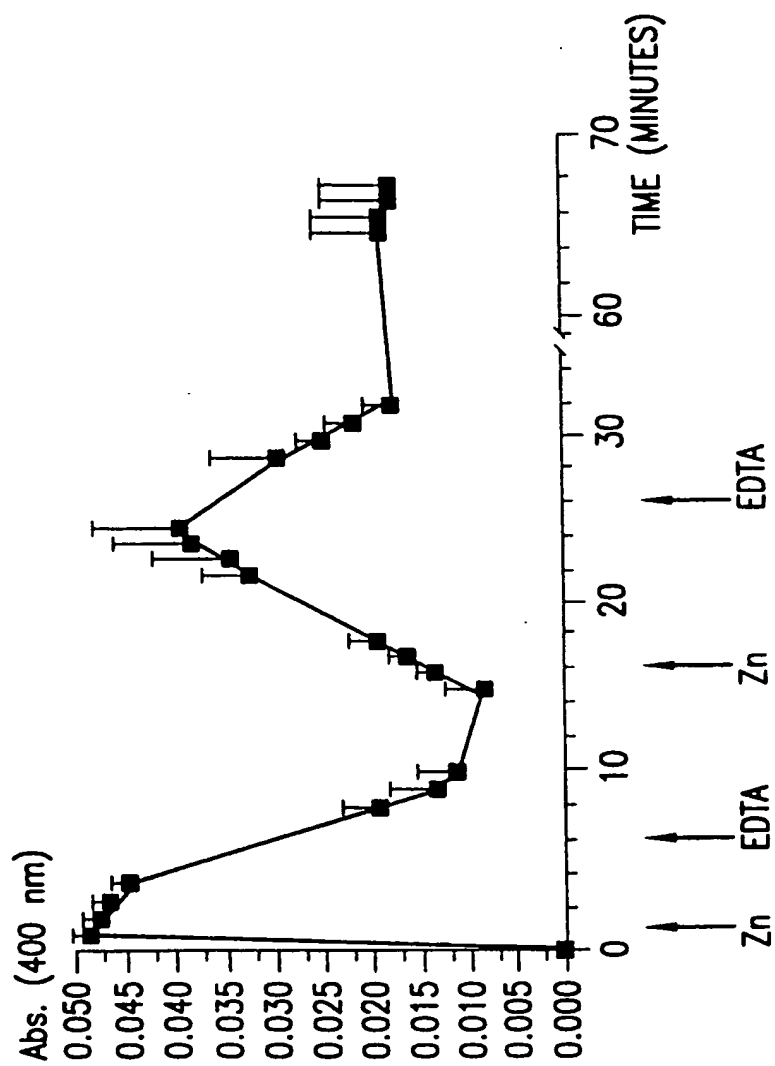


FIG. 18

29/60

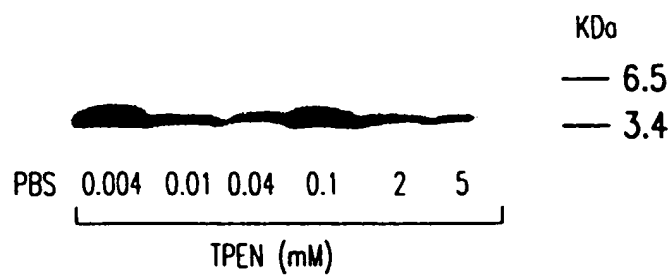


FIG.19A

30/60

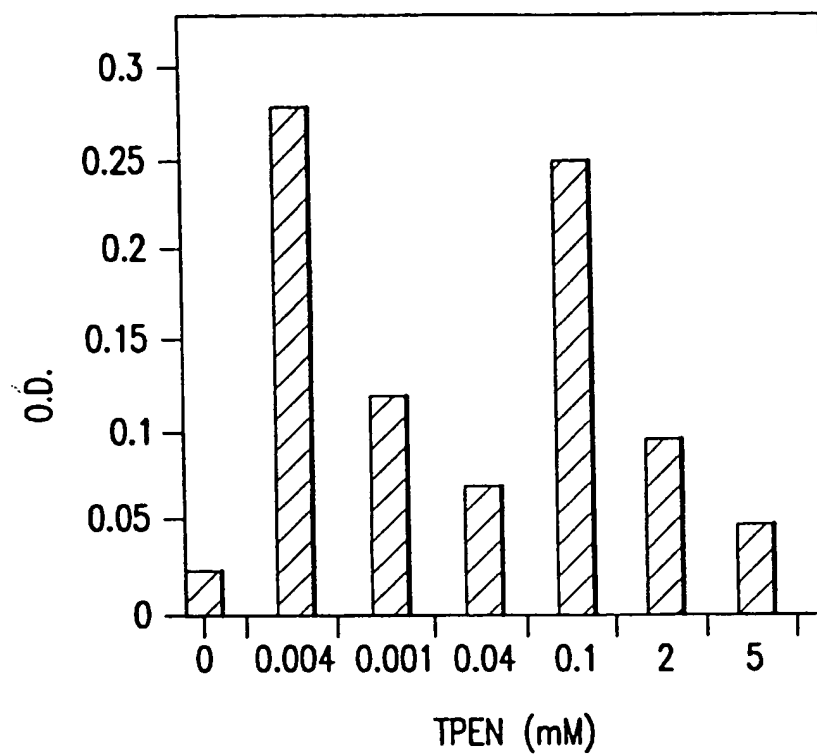


FIG.19A-1

31/60

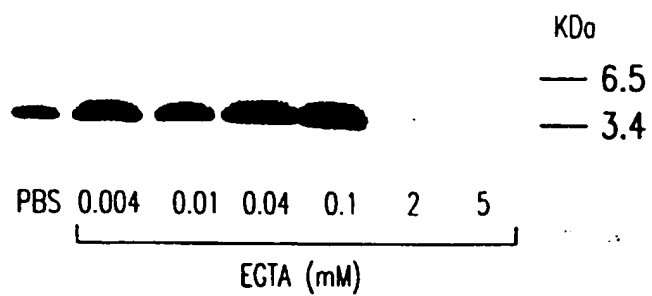


FIG. 19B



32/60

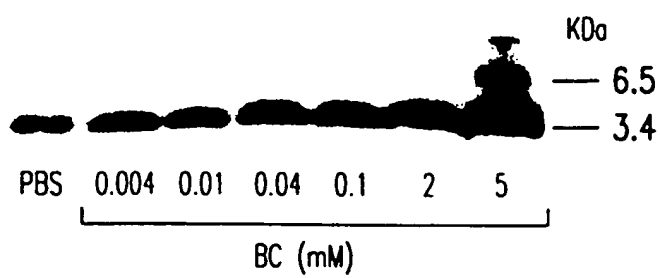


FIG. 19C

33/60

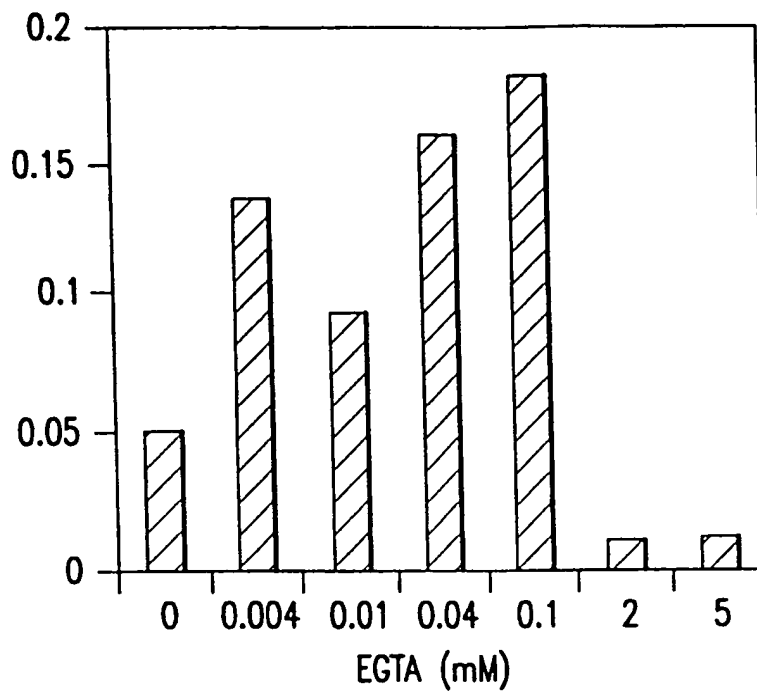


FIG.19B-1

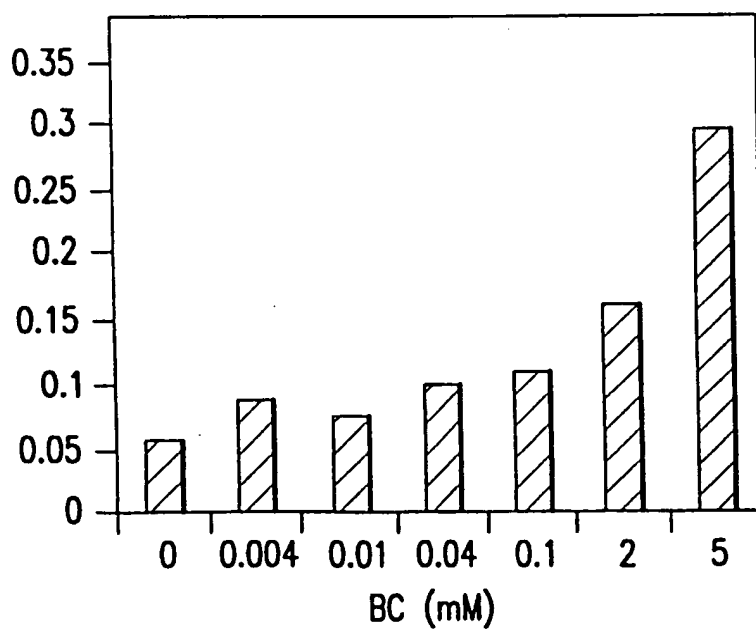


FIG.19C-1

34/60

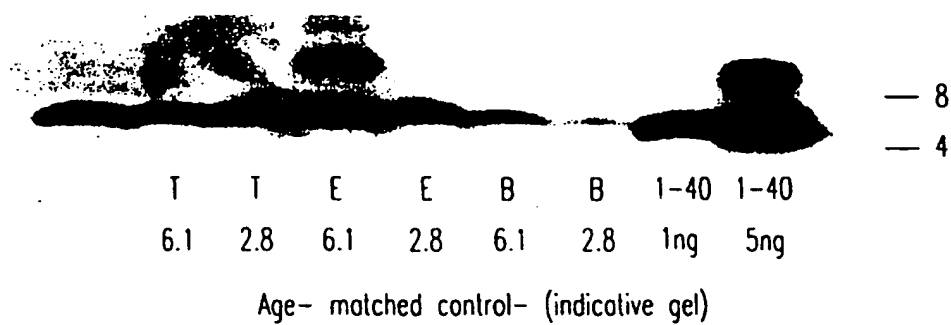
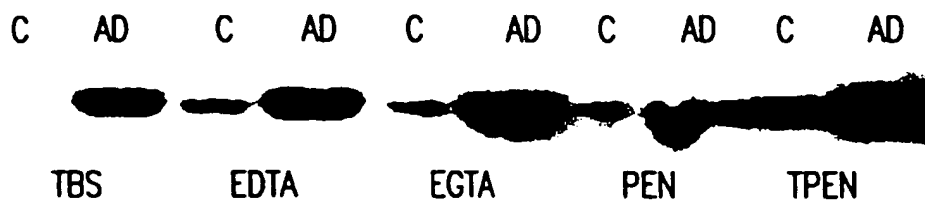


FIG.20A

35/60



Young control vs AD, various chelators 5mM

FIG.20B

36/60

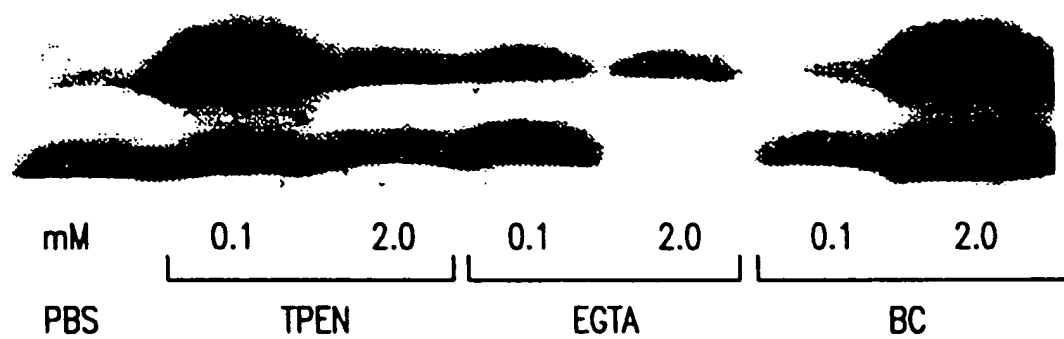


FIG.21

37/60

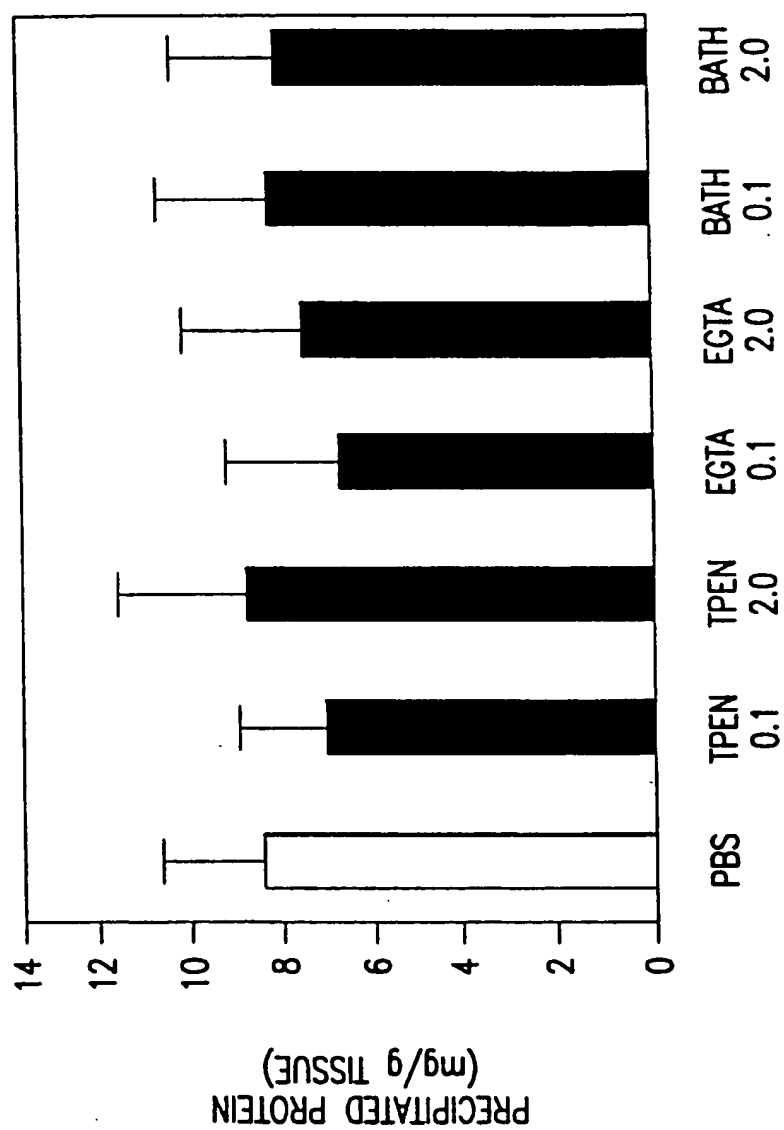


FIG.22

38/60

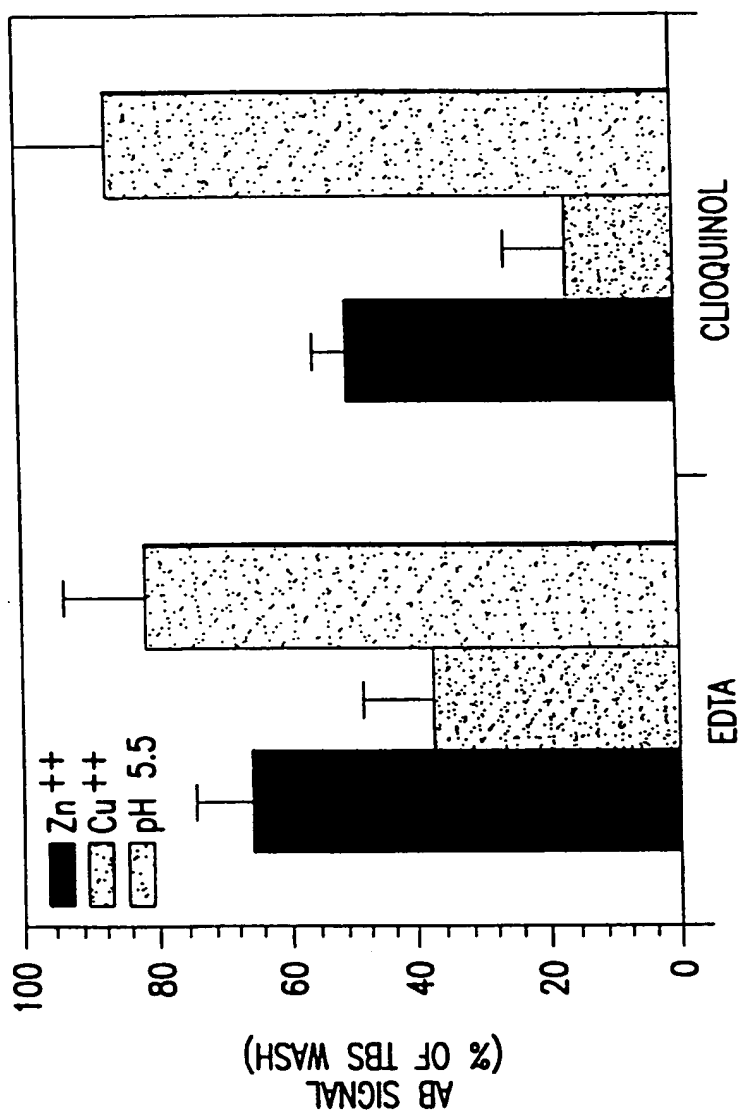


FIG.23

39/60

Brain specimen #1



Brain specimen #2



	S1	S2	S1	S2	S1	S2	S1	S2
Dilution	0		100%		10%		1%	

FIG.24



40/60

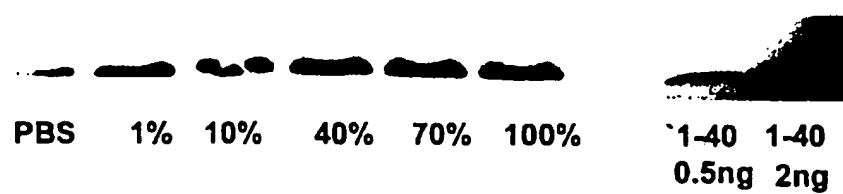


FIG.25A

41/60

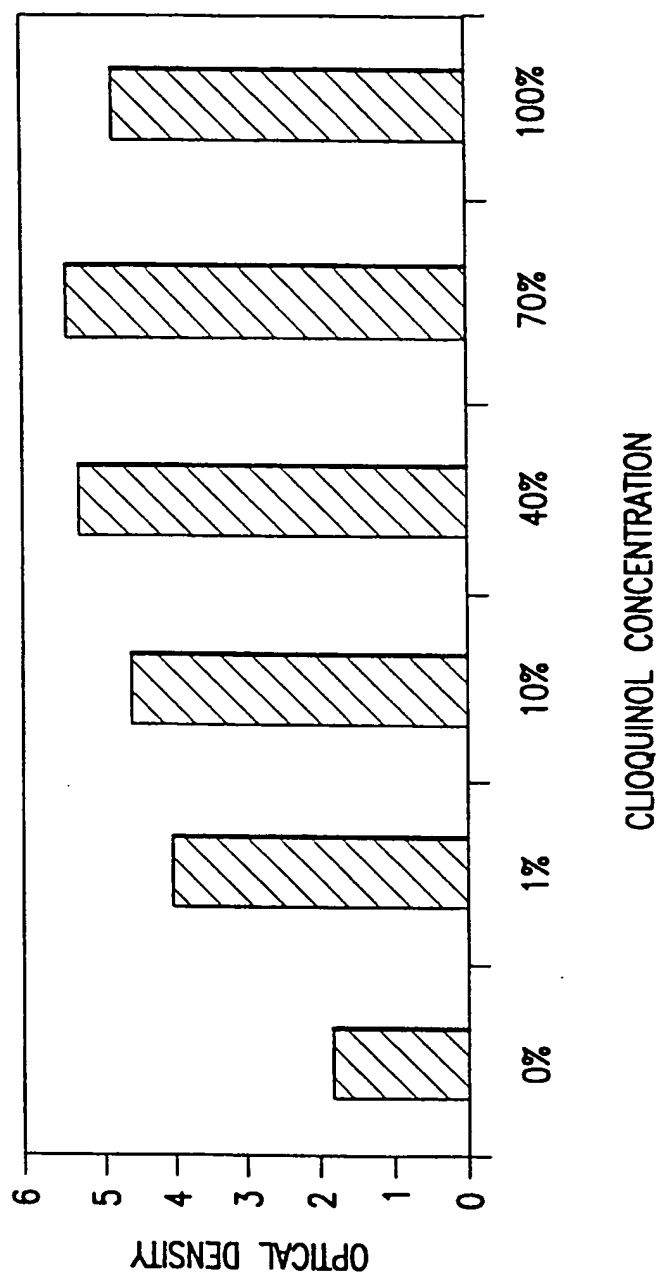


FIG. 25B

42/60

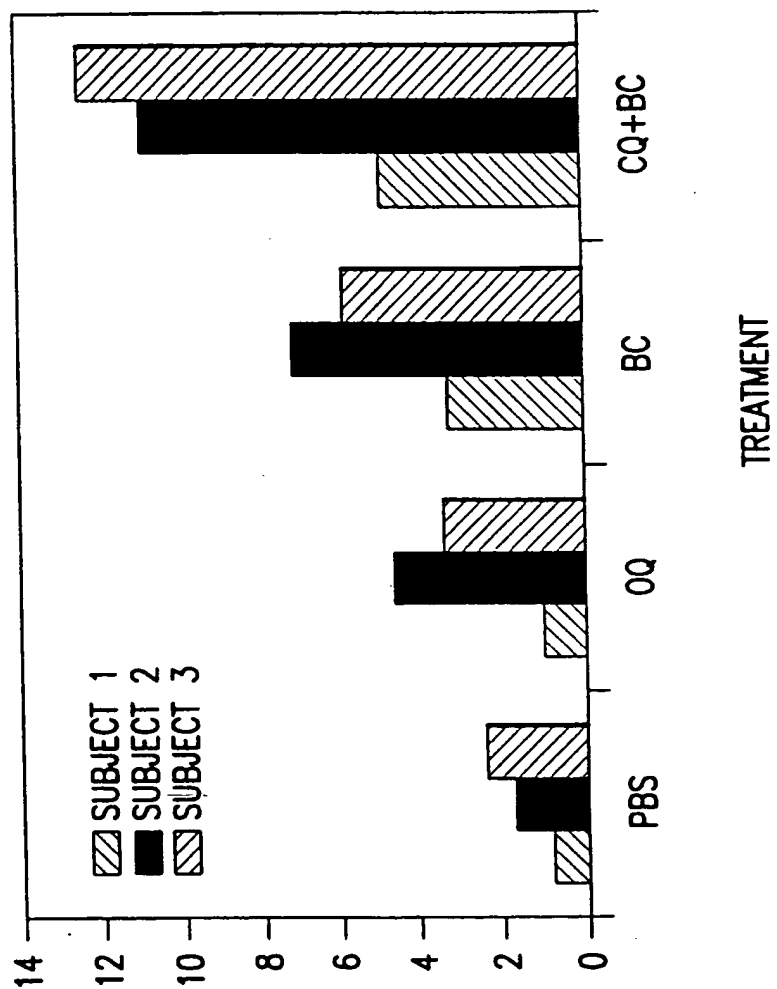


FIG.26

43/60

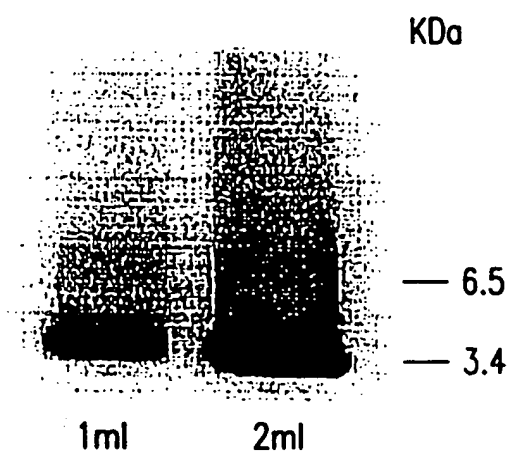


FIG.27

44/60

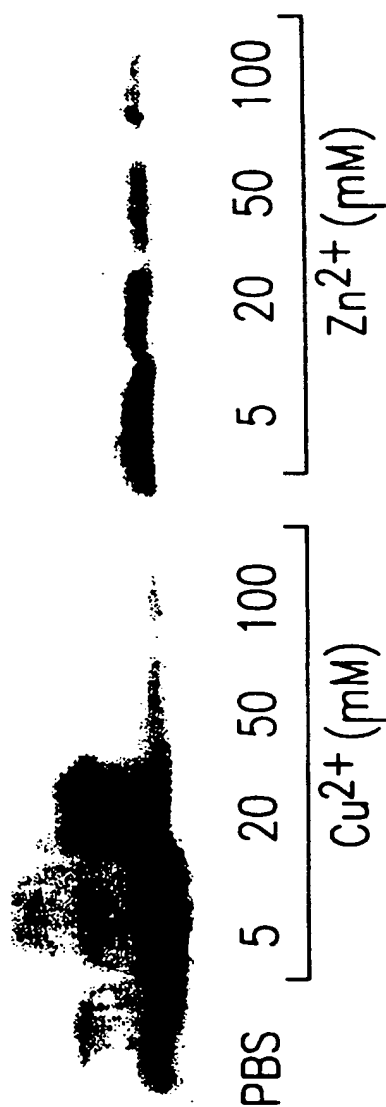


FIG. 28A

45/60



PBS     $Mg^{2+}$      $Ca^{2+}$

**FIG.28B**

46/60

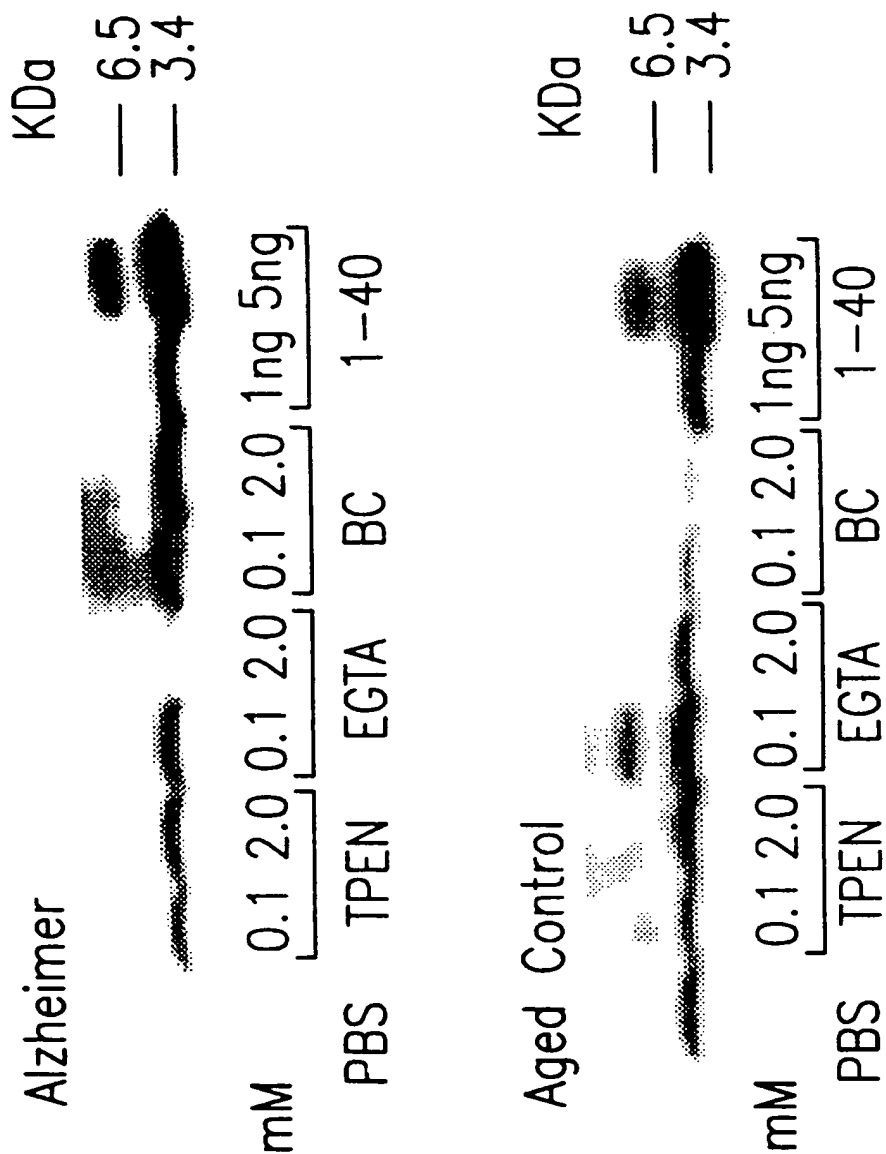


FIG. 29A

47/60

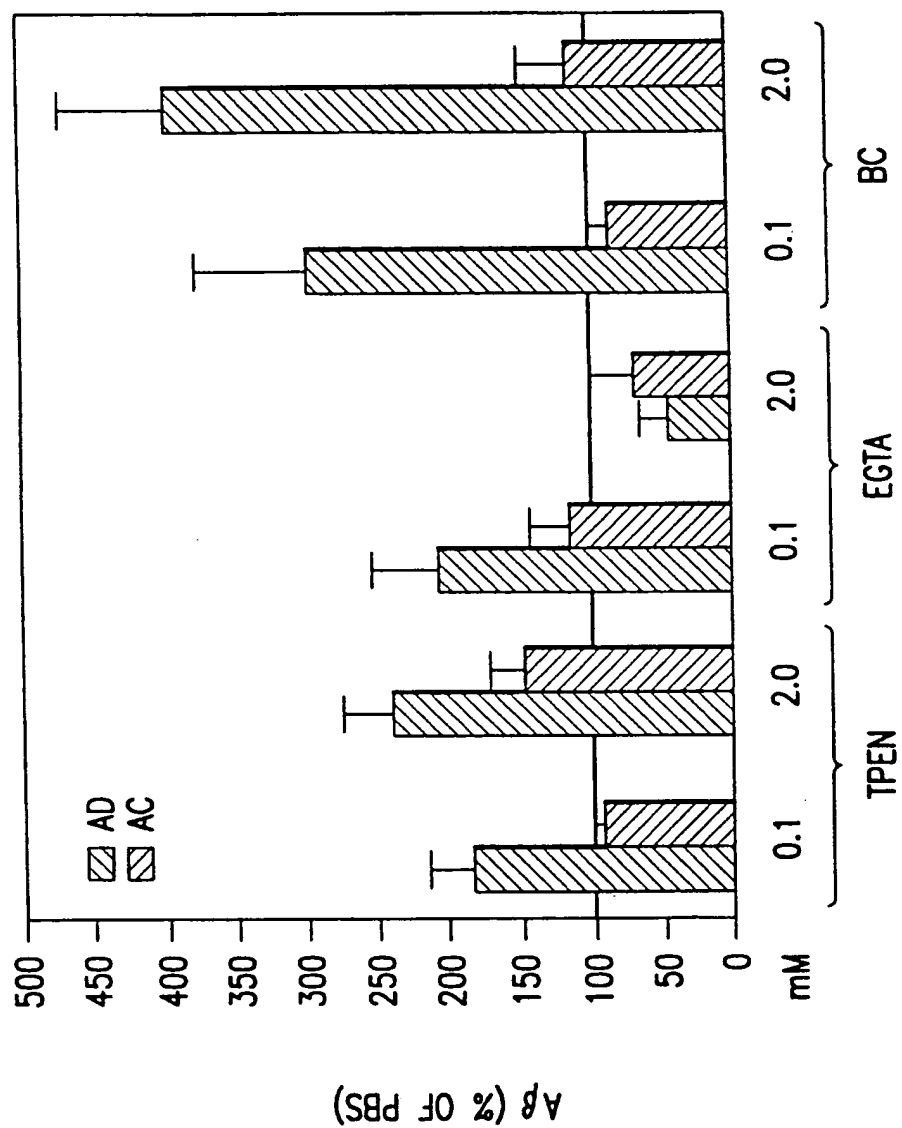


FIG.29B



48/60

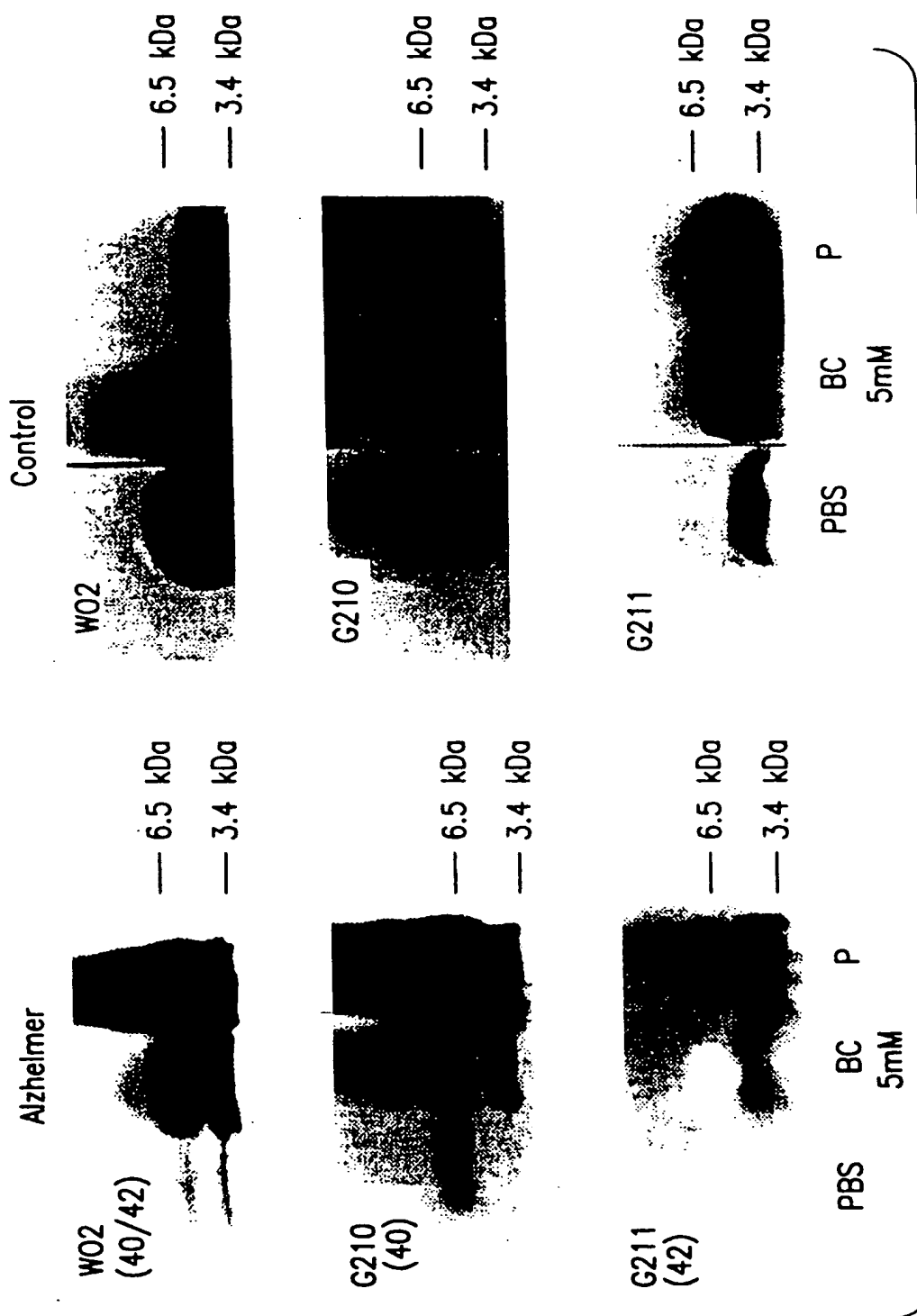
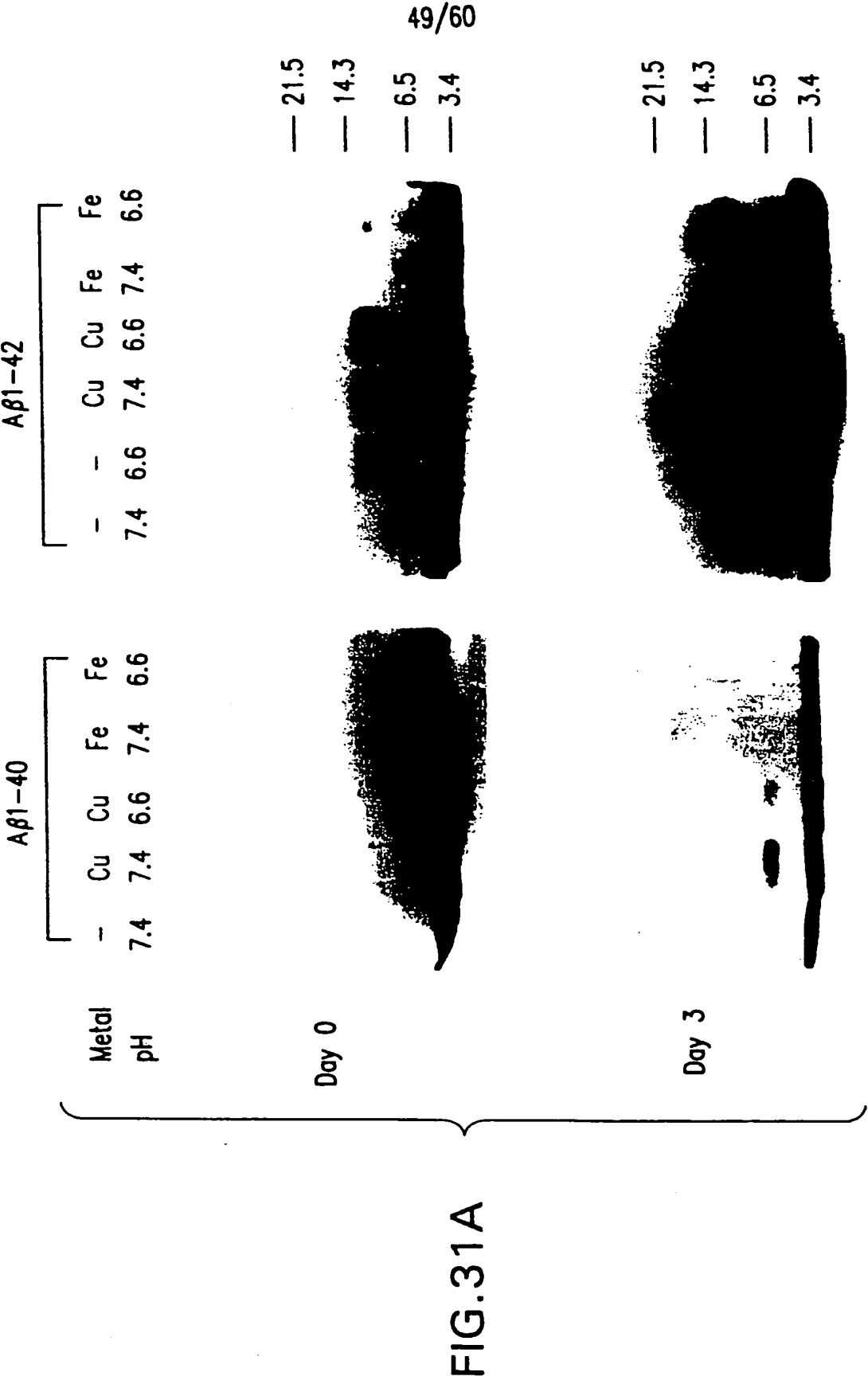


FIG.30





51/60

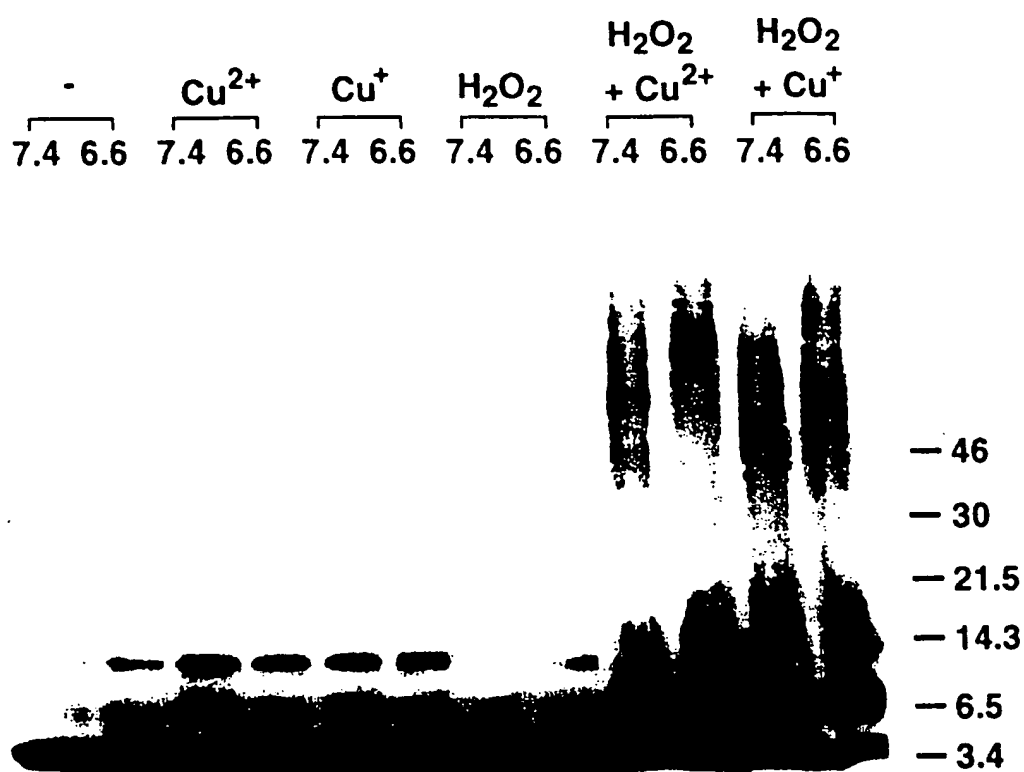


FIG.32A

52/60

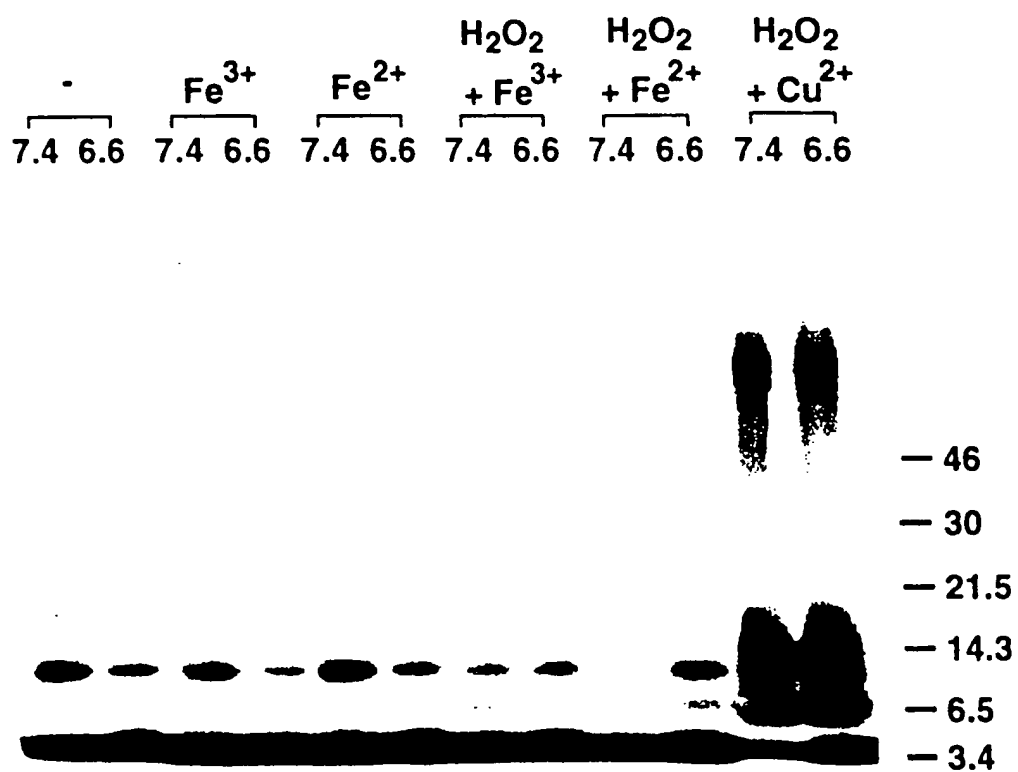


FIG.32B

53/60

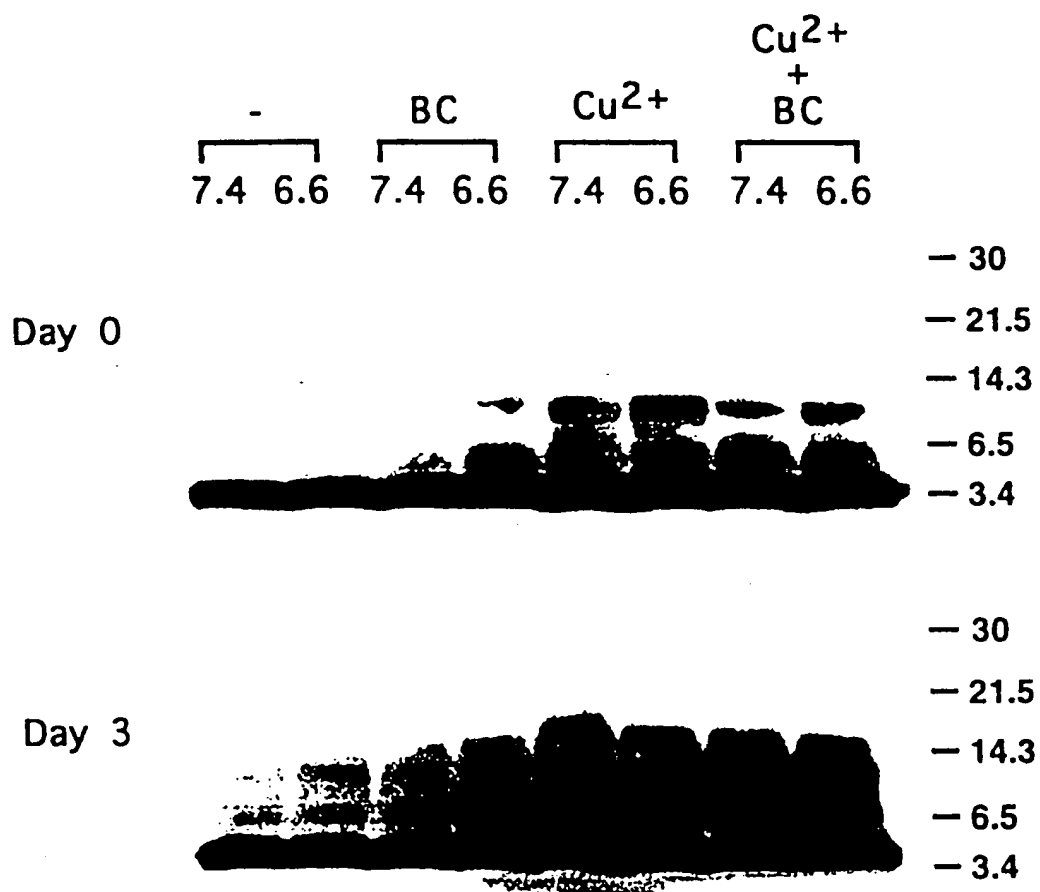


FIG.32C

54/60

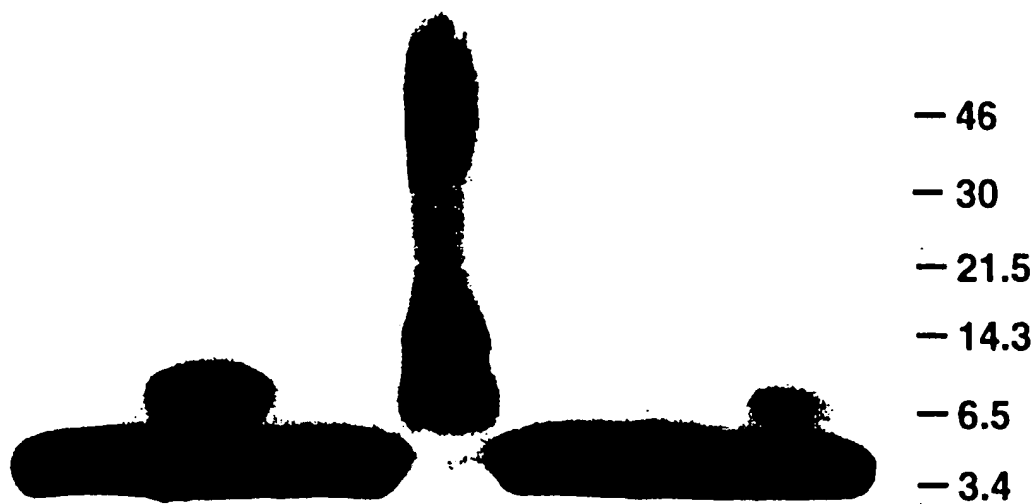
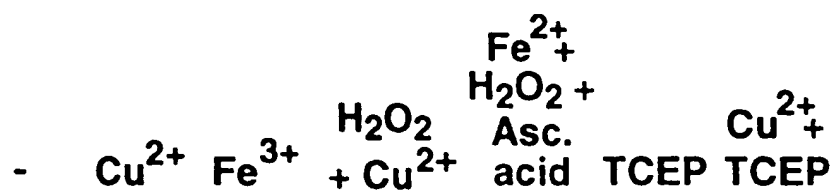


FIG. 33A

55/60

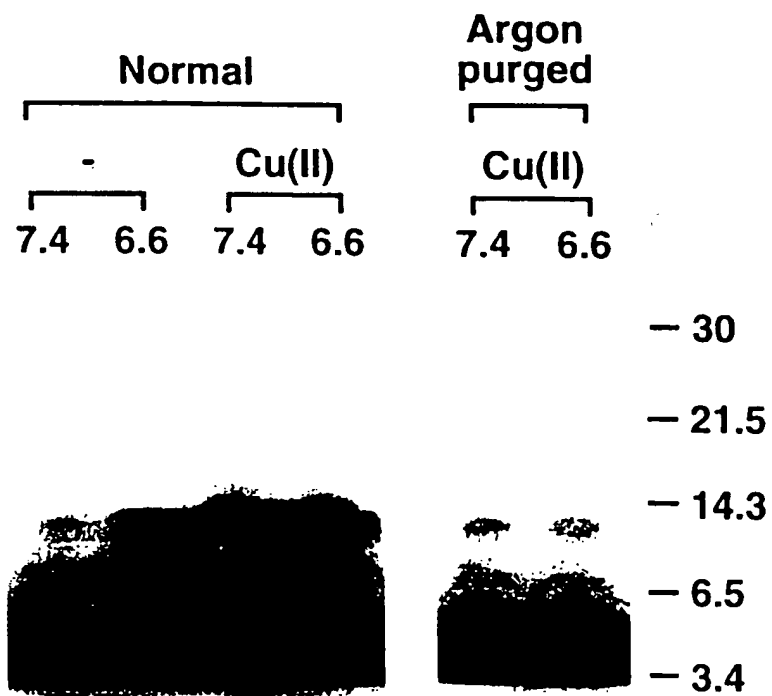


FIG.33B



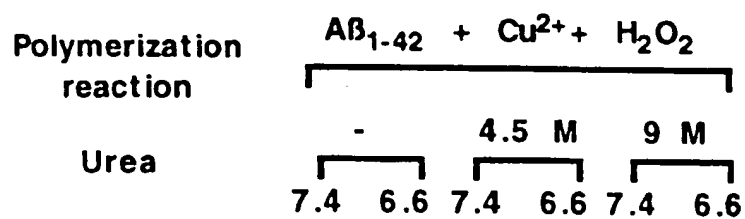
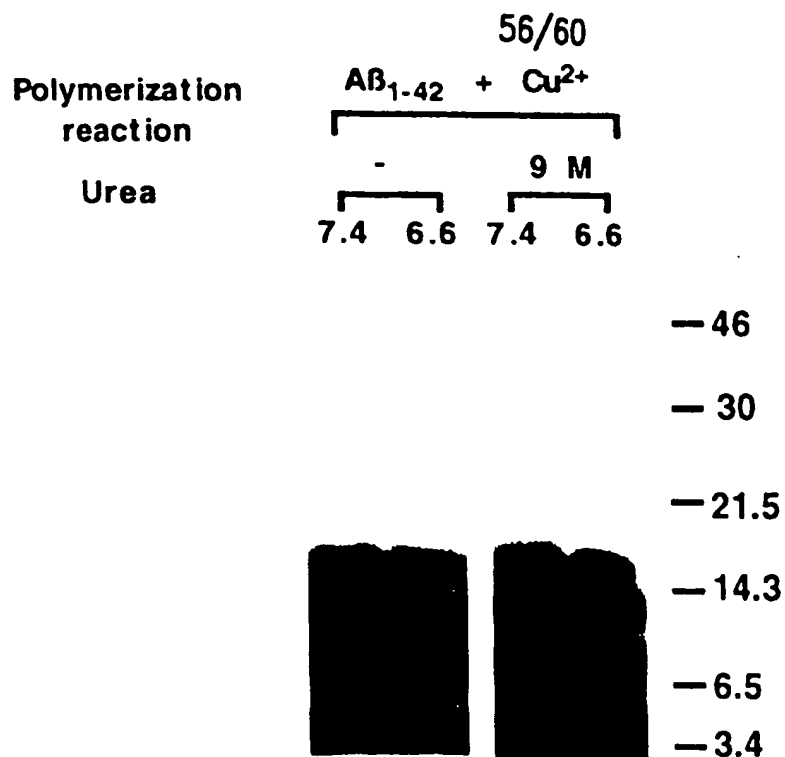


FIG.34A



57/60

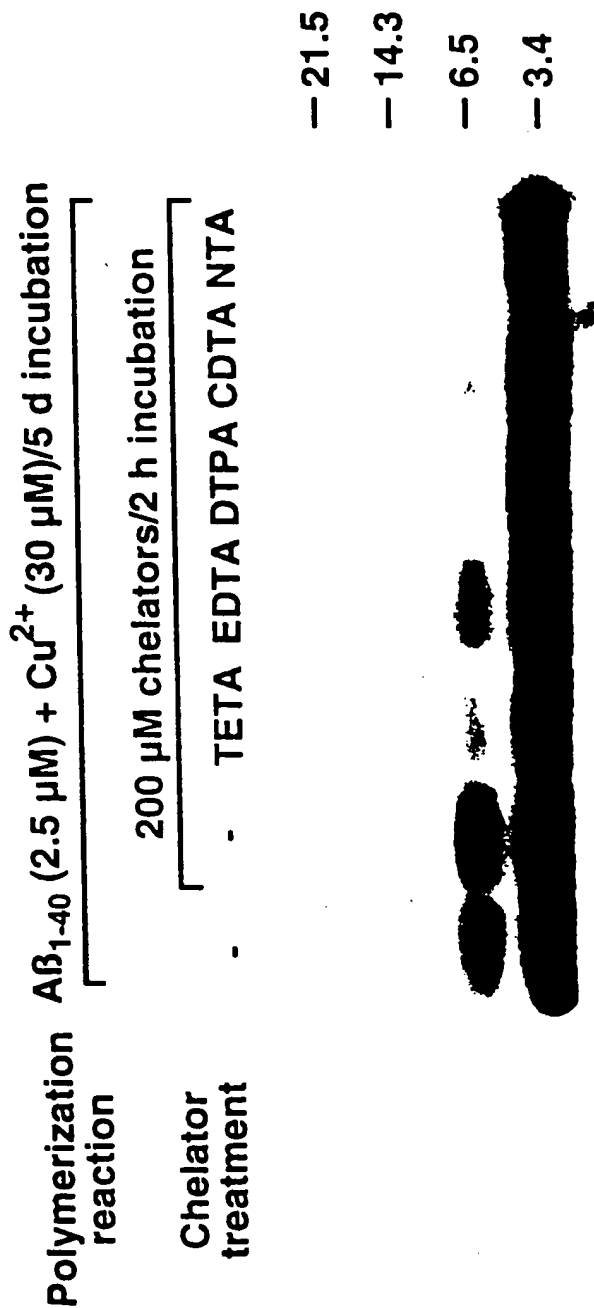


FIG.34B

58/60

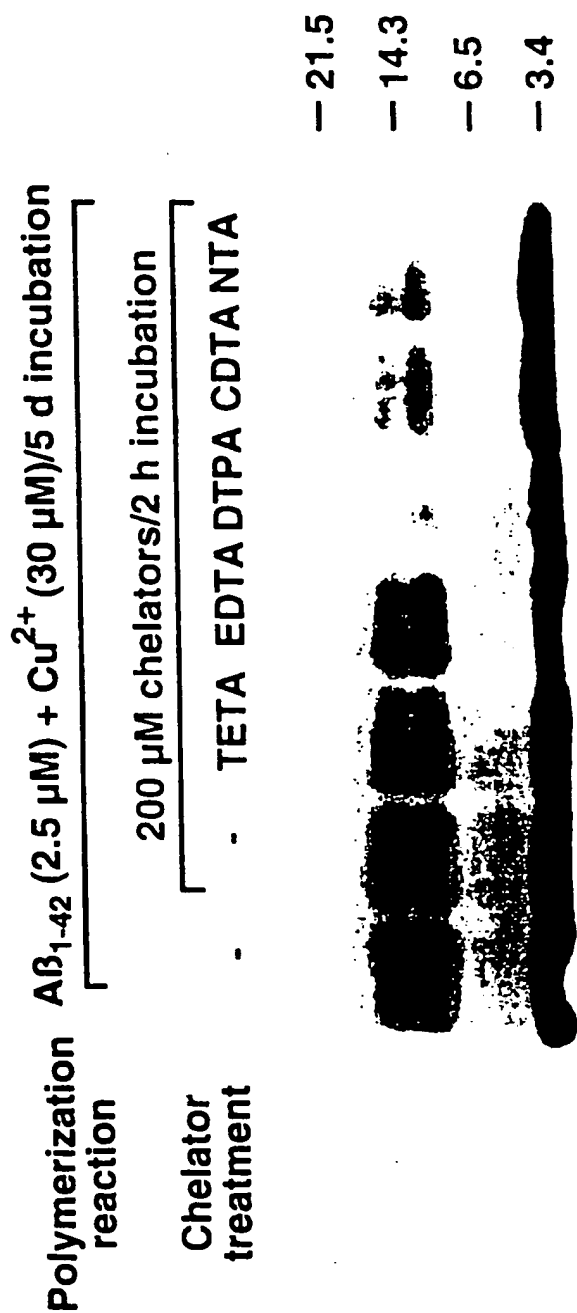


FIG.34C

59/60

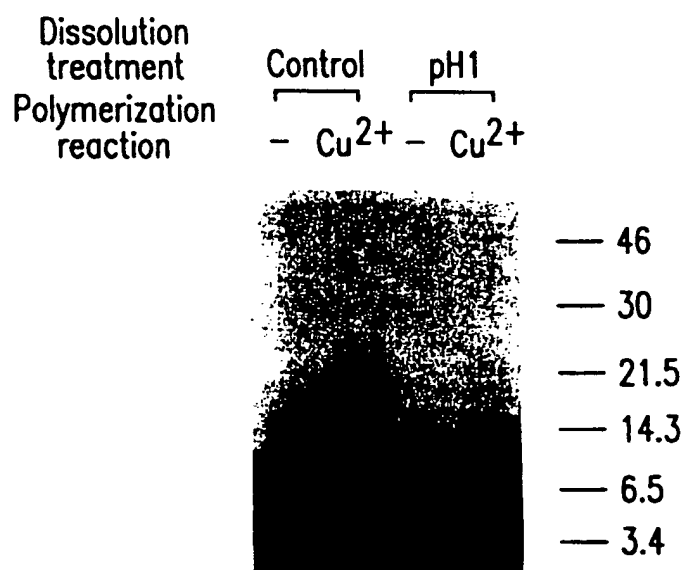


FIG.34D

60/60

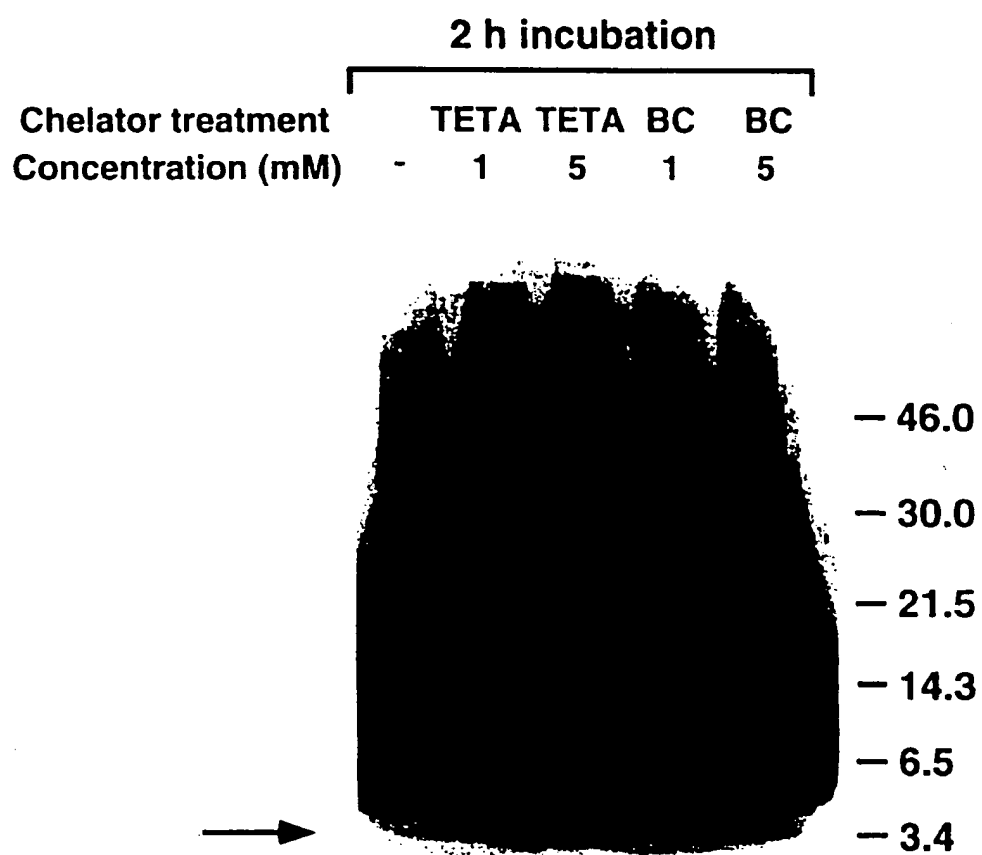


FIG.34E

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

I. National Application No

PCT/US 99/05291

## A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER

IPC 6 A61K31/47

According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC

## B. FIELDS SEARCHED

Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols)

IPC 6 A61K

Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched

Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practical, search terms used)

## C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
P, X	WO 99 09981 A (GEROLYMATOS P) 4 March 1999 (1999-03-04)  the whole document ---	1-12, 16-27, 31-42, 46-54
X	WO 98 06403 A (GEROLYMATOS P) 19 February 1998 (1998-02-19)  page 1-5; claims 1-4 page 6, line 31 -page 7, line 7 ---	1, 3, 4, 16, 18, 19, 31, 33, 34, 40, 41
X	WO 93 10459 A (UNIV MELBOURNE) 27 May 1993 (1993-05-27) page 6, paragraph 2 -page 9, paragraph 1; claims 15-19 ---	40, 41
	-/--	



Further documents are listed in the continuation of box C.



Patent family members are listed in annex.

### Special categories of cited documents:

- "A" document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance
- "E" earlier document but published on or after the international filing date
- "L" document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)
- "O" document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means
- "P" document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed

"T" later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention

"X" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone

"Y" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art.

"S" document member of the same patent family

Date of the actual completion of the international search

7 February 2000

Date of mailing of the international search report

21.02.00

Name and mailing address of the ISA

European Patent Office, P B 5818 Patentlaan 2  
NL - 2280 HV Rijswijk  
Tel: (+31-70) 340-2040, Te: 31 651 epo nl  
Fax: (+31-70) 340-3016

Authorized officer

Kanbier, D

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International Application No  
PCT/US 99/05291

## C.(Continuation) DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category *	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
X	WO 94 04167 A (US GOVERNMENT) 3 March 1994 (1994-03-03) page 16, line 6-9; claims 1-3,24 ---	40-42
X	US 5 688 516 A (RAAD ISAAM ET AL) 18 November 1997 (1997-11-18) claims ---	40,41
X	MULTHAUP ET AL: "The Amyloid Precursor Protein of Alzheimer's Disease in the Reduction of Copper(II) to Copper(I)" SCIENCE, vol. 271, 8 March 1996 (1996-03-08), pages 1406-1409, XP002117957 page 1407, left-hand column, paragraph 2; figure 1A ---	40-42
A	SAYRE: "Alzheimer's Precursor Protein and the Use of Bathocuproine for Determining Reduction of Copper(II)" SCIENCE, vol. 274, no. 5294, 1996, pages 1933-1934, XP002117958 the whole document ---	40-42
A	BACON ET AL: "Rheumatoid Disease, Amyloidosis and its Treatment with Penicillamine" EUR J RHEUM INFLAMM, vol. 2, 1979, page 70 XP002117959 page 72; table 3 ---	1,6
A	WO 97 09976 A (WASHINGTON UNIVERSITY) 20 March 1997 (1997-03-20)  page 2, line 23-26; claims 1-4 ---	1-12, 16-27, 31-42, 46-54
P,X	WO 98 40071 A (GEN HOSPITAL CORP) 17 September 1998 (1998-09-17) the whole document ---	40-42
X	US 5 357 636 A (DANGMAN KENNETH H ET AL) 25 October 1994 (1994-10-25) column 51, line 61 -column 52, line 19; claim 5; example 15 ---	43,45, 55,57
A	NAKADA T ET AL: "Guanidinoethane sulfate: brain pH alkaline shifter." NEUROREPORT, (1993 AUG) 4 (8) 1035-8. , XP000869849 page 1037, right-hand column -page 1038, right-hand column ---	13,28, 43,55
	---	-/--

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Int. onal Application No

PCT/US 99/05291

## C.(Continuation) DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category *	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
A	<p>SCHRADER-FISCHER, GESINE ET AL: "Effect of alkalizing agents on the processing of the.beta.- amyloid precursor protein"            BRAIN RES. (1996), 716(1,2), 91-100 ,            XP000869889            the whole document            -----</p>	<p>13,28,            43,55</p>



# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.  
PCT/US 99/05291

## Box I Observations where certain claims were found unsearchable (Continuation of item 1 of first sheet)

This International Search Report has not been established in respect of certain claims under Article 17(2)(a) for the following reasons:

1. ☒ Claims Nos.:  
because they relate to subject matter not required to be searched by this Authority, namely:  
  
Although claims 1-57 are directed to a method of treatment of the human/animal body, the search has been carried out and based on the alleged effects of the compound/composition.
2. ☒ Claims Nos.:  
because they relate to parts of the International Application that do not comply with the prescribed requirements to such an extent that no meaningful International Search can be carried out, specifically:  
  
see FURTHER INFORMATION sheet PCT/ISA/210
3. ☐ Claims Nos.:  
because they are dependent claims and are not drafted in accordance with the second and third sentences of Rule 6.4(a).

## Box II Observations where unity of invention is lacking (Continuation of item 2 of first sheet)

This International Searching Authority found multiple inventions in this international application, as follows:

see additional sheet

1. ☒ As all required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant, this International Search Report covers all searchable claims.
2. ☐ As all searchable claims could be searched without effort justifying an additional fee, this Authority did not invite payment of any additional fee.
3. ☐ As only some of the required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant, this International Search Report covers only those claims for which fees were paid, specifically claims Nos.:
4. ☐ No required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant. Consequently, this International Search Report is restricted to the invention first mentioned in the claims; it is covered by claims Nos.:

Remark on Protest

- ☐ The additional search fees were accompanied by the applicant's protest.
- ☒ No protest accompanied the payment of additional search fees.

## INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International Application No. PCT/US 99/05291

FURTHER INFORMATION CONTINUED FROM PCT/ISA/ 210

This International Searching Authority found multiple (groups of) inventions in this international application, as follows:

1. Claims: 1-12, 16-27, 31-42, 46-54

Compositions and treatment for amyloidosis, acting by interfering in the generation of free radicals, comprising clioquinol and a metal chelator selected from the group defined in claim 1; and compositions and treatment for amyloidosis, acting by interfering in the generation of free radicals, comprising a single copper-specific metal chelator.

2. Claims: 13-15, 28-30, 55-57, 43-45

Compositions and treatment for amyloidosis, acting by interfering in the generation of free radicals, comprising clioquinol and an alkalinizing agent.

## INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International Application No. PCT/US 99/05291

FURTHER INFORMATION CONTINUED FROM PCT/ISA/ 210

Continuation of Box I.2

Present claims 31, 36, 40 and 43 lack clarity (Article 6 PCT): The expression "conditions caused by amyloidosis and/or A-Beta-mediated ROS formation" in these claims does not represent a clear and concise description of a therapeutic application, since it is not immediately and exhaustively apparent which conditions are comprised therein. This lack of clarity in the present case is such as to render a meaningful search over the whole of the claimed scope impossible. Consequently, the search has been carried out for those parts of the claims which appear to be clear, supported and disclosed, namely those parts relating to the methods and compositions for the treatment of conditions as defined in claims 1-30, 32-35, 37-39, 41, 42 and 44-57, as well as the examples.

The applicant's attention is drawn to the fact that claims, or parts of claims, relating to inventions in respect of which no international search report has been established need not be the subject of an international preliminary examination (Rule 66.1(e) PCT). The applicant is advised that the EPO policy when acting as an International Preliminary Examining Authority is normally not to carry out a preliminary examination on matter which has not been searched. This is the case irrespective of whether or not the claims are amended following receipt of the search report or during any Chapter II procedure.

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Information on patent family members

International Application No

PCT/US 99/05291

Patent document cited in search report	Publication date	Patent family member(s)	Publication date
WO 9909981 A	04-03-1999	AU 8124198 A AU 1502799 A WO 9934807 A US 5994323 A	16-03-1999 26-07-1999 15-07-1999 30-11-1999
WO 9806403 A	19-02-1998	AU 3632497 A CN 1230115 A CZ 9900484 A EP 0959888 A NO 990595 A PL 331822 A US 6001852 A	06-03-1998 29-09-1999 14-07-1999 01-12-1999 12-04-1999 02-08-1999 14-12-1999
WO 9310459 A	27-05-1993	AU 669493 B AU 2926392 A CA 2123211 A DE 69227380 D DE 69227380 T EP 0613560 A JP 7503316 T US 5705401 A	13-06-1996 15-06-1993 27-05-1993 26-11-1998 08-04-1999 07-09-1994 06-04-1995 06-01-1998
WO 9404167 A	03-03-1994	AU 2507992 A	15-03-1994
US 5688516 A	18-11-1997	US 5362754 A AU 673400 B AU 5600394 A CA 2148942 A EP 0668720 A JP 8503400 T WO 9410838 A	08-11-1994 07-11-1996 08-06-1994 26-05-1994 30-08-1995 16-04-1996 26-05-1994
WO 9709976 A	20-03-1997	AU 6887996 A	01-04-1997
WO 9840071 A	17-09-1998	AU 6548498 A	29-09-1998
US 5357636 A	25-10-1994	NONE	

**This Page is Inserted by IFW Indexing and Scanning  
Operations and is not part of the Official Record**

**BEST AVAILABLE IMAGES**

Defective images within this document are accurate representations of the original documents submitted by the applicant.

Defects in the images include but are not limited to the items checked:

- ☐ BLACK BORDERS
- ☐ IMAGE CUT OFF AT TOP, BOTTOM OR SIDES
- ☐ FADED TEXT OR DRAWING
- ☒ BLURRED OR ILLEGIBLE TEXT OR DRAWING
- ☐ SKEWED/SLANTED IMAGES
- ☐ COLOR OR BLACK AND WHITE PHOTOGRAPHS
- ☐ GRAY SCALE DOCUMENTS
- ☐ LINES OR MARKS ON ORIGINAL DOCUMENT
- ☐ REFERENCE(S) OR EXHIBIT(S) SUBMITTED ARE POOR QUALITY
- ☐ OTHER: \_\_\_\_\_

**IMAGES ARE BEST AVAILABLE COPY.**

**As rescanning these documents will not correct the image problems checked, please do not report these problems to the IFW Image Problem Mailbox.**